S60

OWNER'S MANUAL

VÄLKOMMEN!

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo is one of the world's safest passenger vehicles. Your Volvo is also designed to meet applicable safety and environmental requirements.

In order to increase your enjoyment of your Volvo, we recommend that you read the instructions and maintenance information in this owner's manual. The owner's manual is also available as a mobile app (Volvo Manual) and on the Volvo Cars support site (support.volvocars.com).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

This is how you find owner's information 12
Digital owner's manual in the car 13
Volvo Cars support site 15
Reading the owner's manual 16
Recording data 19
Accessories and extra equipment 20
Volvo ID 21
Environmental philosophy 22
The owner's manual and the environment 25
Laminated glass 25

SAFETY

General information on seatbelts 28
Seatbelt - putting on 29
Seatbelt - loosening 30
Seatbelt - pregnancy 30
Seatbelt reminder 31
Seatbelt tensioner 31
Safety - warning symbol 32
Airbag system 33
Driver airbag 34
Passenger airbag 34
Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating* 36
Side airbag (SIPS) 38
Inflatable Curtain (IC) 39
General information on WHIPS (whiplash protection) 39
WHIPS - seating position 40
Roll Over Protection System (ROPS) 41
General information on safety mode 42
Safety mode - attempting to start the car 43
Safety mode - moving the car 43
General information on child safety 44
Child seats 45
Child seats - location 49
Child seat - ISOFIX 50
ISOFIX - size classes 51
ISOFIX - types of child seat 52
Child seats - upper mounting points 54

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instruments and controls, left-hand drive car - overview 56
Instruments and controls, right-hand drive car - overview 59
Combined instrument panel 62
Analogue combined instrument panel - overview 62
Digital combined instrument panel - overview 63
Eco guide & Power guide* 66
Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols 67
Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols 69
Outside temperature gauge 71
Trip meter 71
Clock 72
Combined instrument panel - license agreement 72
Symbols in the display 73
Volvo Sensus 76
Key positions 77
Key positions - functions at different levels 77
Seats, front 79
Seats, front - electrically operated* 80
Seats, rear 81
Steering wheel 83
Heating* of the steering wheel 84
Light switches 85
Position lamps 86
Daytime running lights 87
Tunnel detection* 88
Main/dipped beam 88
Active main beam* 89
Active Xenon headlamps* 91
Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern 92
Rear fog lamp 92
Brake lights 93
Hazard warning flashers 93
direction indicators 94
Interior lighting 95
Home safe lighting 96
Approach lighting 96
Wipers and washers 97
Power windows 98
Sun blind* 100
Door mirrors 100
Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating 102
Rearview mirror - interior 102
Compass* 103
Sunroof* 104
Menu navigation - combined instrument panel 106
Menu overview - combined instrument panel 107
Messages 108
Messages - handling 109
MY CAR 109
Trip computer 110
Trip computer - analogue combined instrument panel 112
Trip computer - digital combined instrument panel 115
Trip computer - trip statistics* 118

CLIMATE CONTROL

General information on climate control 120
Actual temperature 121
Sensors - climate control 121
Air quality 121
Air quality - passenger compartment filter 122
Air quality - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)* 122
Air quality - IAQS* 122
Air quality - material 123
Menu settings - climate control 123
Air distribution in the passenger compartment 123
Electronic climate control - ECC 126
Heated front seats* 127
Heated rear seat* 128
Fan 128
Auto-regulation 129
Temperature control in the passenger compartment 129
Air conditioning 130
Demisting and defrosting the windscreen 130
Air distribution - recirculation 131
Air distribution - table 132
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* 134
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - direct start 135
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - immediate stop 136
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer 136
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages 138
Additional heater* 140
Fuel-driven additional heater* 140
Electric additional heater* 141

LOADING AND STORAGE

Storage spaces 144
Tunnel console 146
Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray* 146
Glovebox 146
Inlaid mats* 147
Vanity mirror 147
Tunnel console - 12 V-sockets 147
Loading 148
Loading - long load 149
Roof load 150
Load retaining eyelets 150
Loading - bag holder* 151
12 V electrical socket, cargo area* 151

LOCKS AND ALARM

Remote control key 154
Remote control key - losing 154
Remote control key - personalisation* 155
Locking/unlocking - indicator 156
Lock indicator 156
Immobiliser 157
Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system* 157
Remote control key - functions 158
Remote control key - range 159
Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions 159
Remote control key with PCC* - range 160
Detachable key blade 161
Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching 161
Detachable key blade - unlocking doors 162
Privacy locking* 163
Remote control key - replacing the battery 164
Keyless drive* 165
Keyless Drive* - remote control key range 166
Keyless drive* - secure handling of the remote control key 166
Keyless Drive* - interference to remote control key function 167
Keyless Drive* - locking 167
Keyless drive* - unlocking 168
Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade 168
Keyless Drive* - lock settings 169
Keyless Drive* - antenna location 169
Locking/unlocking - from the outside 170
Manual locking of the door 170
Locking/unlocking - from the inside 171
Global opening 172
Locking/unlocking - glovebox 173
Locking/unlocking - boot lid 173
Deadlocks* 175
Child safety locks - manual activation 176
Child safety locks - electrical activation* 177
Alarm* 177
Alarm indicator* 178
Alarm* - automatic re-arming 179
Alarm* - remote control key not working 179
Alarm signals* 179
Reduced alarm level* 180
Type approval - remote control key system 180

DRIVER SUPPORT

Active chassis - Four C* 182
Adjustable steering force* 182
Electronic stability control (ESC) - general 183
Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation 184
Electronic stability control (ESC) - symbols and messages 185
Speed limiter* 187
Speed limiter* - getting started 187
Speed limiter* - changing speed 188
Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode 188
Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded 189
Speed limiter* - deactivation 189
Cruise control* 190
Cruise control* - managing speed 191
Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode 191
Cruise control* - resume set speed 192
Cruise control* - deactivate 192
Distance Warning* 193
Distance Warning* - limitations 194
Distance Warning* - symbols and messages 195

Adaptive cruise control - ACC* 196
Adaptive cruise control* - function 197
Adaptive cruise control* - overview 198
Adaptive cruise control* - managing speed 199
Adaptive cruise control* - set time interval 201
Adaptive cruise control* - temporary deactivation, and standby mode 201
Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle 202
Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate 203
Adaptive Cruise Control* - queue assistance 203
Adaptive cruise control* - switch cruise control functionality 205
Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action 206
Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages 207
Radar sensor 209
Radar sensor - limitations 209
Type approval - radar system 211
City Safety™ 214
City Safety™ - function 215
City Safety™ - operation 215
City Safety™ - limitations 216
City Safety™ - laser sensor 218
City Safety™ - symbols and messages 220
Collision warning system* 221
Collision warning system* - function 222
Collision warning system* - detection of cyclists 223
Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians 224
Collision warning system* - operation 225
Collision warning system* - limitations 227
Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations 228
Collision warning system* - symbols and messages 230
BLIS* 232
BLIS* - operation 233
CTA* 234
BLIS - symbols and messages 236
Road Sign Information (RSI)* 236
Road sign information (RSI)* - operation 237
Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations 240
Driver Alert System* 240
Driver Alert Control (DAC)* 241
Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation 241
Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages 243
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* 244
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function 245
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation 246
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations 246
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages 247
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* 248
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - function 249
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - operation 250
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - limitations 251
Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - symbols and messages 252
Park Assist* 253
Park assist syst* - function 253
Park assist syst* - backward 254
Park assist syst* - forward 255
Park assist syst* - fault indication 256
Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors 256
Park assist camera* 257
Park assist camera - settings 259
Park assist camera - limitations 260
Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* 260
Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - function 261

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - operation 262
Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - limitations 264
Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - symbols and messages 265

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the engine 268
Switching off the engine 269
Steering lock 269
Remote start (ERS)* 269
Remote start (ERS) - operation 270
Remote start (ERS) - symbols and messages 271
Jump starting with another battery 273
Gearboxes 274
Manual gearbox 274
Gear shift indicator* 275
Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* 276
Gear selector inhibitor 279
Hill start assist (HSA)* 280
All-wheel drive - (AWD)* 280
Hill Descent Control (HDC)* 281
Start/Stop* 282
Start/Stop* - function and operation 283
Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop 284
Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts 285
Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start 286
Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox 287
Start/Stop* - symbols and messages 288
Drive mode ECO* 290
Foot brake 292
Foot brake - anti-lock braking system 293
Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers 294
Foot brake - emergency brake assistance 294
Parking brake 295
Driving in water 299
Overheating 299
Driving with open tailgate/boot lid 300
Overload - starter battery 300
Before a long journey 301
Winter driving 301
Fuel filler flap - Opening/closing 302
Fuel filler flap - manual opening 302
Filling up with fuel 302
Fuel - handling 303
Fuel - petrol 304
Fuel - diesel 305
Diesel particle filter (DPF) 306
Catalytic converters 307
Economical driving 308
Driving with a trailer* 309
Driving with a trailer* - manual gearbox 310

Driving with a trailer* - automatic gearbox 310
Towing bracket/Towbar* 311
Detachable towbar* - storage 312
Detachable towbar* - specifications 312
Detachable towbar* - attachment/removal 313
Trailer Stability Assist - TSA 315
Towing 316
Towing eye 317
Recovery 318

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres - maintenance 322
Tyres - direction of rotation 323
Tyres - tread wear indicators 324
Tyres - air pressure 324
Wheel and wheel rim dimensions 326
Tyres - dimensions 326
Tyres - load index 327
Tyres - speed ratings 327
Wheel bolts 328
Winter tyres 328
Changing wheels - removing wheels 329
Changing wheels - fitting 332
Warning triangle 333
Tools 333
Jack* 334
First aid kit* 334
Tyre pressure monitoring* 335
Tyre monitoring (TM)* 335
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - general information 337
Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)* - adjust (recalibration) 338
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - tyre status 338
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - activate/deactivate 339
Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)* - recommendations 339
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - rectifying low tyre pressure 340
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - driveable punctured tyres* 341
Type approval - tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* 342
Emergency puncture repair 348
Emergency puncture repair kit - location 348
Emergency puncture repair kit - overview 349
Emergency puncture repair - operation 350
Emergency puncture repair - rechecking 352
Emergency puncture repair kit - inflating the tyres 353

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme 356
Book service and repair* 356
Raising the car 359
Bonnet - opening and closing 361
Engine compartment - overview 361
Engine compartment - checking 362
Engine oil - general 363
Engine oil - checking and filling 364
Coolant - level 366
Brake and clutch fluid - level 367
Power steering fluid - level 368
Climate control system - fault tracing and repair 369
Lamp replacement - general 369
Lamp replacement - headlamps 371
Lamp replacement - cover for main/dipped beam bulbs 372
Lamp replacement - dipped beam 372
Lamp replacement - main beam 373
Lamp replacement - extra main beam 374
Lamp replacement - direction indicators front 374
Lamp replacement - rear lamp 375
Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps 375
Lamp replacement - number plate lighting 376
Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area 376
Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting 376
Lamps - specifications 377
Wiper blades 378
Washer fluid - filling 379
Starter battery - general 380
Battery - symbols 382
Starter battery - replacement 382
Battery - Start/Stop 384
Electrical system 387
Fuses - general 387
Fuses - in engine compartment 389
Fuses - under glovebox 393
Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox 395
Fuses - in cargo area 397
Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone 399
Car wash 401
Polishing and waxing 403
Water and dirt-repellent coating 403
Rustproofing 404
Cleaning the interior 404
Paint damage 406

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations 410
Dimensions 413
Weights 414
Towing capacity and towball load 415
Engine specifications 417
Engine oil - adverse driving conditions 419
Engine oil - grade and volume 420
Coolant - grade and volume 422
Transmission fluid - grade and volume 423
Brake fluid - grade and volume 424
Power steering fluid - grade 424
Fuel tank - volume 425
Specifications for air conditioning 426
Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions 428
Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions 432
Load index and speed rating 434
Tyres - approved tyre pressures 436

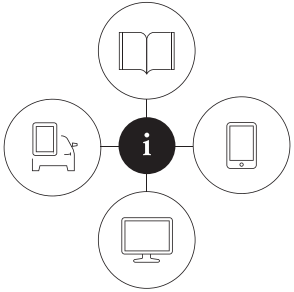
ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Alphabetical Index 439

INTRODUCTION

This is how you find owner's information

Owner's information is available in several different product formats, both digital and printed. The owner's manual is available in the car's screen, as a mobile app and on the Volvo Cars support site. There is a Quick Guide and a supplement to the owner's manual available in the glovebox, with specifications and fuse information, amongst other things. A printed owner's manual can be ordered.



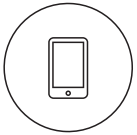
G060053

The car's screen[1]

A digital version of the owner's manual is available in the car's screen. Press the **MY CAR** button in the centre console, press **OK/MENU** and select **Owner's manual**. The information is searchable and can also be subdivided into categories.

Read more in the Digital owner's manual in the car.

Mobile app



In App Store or Google Play, search for "Volvo Manual", download the app to your smartphone or tablet and select the car.

The app contains video tutorials as well as options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. It is easy to navigate between the different sections in the owner's manual and the content is searchable. Read more about Owner's Manual in mobile devices.

Volvo Cars support site

Go to support.volvocars.com and select your country. Here you can find owner's manuals, both online and in PDF format. On the Volvo Cars support site there are also video tutorials and further information and help regarding your Volvo and your car ownership. The page is available for most markets. Read more on the Volvo Cars support site.

Printed information

There is a supplement to the owner's manual[2] in the glovebox that contains information on fuses and specifications, as well as a summary of important and practical information.

There is also a Quick Guide available in printed format that helps you to get started with the most commonly used functions in the car.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

A printed owner's manual and associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order. See how the owner's manual is structured in Reading the owner's manual.

[1] A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the screen.
[2] A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the screen.

Changing the language in the car's screen

Changing the language in the car's display may mean that some information does not correspond to national or local laws and regulations. Don't change to a language that's difficult to understand, it may then be difficult to find your way back in the structure on the screen.

IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

If there should be a difference between the information in the screen and the printed information then it is always the printed information that applies.

Related information

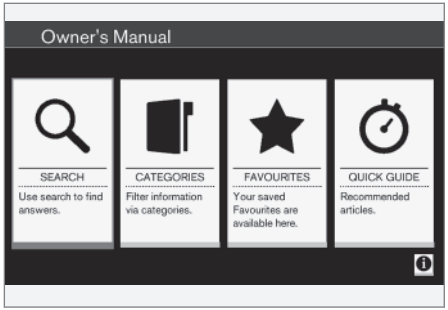
- Digital owner's manual in the car (p. 13)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 15)
- Reading the owner's manual (p. 16)

Digital owner's manual in the car

The owner's manual can be read on the screen in the car[3]. The content is searchable and it is easy to navigate between different sections.

Open the digital owner's manual - press the **MY CAR** button in the centre console, press **OK/MENU** and select **Owner's manual**.

For basic navigation, see Operating the system. See below for a more detailed description.



Owner's manual, start page.

There are four options for finding information in the digital owner's manual:

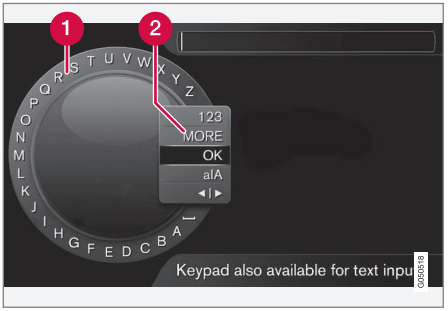
- **Search** - Search function for finding an article.
- **Categories** - All articles sorted into categories.
- **Favourites** - Quick access to favourite-bookmarked articles.
- **Quick Guide** - A selection of articles for common functions.

Select the information symbol in the lower right-hand corner in order to obtain information about the digital owner's manual.

NOTE

The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Search



Searching using the character wheel.

1. Character list.
2. Changing the input mode (see following table).

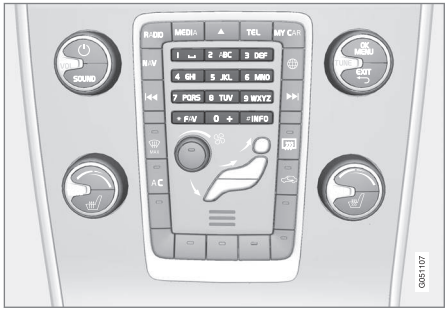
[3] Applies to certain car models.

Use the character wheel to enter a search term, e.g. "seatbelt".

1. Turn **TUNE** to the desired letter, press **OK/MENU** to confirm. The number and letter buttons on the control panel in the centre console can also be used.
2. Continue with the next letter and so on.
3. To change the input mode to numbers or special characters, or to perform a search, turn **TUNE** to one of the options (see explanation in the following table) in the list for changing the input mode (2), press **OK/MENU**.

123/ABC	Change between letters and numbers with **OK/MENU**.
MORE	Change to special characters with **OK/MENU**.
OK	Perform the search. Turn **TUNE** to select a search result article, press **OK/MENU** to go to the article.
a|A	Changes between lowercase and uppercase letters with **OK/MENU**.
◀ | ▶	Changes from the character wheel to the search field. Move the cursor with **TUNE**. Delete any misspelling with **EXIT**. To return to the character wheel, press **OK/MENU**. Note that the digit and letter buttons on the control panel can be used for editing in the search field.

Enter with the numerical keyboard



Numerical keyboard.

Another way of entering characters is to use the centre console's buttons **0**-**9**, * and **#**.

When e.g. **9** is pressed, a bar appears with all characters[4] under the button, e.g. **W**, **x**, **y**, **z** and **9**. Quick presses on the button move the cursor through these characters.

- Stop with the cursor on the desired character in order to select it - the character is shown on the enter line.
- Delete/undo using **EXIT**.

To enter a number, hold in the corresponding number key.

Categories

The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be in several appropriate categories in order to be found more easily.

Turn **TUNE** to navigate in the category tree and press **OK/MENU** to open a category - selected - or article - selected . Press **EXIT** to go back to the previous view.

Favourites

Located here are the articles that are saved as favourites. To select an article as a favourite, see the heading "Navigating in an article" below.

Turn **TUNE** to navigate in the favourite list and press **OK/MENU** to open an article. Press **EXIT** to go back to the previous view.

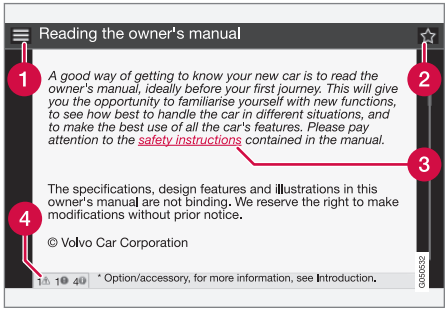
[4] The character for each button may vary depending on market/country/language.

Quick Guide

Located here is a selection of articles for getting to know the car's most common functions. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for quick access.

Turn **TUNE** to navigate in the Quick Guide and press **OK/MENU** to open an article. Press **EXIT** to go back to the previous view.

Navigating in an article



1. **Home** - leads to the start page for the owner's manual.
2. **Favourite** - adds/removes an article as a favourite. You can also press the **FAV** button in the centre console to add/remove an article as a favourite.
3. **Highlighted link** - leads to linked article.
4. **Special texts** - if the article contains warnings, important or note texts then an associated symbol is shown here as well as the number of such texts in the article.

Turn **TUNE** to navigate between the links or scroll in an article. When the screen has scrolled to the start/end of an article the home and favourite options are accessed by scrolling a further step up/down. Press **OK/MENU** to activate the selection/highlighted link. Press **EXIT** to go back to the previous view.

Volvo Cars support site

There is additional information regarding your car on the Volvo Cars website and support page. From the website, it is also possible to navigate through to My Volvo, a personal web page for you and your car.

Support on the Internet

Go to support.volvocars.com or use the QR code below to visit the page. The support page is available for most markets.

QR code that leads to the support page.

The information on the support page is searchable and can also be subdivided into different categories. Available here is support for options related to e.g. Internet connected services and functions, Volvo On Call*, the navigation system* and apps. Video and step-by-step instructions explain different procedures, e.g. how the car is connected to the Internet via a mobile phone.

Downloadable information from the support page

Maps
For cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, there is the facility to download maps from the support page.

Apps
For selected Volvo models from model year 2014 and 2015, the owner's manual is available in the form of an app. The Volvo On Call* app can also be accessed from here.

Owner's manuals from previous model years
Owner's manuals from previous model years are available here in PDF format. The Quick Guide and supplement can also be accessed from the support page. Select car model and model year in order to download the publication required.

Contact
On the support page there is contact information for customer support and the nearest Volvo dealer.

My Volvo on the Internet[5]
From www.volvocars.com it is possible to navigate through to My Volvo Web which is a personal Web page for you and your car.

Create a personal Volvo ID, log in to My Volvo Web and get an overview of service, agreements and warranties, amongst other things. At My Volvo Web there is also information about accessories and software adapted for your car model.

Related information
- Volvo ID (p. 21)

Reading the owner's manual
A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey.

Reading the owner's manual is a good way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how best to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make the best use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

Development work is constantly in progress to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

IMPORTANT

Do not remove this manual from the car - should a problem arise then the information required about where and how to seek professional help would be missing.

5 Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

Owner's Manual in mobile devices

NOTE

The Owner's manual is available for download as a mobile application (applies for certain car models and mobile devices), see www.volvocars.com.

The mobile application also includes video and searchable content and easy navigation between different sections.

Options/accessories

All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk*.

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

"Important" texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Footnote

There is footnote information in the owner's manual that is located at the bottom of the page. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

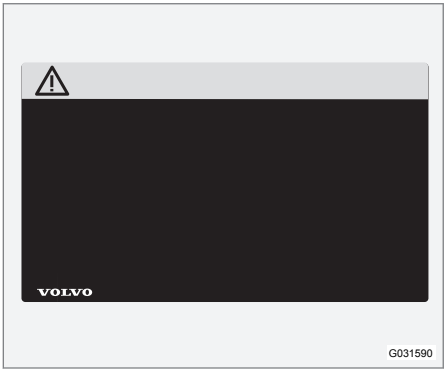
Message texts

In the car there are displays that show menu texts and message texts. In the owner's manual the appearance of these texts differs from the normal text. Examples of menu texts and message texts: **Media**, **Sending location**.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning for personal injury



Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning

is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Procedure lists

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner's manual.

1 When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.

A Lists of letters appear adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.

1 Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.

A Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the reciprocal order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

Position lists

1 Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.

Bulleted lists

A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner's manual.

Example:

- Coolant
- Engine oil

Related information
Related information refers to other articles containing closely-associated information.

Images
The manual's images are sometimes schematic and may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

To be continued
▸▸ This symbol is located furthest down to the right when an article continues on the following page.

Continued from previous page
◂◂ This symbol is located furthest up to the left when an article continues from the previous page.

Related information
- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 25)
- Volvo Cars support site (p. 15)

Recording data
As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- How the various systems in the car worked
- Whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- The driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal
- The travel speed of the vehicle

This information can help us better understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's active driver support function (e.g. City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computer until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.

▸▸

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is stored and handled in a secure manner and that the handling complies with applicable legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

Accessories and extra equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

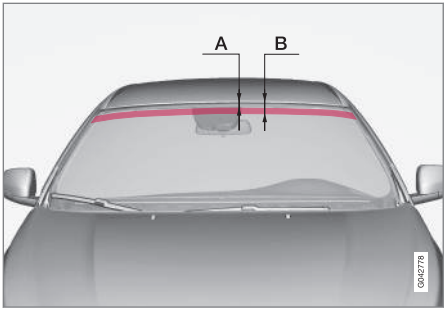
Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system. Volvo therefore recommends that you always contact an authorised Volvo workshop before installing accessories or extra equipment which are connected to or affect the electrical system.

Heat-reflecting windscreen*

The windscreen is equipped with a heat-reflecting film (IR) that reduces the solar heat radiation into the passenger compartment.

The positioning of electronic equipment, such as a transponder, behind a glass surface with heat-reflecting film may affect its function and performance.

For the optimal function of electronic equipment, it should be positioned on the part of the windscreen with no heat-reflecting film (see the highlighted area in the illustration).



Areas where IR film is not applied.

A is the distance from the top edge of the windscreen down to the start of the field. B is the distance from the top edge of the windscreen down to the end of the field.

	Dimensions
A	40 mm
B	80 mm

* Option/accessory.

Volvo ID

Volvo ID is your personal ID that provides access to various services[6].

Examples of services:

- My Volvo - Your personal web page for you and your car.
- In an Internet-connected car* - Certain functions and services require that you have registered your car to a personal Volvo ID, for example to be able to send a new address from a map service on the Internet directly to the car.
- Volvo On Call* - Volvo ID is used when logging in to the Volvo On Call app.

Advantages of Volvo ID

- One user name and one password to access online services, i.e. only one username and one password to remember.
- When changing the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) it will also be changed automatically for other services (e.g. My Volvo)

Create a Volvo ID

To create a Volvo ID you need to enter a personal e-mail address. Then follow the instructions in the e-mail message that is automatically sent to the specified address in order to complete the registration. It is possible to create a Volvo ID via one of the following services:

- My Volvo - Enter your e-mail address and follow the instructions.
- For an Internet-connected car* - Enter your e-mail address in the app that requires Volvo ID and follow the instructions. Alternatively, press the Connect button in the centre console twice and select **Apps ➔ Settings** and follow the instructions.
- Volvo On Call* - Download the latest version of the Volvo On Call app. Choose to create a Volvo ID from the start page, enter e-mail address and follow the instructions.

Related information

- Volvo Cars support site (p. 15)

6 The services available may vary over time and vary depending on equipment level and market.

Environmental philosophy

Volvo Car Corporation is constantly working on the development of safer and more efficient products and solutions in order to reduce the negative impact on the environment.

Environmental care is one of Volvo Cars' core values and influences all operations. The environmental work is based on the whole life cycle of the car and takes into account the environmental impact it has, from design to scrapping and recycling. Volvo Cars' basic principle is that every new product developed must have less impact on the environment than the product it replaces.

Volvo's environmental management work has resulted in the development of the more efficient and less polluting Drive-E drivelines. The personal environment is also important to Volvo - the air inside a Volvo is, for example, cleaner than the air outside thanks to the climate control system.

Your Volvo complies with stringent international environmental standards. All Volvo's manufacturing units must be ISO 14001 certified, and this supports a systematic approach to the operation's environmental issues, which leads to continuous improvement with reduced environmental impact. Holding the ISO certificate also means that environmental laws and regulations in force are complied with. Volvo also requires that its partners must also meet these requirements.

Fuel consumption

Since a large part of a car's total environmental impact stems from its use, the emphasis of Volvo Cars' environmental work is on reducing fuel consumption, carbon dioxide emissions and other air pollutants. Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

Contributing to a better environment

An energy-efficient and fuel-efficient car not only contributes to a reduced impact on the environment, but also means reduced costs for the owner of the car. As the driver, it is easy to reduce fuel consumption and thereby save money and contribute to a better environment - here is some advice:

- Plan for an effective average speed. Speeds above approx. 80 km/h (50 mph) and below 50 km/h (30 mph) lead to increased energy consumption.
- Follow the Service and Warranty Booklet's recommended intervals for service and maintenance of the car.
- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Plan the journey - a lot of unnecessary stops and uneven speed contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- If the car is equipped with an engine block heater*, use it before starting from cold - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather and the engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which lowers consumption and reduces emissions.

Also remember to always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oil, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Following this advice can save money, the planet's resources are saved, and the car's durability is extended. For more information and further advice see Eco guide (p. 66), Economical driving (p. 308) and Fuel consumption (p. 428).

Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment

A passenger compartment filter prevents dust and pollen from entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

The Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)* ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

IAQS is a part of the Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*, which also includes a function that allows the fan to start when the car is unlocked with the remote control key.

Interior

The material used in the interior of a Volvo is carefully selected and has been tested in order to be pleasant and comfortable. Some of the details are hand-made, such as the seams of the steering wheel that are sewn by hand. The interior is monitored in order not to emit strong odours or substances that cause discomfort in the event of e.g. high heat and bright light.

Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you also contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of Volvo's system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which workshop premises shall be designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. The workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Recycling

Since Volvo works from a life cycle perspective, it is also important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is

▸▸

therefore requested to contact a dealer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

Related information

- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 25)

The owner's manual and the environment

The paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from Forest Stewardship Council® certified forests or other controlled sources.

The FSC® symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC® certified forests or other controlled sources.

Related information

- Environmental philosophy (p. 22)

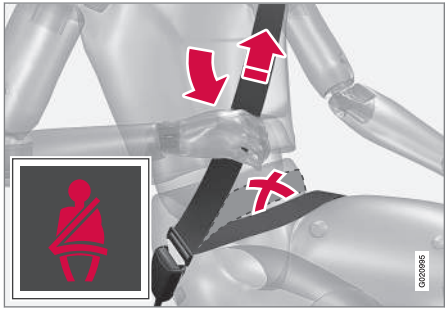
Laminated glass

The glass is reinforced which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment. The windscreen and the side windows* have laminated glass.

SAFETY

General information on seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used. Ensure that all passengers are using their seatbelts during the journey.



Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder. The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten their (p. 29) seatbelt by means of an audio and visual reminder (p. 31).

Remember

- Do not use clips or anything else that can prevent the seatbelt from fitting properly.
- The seatbelt must not be twisted or caught on anything.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

If a seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the protective characteristics of the seatbelt may have been lost, even if it appears to be undamaged. In addition, replace the seatbelt if the belt is worn or damaged. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and intended for installation in the same position as the replaced seatbelt.

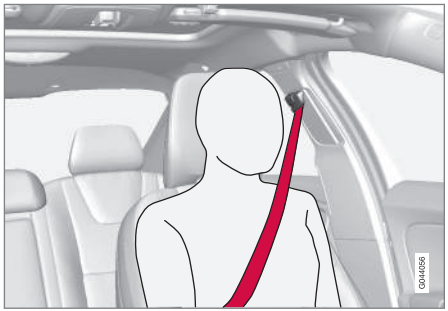
Related information

- Seatbelt - pregnancy (p. 30)
- Seatbelt - loosening (p. 30)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 31)

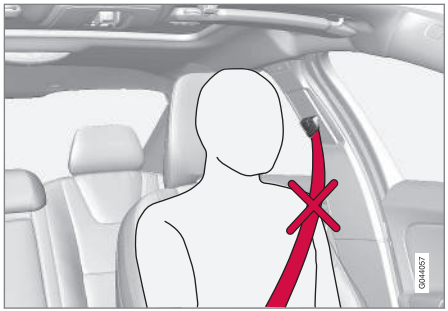
Seatbelt - putting on

Put on the seatbelt (p. 28) before driving starts.

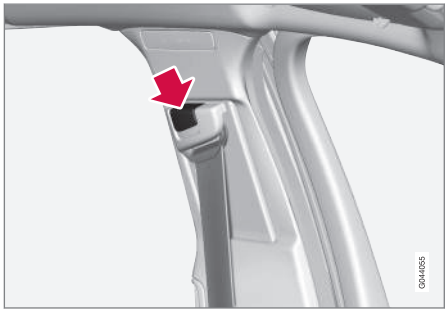
Pull the belt out slowly and secure it by pressing its locking tab into the seatbelt buckle. A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.



Correctly fitted seatbelt.



Incorrectly fitted seatbelt. The belt must rest on the shoulder.



Seatbelt height adjustment. Press the button and move the belt vertically. Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.

The buckles only fit the intended lock in the rear seat[1].

Remember

The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.

Related information

- Seatbelt - pregnancy (p. 30)
- Seatbelt - loosening (p. 30)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 31)
- Seatbelt reminder (p. 31)

[1] Certain markets.

Seatbelt - loosening

Loosen the seatbelt (p. 28) when the car is stationary.

Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

Related information

- Seatbelt - putting on (p. 29)
- Seatbelt reminder (p. 31)

Seatbelt - pregnancy

Seatbelt (p. 28) must always be worn during pregnancy. But it is crucial that it be worn in the correct way.

The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat (p. 79) and steering wheel (p. 83) such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Seatbelt - putting on (p. 29)
- Seatbelt - loosening (p. 30)

Seatbelt reminder

Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten their (p. 29) seatbelt by means of an audio and visual reminder.

The audio reminder is speed dependent, and in some cases time dependent. The visual reminder is located in the roof console and in the combined instrument panel (p. 62).

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts (p. 28) are being used in the rear seat. A message appears in the combined instrument panel when the seatbelts are in use, or if one of the rear doors has been opened. The message is cleared automatically after driving for approximately 30 seconds or after pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button (p. 106).
- Provides a warning if one of the rear seatbelts is unfastened during travel. This warning takes the form of a message in the combined instrument panel along with the audio/visual signal. The warning stops when the seatbelt is re-fastened, or it can also be acknowledged manually by pressing the **OK** button.

The message in the combined instrument panel showing which seatbelts are in use is always shown. Press the **OK** button to see stored messages.

Certain markets

An acoustic signal and indicator lamp remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one. At low speed, the audio reminder will sound for the first 6 seconds.

Seatbelt tensioner

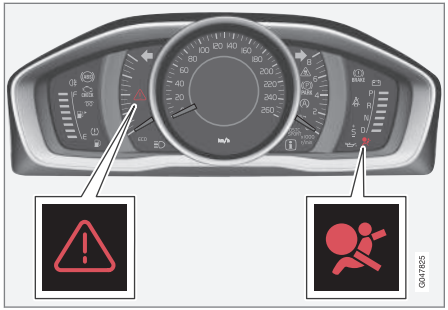
All the seatbelts (p. 28) are equipped with belt tensioners. A mechanism in the seatbelt tensioner tightens the seatbelt in the event of a sufficiently violent collision. The seatbelt then provides more effective restraint for the occupants.

WARNING

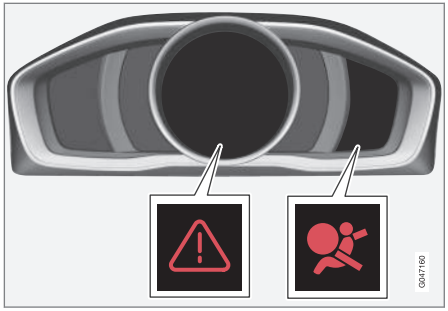
Never insert the tongue of the passenger's seatbelt into the buckle on the driver's side. Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Safety - warning symbol

The warning symbol is shown if a fault is detected during fault tracing or if a system has been activated. Where required, the warning symbol is shown together with a message in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) information display.



Warning triangle and warning symbol for the airbag system (p. 33) in the analogue combined instrument panel.



Warning triangle and warning symbol for the airbag system in the digital combined instrument panel.

The warning symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates when the remote control key is in key position **II** (p. 77). The symbol clears after approx. 6 seconds provided the airbag system is fault-free.

WARNING

If the warning symbol for the airbag system remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means that the airbag system does not have full functionality. The symbol indicates a fault in the seatbelt tensioner system, SIPS, the IC system or some other fault in the system. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

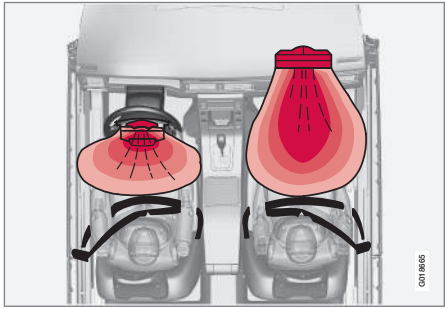
If the warning symbol malfunctions, the warning triangle illuminates and **SRS airbag Service required** or **SRS airbag Service urgent** appears in the display. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

Related information

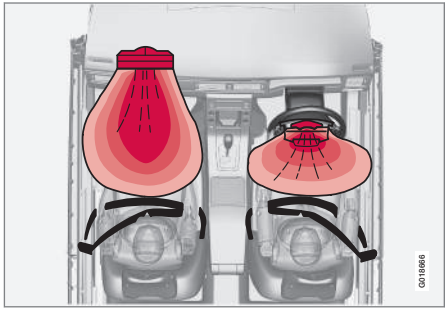
- General information on safety mode (p. 42)

Airbag system

In the event of a frontal collision the airbag system helps to protect the head, face and chest of the driver and passenger.



Airbag system viewed from above, left-hand-drive car.



Airbag system viewed from above, right-hand-drive car.

The system consists of airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag(s) are inflated and become hot. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

If the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

WARNING

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the battery cables. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that one or more airbags are deployed.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 34)
- Passenger airbag (p. 34)
- Safety - warning symbol (p. 32)

Driver airbag

To supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt (p. 28) the car is equipped on the driver's side with an airbag (p. 33).

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked **AIRBAG**.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

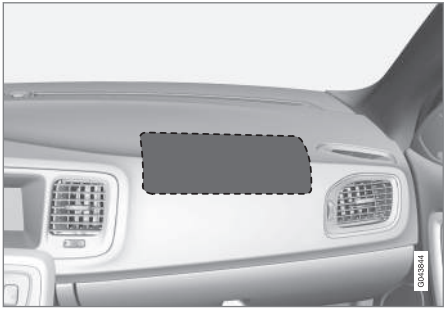
Related information

- Passenger airbag (p. 34)

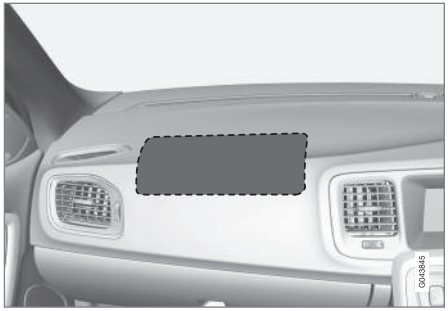
Passenger airbag

To supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt (p. 28) on the passenger side, the car is equipped with an airbag (p. 33).

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.



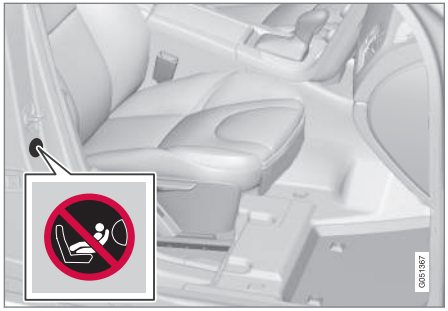
Location of the front passenger airbag in a left-hand drive car.



Location of the front passenger airbag in a right-hand drive car.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.



Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on a seat protected by an activated airbag. Failure to follow this advice can lead to death or serious injury to the child.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest. Seatbelts must be secured.

WARNING

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Switch - PACOS*

The front passenger airbag can be deactivated (p. 36) if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch).

WARNING

If the car is equipped with an airbag for the front passenger seat, but does not have a switch PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch), then the airbag will always be activated.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 34)
- Child seats (p. 45)

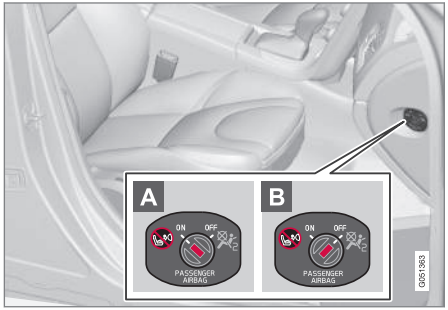
Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating*

The front passenger airbag (p. 34) can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch).

Switch - PACOS

The switch for the passenger airbag (PACOS) is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position. The remote control key's key blade (p. 161) should be used to change position.



Location of airbag switch.

A **ON**- the airbag is activated. With the switch in this position, all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B **OFF** - the airbag is deactivated. With the switch in this position, children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

Activated airbag (passenger seat):

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag is activated.

Deactivated airbag (passenger seat):

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

NOTE

When the remote control key is in key position **II** (p. 77) the warning symbol (p. 32) for the airbag is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 6 seconds.

Following which, the indicator in the roof console is illuminated showing the correct status for the front passenger seat airbag.

* Option/accessory.

Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is activated.

A warning symbol in the roof console indicates that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated (see preceding illustration).

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front seat if the passenger airbag is activated and the symbol in the roof console is illuminated to indicate this. Failure to follow this advice could endanger the life of the child.

Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated (see preceding illustration).

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger seat if the message in the roof console indicates that the airbag is deactivated, and if the warning symbol (p. 32) for the airbag system is also displayed on the combined instrument panel. This indicates that there has been a severe malfunction. Visit a workshop as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger the lives of passengers in the car.

Related information

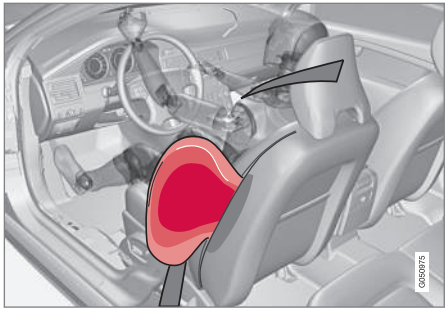
- Child seats (p. 45)

Side airbag (SIPS)

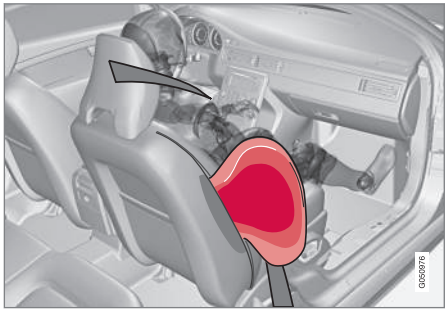
In a side impact collision a large proportion of the collision force is transferred by the SIPS (Side Impact Protection System) to beams, pillars, the floor, the roof and other structural parts of the body. The side airbags at the driver's and front passenger seats protect the chest area and the hip and are an important part of the SIPS.

The SIPS bag system consists of two main components, side airbag and sensors. The side airbags are located in the front seat's backrests.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.



Driver's seat, left-hand drive.



Front passenger seat, left-hand drive.

WARNING

- Volvo recommends that repairs are only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Defective work in the SIPS-bag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.
- Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

SIPS and child seats

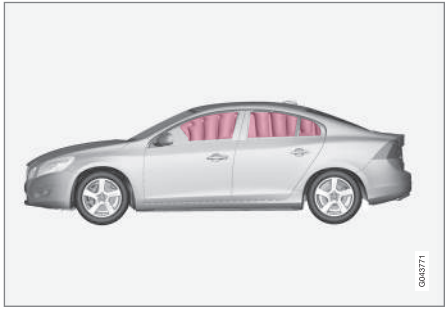
The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 34)
- Passenger airbag (p. 34)
- Inflatable Curtain (IC) (p. 39)

Inflatable Curtain (IC)

The inflatable curtain helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



Inflatable curtain IC (Inflatable Curtain) is part of the SIPS system (p. 38) and the airbag system (p. 33). It is fitted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and passengers in the car's outer seats. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hook is only designed for light clothing (not for solid objects such as umbrellas for example).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends that you only ever use Volvo genuine parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

WARNING

Do not load the car higher than 50 mm under the top edge of the windows in the doors. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

WARNING

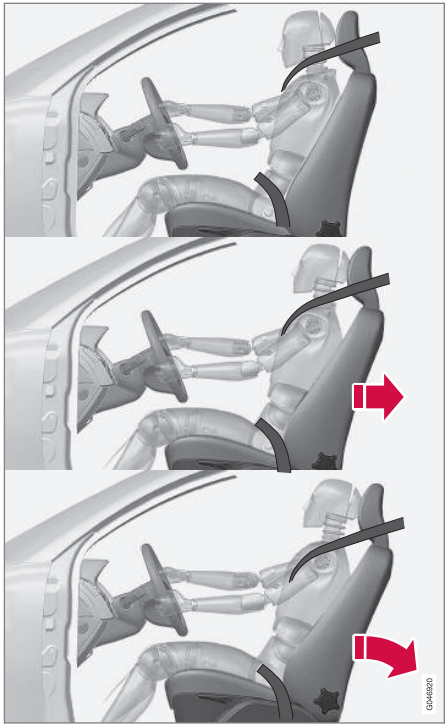
The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- General information on seatbelts (p. 28)

General information on WHIPS (whiplash protection)

WHIPS (Whiplash Protection System) is a protection against whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and specially designed head restraints in the front seats.



The WHIPS system is actuated by a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision, and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

WARNING

The WHIPS system is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Seat properties

When the WHIPS system is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. This reduces the risk of whiplash injury.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS system yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the WHIPS system.

Related information

- WHIPS - seating position (p. 40)
- General information on seatbelts (p. 28)

WHIPS - seating position

For optimum protection from the WHIPS system (p. 39) the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Seating position

Set the correct seating position in the front seat (p. 79) before driving starts.

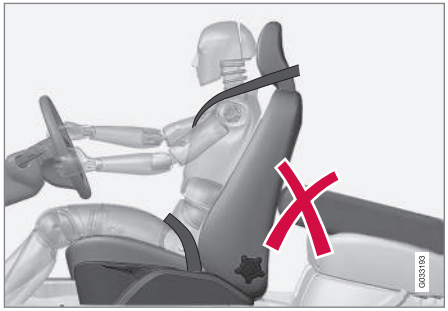
Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

Function

Do not leave any objects on the floor behind the driver's seat/passenger seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest. Make sure you do not to obstruct the function of the WHIPS system.



Do not place objects on the rear seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is folded down, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the folded backrest.

WARNING

If a seat has been subjected to extreme forces, such as due to a rear-end collision, the WHIPS system must be checked. Volvo recommends that it is checked by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Part of the WHIPS system's protective capacity may have been lost even if the seat appears to be undamaged.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop to have the system checked even after a minor rear-end collision.

Roll Over Protection System (ROPS)

Volvo's Roll-Over Protection System (ROPS) has been designed to reduce the risk of the car overturning and to provide the best possible protection in the event of such an accident.

The system consists of two parts, a preventive stabilising system and a protective system.

The stabilising system Roll Stability Control (RSC) minimises the risk of overturning, for example during sudden evasive manoeuvres or if the car skids.

The RSC system uses a sensor which registers changes in the car's lateral inclination angle. This information is used to calculate the risk of the car overturning. If a risk exists then the ESC system (p. 183) engages, engine torque is reduced and one or more wheels are braked until the car has regained its stability.

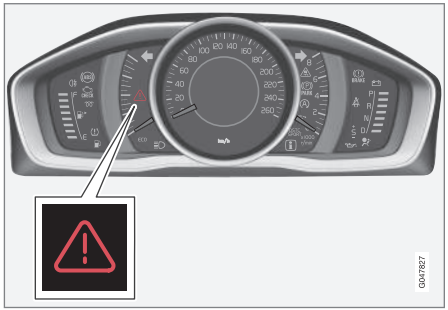
If a rollover accident still occurs, the protective system intervenes and, depending on the situation, may activate the car's seatbelt tensioner (p. 31) and inflatable curtains (p. 39).

WARNING

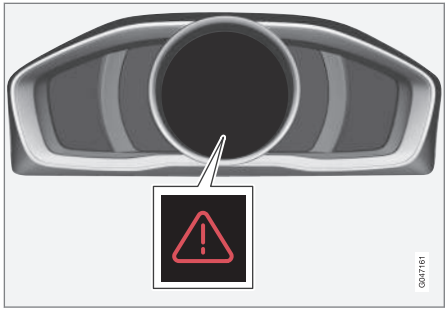
Under normal driving conditions, the RSC system improves the car's road safety, but this must not be seen as an opportunity to increase speed. Always follow the normal precautions for safe driving.

General information on safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.



Warning triangle in the analogue combined instrument panel.



Warning triangle in the digital combined instrument panel.

If the car is involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See manual** may appear in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) information display. This means that the car has reduced functionality.

WARNING

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See manual** has been displayed.

Related information

- Safety mode - attempting to start the car (p. 43)
- Safety mode - moving the car (p. 43)

Safety mode - attempting to start the car

If the car is set in safety mode (p. 42) then an attempt to start the car can be made if everything seems normal and the absence of fuel leakage has been checked.

First, check that no fuel is leaking from the car. There must be no smell of fuel either.

If everything seems normal and you have checked for indications of fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the car.

Remove the remote control key and open the driver's door. If a message is now shown to the effect that the ignition is on, press the start button. Then close the door and reinsert the remote control key. The car's electronics will now try to reset themselves to normal mode. Then try to start the car.

If the message **Safety mode See manual** is still shown on the display then the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service (p. 318) used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See manual** message is displayed. Leave the car at once.

WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety mode - moving the car (p. 43)

Safety mode - moving the car

If **Normal mode** is shown after **Safety mode See manual** has been reset after attempting to start the car (p. 43) , the car can be moved carefully out of a dangerous position.

Do not move the car further than necessary.

Related information

- General information on safety mode (p. 42)

General information on child safety

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats, booster cushions & attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car.

Using Volvo's child safety equipment, the optimum conditions are obtained for the child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits well and is simple to use.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Volvo recommends that children travel in rear-facing child seats until as late an age as possible, at least up to 3-4 years of age, and then in front-facing booster cushions/child seats until the child is 140 cm tall.

NOTE

Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

NOTE

In the event of questions when fitting child safety products, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Child safety locks

The rear doors and the windows in the rear doors* can be locked manually (p. 176) or electronically (p. 177)* to prevent them being opened from inside.

Related information

- Child seats - location (p. 49)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)

* Option/accessory.

Child seats

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is being used correctly.

NOTE

When using child safety products it is important to read the installation instructions included.

WARNING

Do not secure the straps of the child seat to the seat's horizontal adjustment bar, springs or the rails and beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

Recommended child seats[2]

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg			Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the ISOFIX fixture system. Type approval: E1 04301146 (L)	
Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg	Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)		Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)	Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U)

2 With regard to other child seats your car should be included in the manufacturer's enclosed list of vehicles or be universally approved in accordance with the ECE R44 legal requirement.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated air-bag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg	Child seats which are universally approved. (U)		Child seats which are universally approved. (U)	Child seats which are universally approved. (U)
Group 1 9-18 kg	Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) – rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)		Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) – rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	
Group 1 9-18 kg	Volvo rear-facing child seat Type approval: E5 04212 (L)		Volvo rear-facing child seat Type approval: E5 04212 (L)	
Group 1 9-18 kg		Front-facing child seats which are universally approved.[A] (UF)	Child seats which are universally approved. (U)	Child seats which are universally approved. (U)

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated air-bag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2 15-25 kg	Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) – rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)		Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) – rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L)	
Group 2 15-25 kg	Volvo rear-facing child seat Type approval: E5 04212 (L)		Volvo rear-facing child seat Type approval: E5 04212 (L)	
Group 2 15-25 kg		Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (U)	Volvo turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (U)	
Group 2/3 15-36 kg		Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)	Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)	Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF)

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated air-bag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated air-bag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 2/3 15-36 kg		Volvo booster seat Type approval: E1 04301312 (UF)	Volvo booster seat Type approval: E1 04301312 (UF, L)	Volvo booster seat Type approval: E1 04301312 (UF)
Group 2/3 15-36 kg		Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)	Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)	Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF)

L: Suitable for specific child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

U: Suitable for universally approved child seats in this weight class.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats in this weight class.

A Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

Related information

- Child seats - location (p. 49)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)
- General information on child safety (p. 44)

Child seats - location

The position of a child in the car and the choice of equipment are dictated by the child's weight and size.

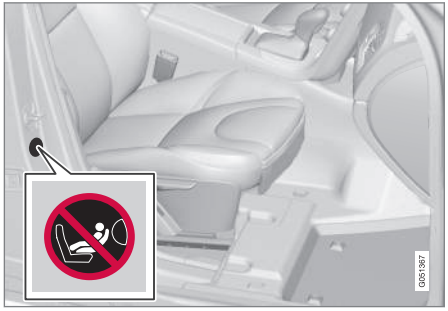
Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats (p. 45) in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated (p. 36). If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.



Label on the passenger side's door pillar. The label becomes visible when the passenger door is opened.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

You may place:

- a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- a front-facing child seat/booster cushion on the front passenger seat when the passenger airbag is activated.
- one or more child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat.

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on a seat protected by an activated airbag. Failure to follow this advice can lead to death or serious injury to the child.

WARNING

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

NOTE

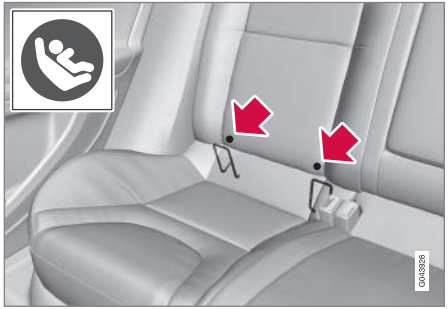
Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 45)
- General information on child safety (p. 44)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)

Child seat - ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a fixture system for car child seats (p. 45) that is based on an international standard.



Mounting points for the ISOFIX fixture system are concealed behind the lower section of the rear seat backrest, in the outer seats.

The location of the mounting points is indicated by symbols in the backrest upholstery (see preceding illustration).

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the ISOFIX mounting points.

Related information

- ISOFIX - size classes (p. 51)
- ISOFIX - types of child seat (p. 52)
- General information on child safety (p. 44)

ISOFIX - size classes

There is a size classification for child seats using the ISOFIX (p. 50) fixture system in order to assist users in choosing the correct type of child seat (p. 52).

Size class	Description
A	Full size, front-facing child seat
B	Reduced size (alt. 1), front-facing child seat
B1	Reduced size (alt. 2), front-facing child seat
C	Full size, rear-facing child seat
D	Reduced size, rear-facing child seat
E	Rear-facing infant seat
F	Transverse infant seat, left-hand
G	Transverse infant seat, right-hand

WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

NOTE

If an ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer for recommendations about which ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

ISOFIX - types of child seat

Child seats are in different sizes – cars are in different sizes. This means that not all child seats are suitable for all seats in all car models.

Type of child seat	Weight	Size class	Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats	
			Front seat	Outer rear seat
Infant seat transverse	max 10 kg	F	X	X
		G	X	X
Infant seat, rear-facing	max 10 kg	E	X	OK (IL)
Infant seat, rear-facing	max 13 kg	E	X	OK (IL)
		D	X	OK[A] (IL)
		C	X	OK[A] (IL)
Child seat, rear-facing	9-18 kg	D	X	OK[A] (IL)
		C	X	OK[A] (IL)

Type of child seat	Weight	Size class	Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats	
			Front seat	Outer rear seat
Front-facing child seat	9-18 kg	B	X	OK[B] (IUF)
		B1	X	OK[B] (IUF)
		A	X	OK[B] (IUF)

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for ISOFIX child seats in this weight class and/or size class.

IL: Suitable for specific ISOFIX child seats. These child seats may be intended for a particular car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

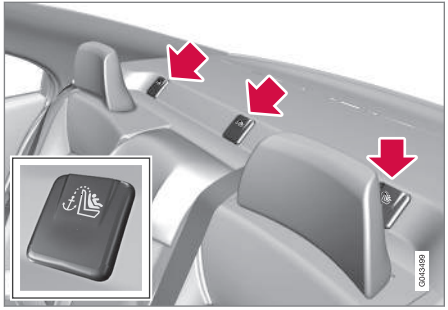
IUF: Suitable for front-facing ISOFIX child seats that are universally approved in this weight class.

[A] For the infant/child seat to have space in the rear seat the seat in front must be adjusted longitudinally to a position in front of centre position.
[B] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.

Make sure you select the right size class (p. 51)
of child seat with ISOFIX (p. 50) fixture system.

Child seats - upper mounting points

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats (p. 45). These mounting points are located on the parcel shelf and are concealed by plastic covers. Bend aside the plastic covers to access each respective mounting point.



For cars with folding head restraints on the outside seats the head restraints should be folded to facilitate installation.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats. Volvo recommends that small children should sit in rear-facing child seats for as long as possible.

For detailed information on how the child seat should be tensioned in the upper mounting points, see the seat manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

The child seat's straps must always be drawn through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the attachment point.

Related information

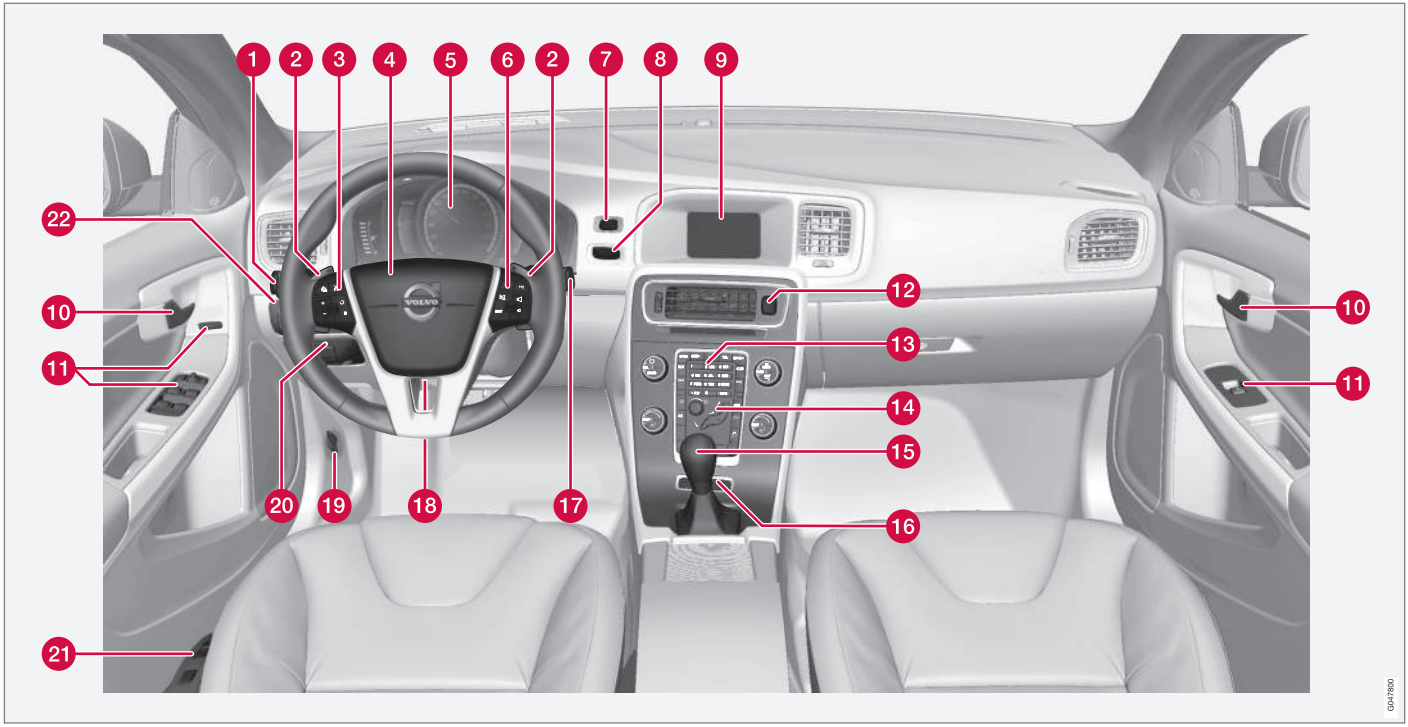
- General information on child safety (p. 44)
- Child seats - location (p. 49)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instruments and controls, left-hand drive car - overview

The overview shows where the car's displays and controls are located.

Overview, left-hand drive cars



	Function	See
1	Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer	(p. 106), (p. 109), (p. 94), (p. 88) and (p. 110).
2	Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*	(p. 276).
3	Cruise control*	(p. 190) and (p. 196).
4	Horn, airbags	(p. 83) and (p. 33).
5	Combined instrument panel	(p. 62).
6	Menu navigation, audio control, phone control*	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
7	**START/STOP ENGINE** button	(p. 268).
8	Ignition switch	(p. 77).
9	Screen for infotainment system and display of menus	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

	Function	See
10	Door handle	-
11	Control panel	(p. 171), (p. 177), (p. 98) and (p. 100).
12	Hazard warning flashers	(p. 93).
13	Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
14	Control panel for climate control	(p. 126).
15	Gear selector	(p. 274) or (p. 276).
16	Controls for active chassis (Four-C)*	(p. 182).
17	Wipers and washing	(p. 97).
18	Steering wheel adjustment	(p. 83).
19	Bonnet opener	(p. 361).
20	Parking brake	(p. 295).

	Function	See
21	Seat adjustment*	(p. 80).
22	Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and boot lid	(p. 85), (p. 302) and (p. 173).

Related information

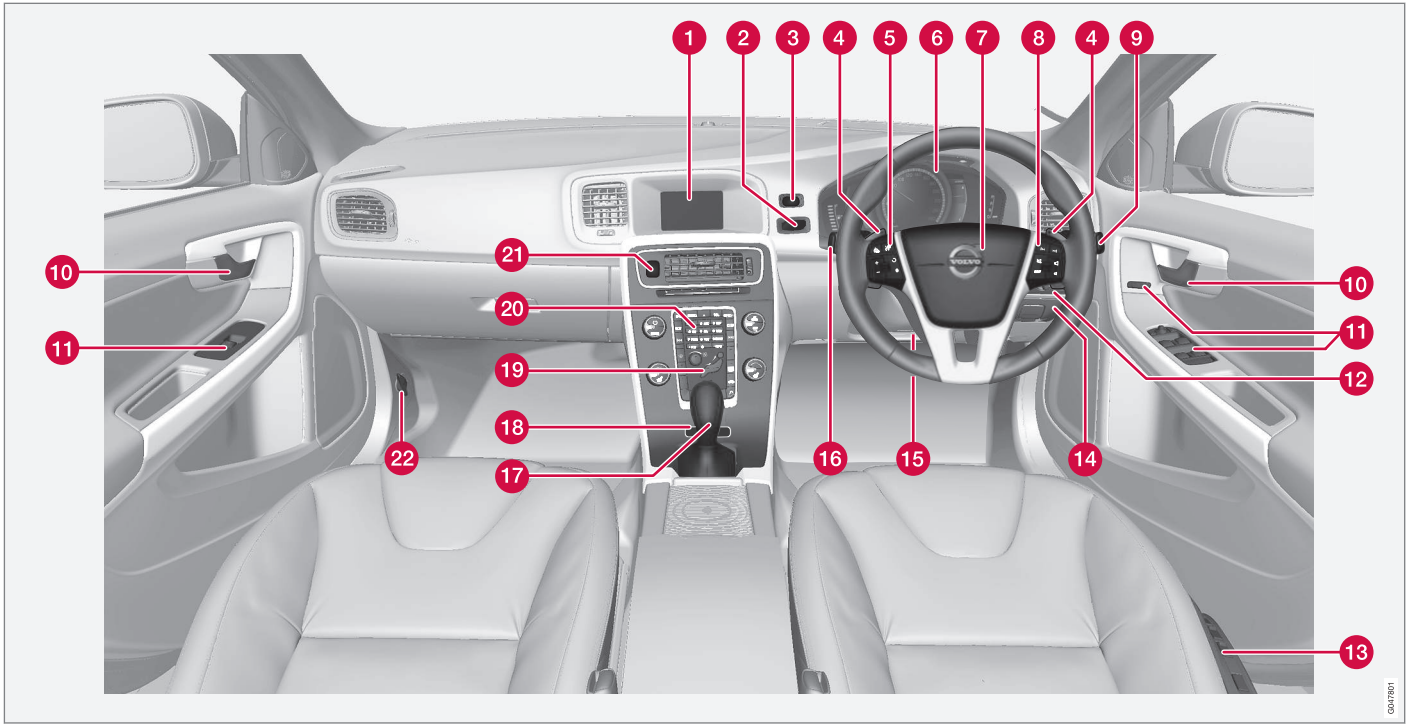
- Outside temperature gauge (p. 71)
- Trip meter (p. 71)
- Clock (p. 72)

* Option/accessory.

Instruments and controls, right-hand drive car - overview

The overview shows where the car's displays and controls are located.

Overview, right-hand drive cars



	Function	See
1	Screen for infotainment system and display of menus	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
2	Ignition switch	(p. 77).
3	**START/STOP ENGINE** button	(p. 268).
4	Manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox*	(p. 276).
5	Cruise control*	(p. 190) and (p. 196).
6	Combined instrument panel	(p. 62).
7	Horn, airbags	(p. 83) and (p. 33).
8	Menu navigation, audio control, phone control*	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
9	Wipers and washing	(p. 97).
10	Door handle	-

	Function	See
11	Control panel	(p. 171), (p. 177), (p. 98) and (p. 100).
12	Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and boot lid	(p. 85), (p. 302) and (p. 173).
13	Seat adjustment*	(p. 80).
14	Parking brake	(p. 295).
15	Steering wheel adjustment	(p. 83).
16	Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer	(p. 106), (p. 109), (p. 94), (p. 88) and (p. 110).
17	Gear selector	(p. 274) or (p. 276).
18	Controls for active chassis (Four-C)*	(p. 182).
19	Control panel for climate control	(p. 126).

	Function	See
20	Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation	(p. 109) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
21	Hazard warning flashers	(p. 93).
22	Bonnet opener	(p. 361).

Related information

- Outside temperature gauge (p. 71)
- Trip meter (p. 71)
- Clock (p. 72)

Combined instrument panel

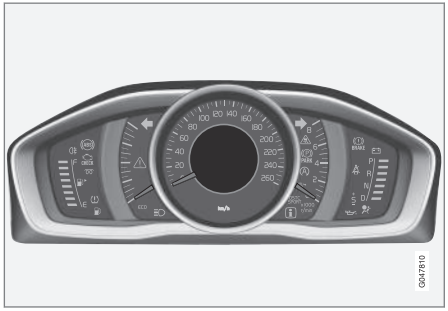
The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, as well as messages.

- Analogue combined instrument panel - overview (p. 62)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)

Analogue combined instrument panel - overview

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, as well as messages.

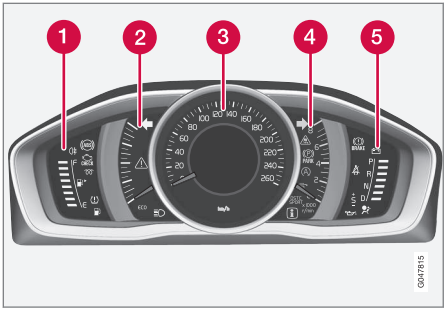
Information display



Information display, analogue instrument panel.

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, e.g. cruise control and trip computer, as well as messages. The information is shown with symbols and text. There are further descriptions under the functions that use the display.

Gauges and indicators

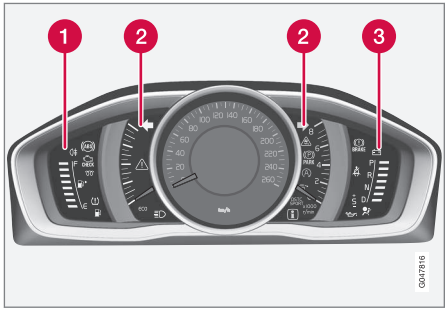


1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking[1], the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer (p. 110) and Filling up with fuel (p. 302).
2. Eco meter. The meter provides an indication of how economically the car is being driven. The higher the reading on the scale, the more economically the car is driven.
3. Speedometer

[1] When the display's message "**Distance to empty fuel tank:**" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.

4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
5. Gear shift indicator[2]/Gear position indicator[3] See also Gear shift indicator* (p. 275) or Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

Indicator and warning symbols



Indicator and warning symbols, analogue instrument panel.

1. Indicator symbols
2. Indicator and warning symbols
3. Warning symbols[4]

Functionality check

All indicator and warning symbols, apart from symbols in the centre of the information display, illuminate in key position **II** or when the engine is started. When the engine has started, all the symbols should go out except the parking brake symbol, which only goes out when the brake is disengaged.

If the engine does not start or if the functionality check is carried out in key position **II** then all symbols go out within a few seconds except the symbol for faults in the car's emissions system and the symbol for low oil pressure.

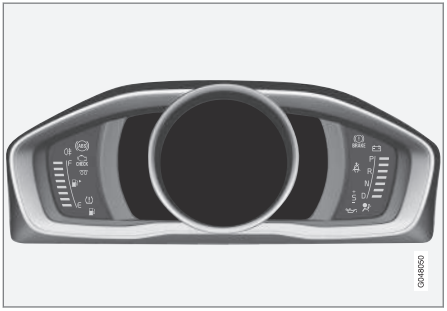
Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)

Digital combined instrument panel - overview

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, as well as messages.

Information display



Information display, digital instrument panel*.

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, e.g. cruise control and trip computer, as well as messages. The information is shown with symbols and text. There are further descriptions under the functions that use the display.

2 Manual gearbox.
3 Automatic gearbox.
4 Certain engine variants do not have systems to warn of oil pressure loss. In cars with these variants the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warning for low oil level is via display text. For more information, see Engine oil - general (p. 363).

Gauges and indicators

Alternative themes can be selected for the digital combined instrument panel. Possible themes are "Elegance", "Eco" and "Performance".

A theme can only be selected when the engine is running.

To select the theme, press the left-hand stalk switch's **OK** button and select the **Themes** menu option by turning the thumbwheel on the lever. Press the **OK** button. Turn the thumbwheel to select the theme and confirm the selection by pressing the **OK** button.

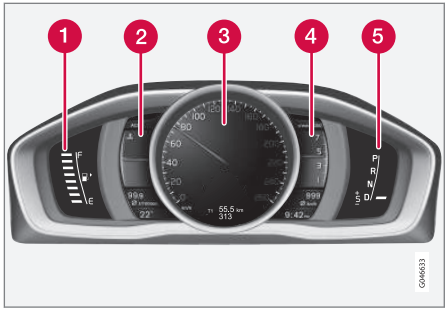
On certain model variants, the appearance of the centre console's screen follows the theme selected for the combined instrument panel.

The contrast mode and colour mode for the instrument can also be set using the left-hand stalk switch.

For more information on menu navigation, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106).

The choice of theme and setting of contrast mode and colour mode can be stored for each remote control key in the car key memory*, see Remote control key - personalisation* (p. 155).

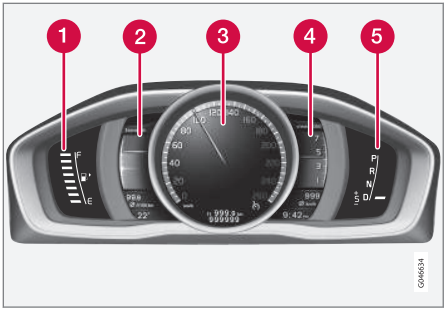
Theme "Elegance"



Gauges and indicators, theme "Elegance".

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking[5], the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer (p. 110) and Filling up with fuel (p. 302).
2. Temperature gauge for engine coolant.
3. Speedometer.
4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
5. Gear shift indicator[6]/Gear position indicator[7] See also Gear shift indicator* (p. 275) or Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

Theme "Eco"



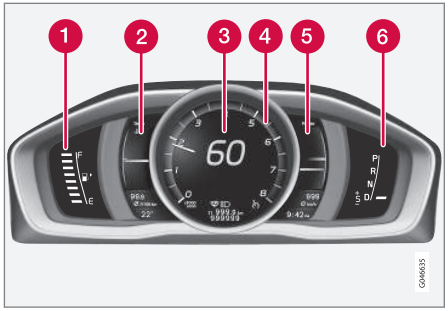
Gauges and indicators, theme "Eco".

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking[5], the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer (p. 110) and Filling up with fuel (p. 302).
2. Eco guide. See also Eco guide & Power guide* (p. 66).
3. Speedometer.
4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
5. Gear shift indicator[6]/Gear position indicator[7]. See also Gear shift indicator* (p. 275) or Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

5 When the display's message "**Distance to empty fuel tank:**" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.
6 Manual gearbox.
7 Automatic gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

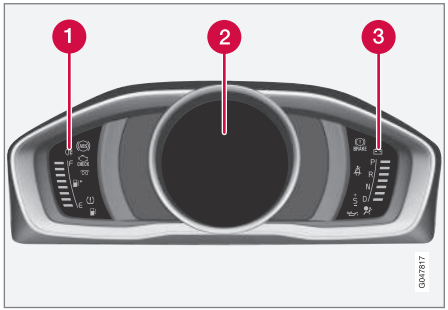
Theme "Performance"



Gauges and indicators, theme "Performance".

1. Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking[5], the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer (p. 110) and Filling up with fuel (p. 302).
2. Temperature gauge for engine coolant.
3. Speedometer.
4. Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).
5. Power guide. See also Eco guide & Power guide* (p. 66).
6. Gear shift indicator[6]/Gear position indicator[7]. See also Gear shift indicator* (p. 275) or Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

Indicator and warning symbols



Indicator and warning symbols, digital instrument panel.

1. Indicator symbols
2. Indicator and warning symbols
3. Warning symbols[8]

Functionality check

All indicator and warning symbols, apart from symbols in the centre of the information display, illuminate in key position **II** or when the engine is started. When the engine has started, all the symbols should go out except the parking brake symbol, which only goes out when the brake is disengaged.

If the engine does not start or if the functionality check is carried out in key position **II** then all symbols go out within a few seconds except the symbol for faults in the car's emissions system and the symbol for low oil pressure.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)

5 When the display's message "**Distance to empty fuel tank:**" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.
6 Manual gearbox.
7 Automatic gearbox.
8 Certain engine variants do not have systems to warn of oil pressure loss. In cars with these variants the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warning for low oil level is via display text. For more information, see Engine oil - general (p. 363).

Eco guide & Power guide*

Eco guide and Power guide are two combined instrument panel (p. 62) instruments which help the driver to drive the car with optimum driving economy.

The car also stores statistics of journeys made, which can be viewed in the form of a block diagram; see Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 118).

Eco guide

This instrument provides an indication of how economically the car is being driven.

To view this function, select the theme "Eco"; see Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63).

1 Instantaneous value

2 Average value

Instantaneous value

The instantaneous value is shown here - the higher the reading on the scale, the better.

The instantaneous value is calculated based on speed, engine speed, engine power utilised plus use of the foot brake.

Optimum speed (50-80 km/h (30-50 mph)) and low engine speeds are encouraged. The pointers fall during acceleration and braking.

Very low instantaneous values illuminate the red zone on the meter (with a short delay), which means poor driving economy and hence should be avoided.

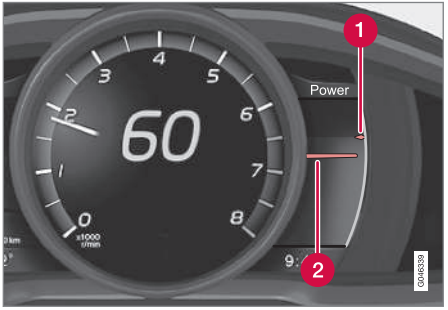
Average value

The average value slowly follows the instantaneous value and describes how the car has been driven most recently. The higher the pointers on the scale, the better the economy achieved by the driver.

Power guide

This instrument shows the relationship between how much power (Power) is being taken from the engine and how much power is available.

To view this function, select the theme "Performance"; see Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63).



1 Available engine power

2 Engine power utilised

Available engine power

The smaller, upper pointer shows the available engine power[9]. The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is available in the current gear.

Engine power utilised

The larger, lower pointer shows the engine power utilised[9]. The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is being taken from the engine.

A large gap between the two pointers indicates a large power reserve.

9 Power is dependent on engine speed.

* Option/accessory.

Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols

The indicator symbols alert the driver that a function is activated, that the system is operating, or that an error or failure has occurred.

Indicator symbols

Symbol	Specification
	ABL fault
CHECK	Emissions system
ABS	ABS fault
	Rear fog lamp on
	Stability system, see Electronic stability control (ESC) - general (p. 183)
OFF	Stability system, sport mode, see Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation (p. 184)
	Engine preheater (diesel)
	Low level in fuel tank
	Information, read display text
	Main beam On
	Left-hand direction indicator
	Right-hand direction indicator
ECO	Eco- function on, see Drive mode ECO* (p. 290)
A	Start/Stop, the engine auto-stopped; see Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
	Tyre pressure system , see Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

ABL fault
The symbol illuminates if a fault has arisen in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights).

Emissions system
If the symbol illuminates after the engine has been started then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

ABS fault
If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
3. If the symbol remains illuminated, drive to a workshop to have the ABS system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Rear fog lamp on
This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

Stability system
A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.

Stability system, sport mode
The symbol illuminates when the sport mode is activated. Sport mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

Engine preheater (diesel)
This symbol illuminates during engine preheating. Preheating takes place mostly due to low temperature.

Low level in fuel tank
When the symbol illuminates the level in the fuel tank is low, refuel as soon as possible.

Information, read display text

When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the information display. The message text is cleared with the **OK** button, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106), or it disappears automatically after a time (time depending on which function is indicated). The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

> **NOTE**
>
> When a service message is shown, the symbol and message are cleared using the **OK** button, or disappear automatically after a time.

Main beam On

The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.

Left/right-hand direction indicator

Both direction indicator symbols flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

Eco function on

This symbol illuminates when the Eco function is activated.

Start/Stop

The symbol shines when the engine is auto-stopped.

Tyre pressure system

The symbol illuminates in the event of low tyre pressure, or if a fault arises in the tyre pressure system.

Reminder – doors not closed

If one of the doors is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the door that is open.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 7 km/h (approx. 4 mph) then the information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 7 km/h (approx. 4 mph) then the warning symbol illuminates.

If the bonnet[10] is not closed properly then the warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the bonnet.

If the boot lid is not closed properly then the information symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the boot lid.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)
- Analogue combined instrument panel - overview (p. 62)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)

10 Only cars with alarm*.

* Option/accessory.

Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols

The warning symbols alert the driver that an important function is activated, or that a serious error or a serious failure has occurred.

Warning symbols

Symbol	Specification
	Low oil pressure[A]
	Parking brake applied (digital instrument panel)
PARK	Parking brake applied (analogue instrument panel)
	Airbags – SRS
	Seatbelt reminder
	Alternator not charging
BRAKE	Fault in brake system
	Warning

A Certain engine variants do not have systems to warn of oil pressure loss. In cars with these variants the symbol for low oil pressure is not used. Warning for low oil level is via display text. For more information, see Engine oil - general (p. 363).

Low oil pressure

If this symbol illuminates during driving then the engine's oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol illuminates and the oil level is normal, contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Parking brake applied

This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. The symbol flashes during application, and then changes over to a constant glow.

A flashing symbol in any other situation means that a fault has arisen. Read the message on the information display.

For more information, see Parking brake (p. 295).

Airbags – SRS

If the symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, a fault has been detected in one of the car's safety systems. Drive to a workshop for checking as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Seatbelt reminder

This symbol flashes if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.

Alternator not charging

This symbol illuminates during driving if a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Fault in brake system

If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Stop the car in a safe place and check the level in the brake fluid reservoir; see Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 367).

If the brake and ABS symbols illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake force distribution system.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
   - If both symbols extinguish, continue driving.
   - If the symbols remain illuminated, check the level in the brake fluid reservoir; see Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 367). If the brake fluid level is normal but the symbols are still illuminated, the car can be driven, with great care, to a workshop to have the brake system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

If the brake fluid is under the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The loss of brake fluid must be investigated by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

If the BRAKE and ABS symbols are lit at the same time, there is a risk that the rear end will skid during heavy braking.

Warning

The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the information display at the same time. The symbol remains visible until the fault has been rectified but the text message can be cleared with the **OK** button; see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106). The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

Action:

1. Stop in a safe place. Do not drive the car further.
2. Read the information on the information display. Implement the action in accordance with the message in the display. Clear the message using the **OK** button.

Reminder – doors not closed

If one of the doors is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the door that is open.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 7 km/h (approx. 4 mph) then the information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 7 km/h (approx. 4 mph) then the warning symbol illuminates.

If the bonnet[11] is not closed properly then the warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the bonnet.

If the boot lid is not closed properly then the information symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the boot lid.

[11] Only cars with alarm*.

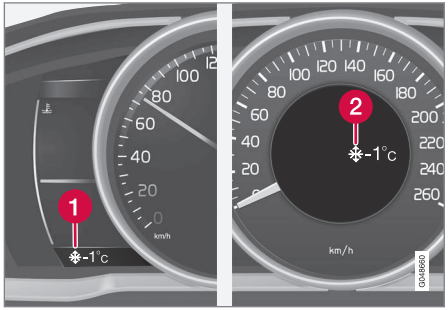
* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67)
- Analogue combined instrument panel - overview (p. 62)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)

Outside temperature gauge

The display for the outside temperature gauge appears in the combined instrument panel.



1 Display for outside temperature gauge, digital instrument panel

2 Display for outside temperature gauge, analogue instrument panel

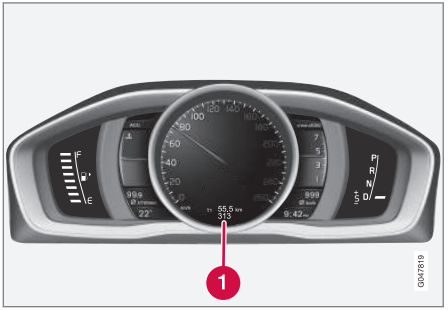
When the temperature lies between +2 °C to -5 °C a snowflake symbol illuminates in the display. This warns of icy roads. If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a reading that is too high.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

Trip meter

The trip meter display appears in the combined instrument panel.



Trip meter, digital instrument panel.

1 Display for trip meter[12]

Both trip meters **T1** and **T2** are used to measure short distances. The distance is shown in the display.

Turn the left-hand stalk switch's thumbwheel to show the required meter.

A long press (until the change occurs) on the left-hand stalk switch **RESET** button resets the trip meter shown. For more information, see Trip computer (p. 110).

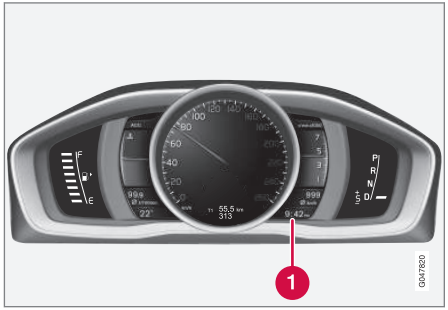
Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

12 Display appearance may differ depending on instrument variant.

Clock

The clock display appears in the combined instrument panel.



Clock, digital instrument panel.

1 Display for showing the time[13]

Setting the clock

The clock can be adjusted in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

Combined instrument panel - license agreement

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer/developer.

Combined Instrument Panel Software

Open Source Software Notice

This product uses certain free / open source and other software originating from third parties, that is subject to the GNU Lesser General Public License version 2 (LGPLv2), The FreeType Project License ("FreeType License") and other different and/or additional copy right licenses, disclaimers and notices. The links to access the exact terms of LGPLv2, and the other open source software licenses, disclaimers, acknowledgements and notices are provided to you below. Please refer to the exact terms of the relevant License, regarding your rights under said licenses. Volvo Car Corporation (VCC) offers to provide the source code of said free/open source software to you for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution, such as the cost of media, shipping and handling, upon written request. Please contact your nearest Volvo Dealer.

The offer is valid for a period of at least three (3) years from the date of the distribution of this product by VCC / or for as long as VCC offers spare parts or customer support.

Portions of this product uses software copyrighted © 2007 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Portions of this product uses software with Copyright © 1994–2013 Lua.org, PUC-Rio (http://www.lua.org/)

This product includes software under following licenses:

LGPL v2.1: http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html

- GNU FriBidi
- DevIL

The FreeType Project License: http://git.savannah.gnu.org/cgit/freetype/freetype2.git/tree/docs/FTL.TXT

- FreeType 2

13 The time is shown in the centre of an analogue instrument panel.

MIT License: http://opensource.org/licenses/mit-license.html

- Lua

Symbols in the display

There are a variety of different symbols in the display in the car. The symbols are divided into warning, indicator and information symbols.

Shown below are the most common symbols with their meanings and a reference to where in the manual further information can be found.

- Red warning symbol, illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown in the information display in the combined instrument panel at the same time.

- Information symbol, illuminates in combination with text in the information display in the combined instrument panel, when a deviation in any of the car's systems has occurred. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

Warning symbols in the combined instrument panel

Symbol	Specification	See
	Low oil pressure	(p. 69)
	Parking brake applied	(p. 69), (p. 295)
PARK	Parking brake applied, alternative symbol	(p. 69)
	Airbags – SRS	(p. 32), (p. 69)
	Seatbelt reminder	(p. 28), (p. 69)
	Alternator not charging	(p. 69)
BRAKE	Fault in brake system	(p. 69), (p. 292)
	Warning, safety mode	(p. 32), (p. 42), (p. 69)

Control symbols in the combined instrument panel

Symbol	Specification	See
	ABL fault*	(p. 67), (p. 91)
CHECK	Emissions system	(p. 67)
ABS	ABS fault	(p. 67), (p. 292)

Symbol	Specification	See
	Rear fog lamp on	(p. 67), (p. 92)
	Stability system, ESC (Electronic Stability Control), Trailer stability assist	(p. 67), (p. 185), (p. 315)
OFF	Stability system, sport mode	(p. 67), (p. 185)
	Engine preheater (diesel)	(p. 67)
	Low level in fuel tank	(p. 67), (p. 138)
	Information, read display text	(p. 67)
	Main beam On	(p. 67), (p. 88)
	Left-hand direction indicators	(p. 67)
	Right-hand direction indicators	(p. 67)
	Start/Stop*, engine auto-stopped	(p. 67), (p. 288)

Symbol	Specification	See
ECO	ECO function* on	(p. 67), (p. 290)
	Tyre pressure system*	(p. 67), (p. 335)

Information symbols in the combined instrument panel

Symbol	Specification	See
	Cruise control*	(p. 190)
	Adaptive cruise control*	(p. 207)
	Adaptive cruise control*, time interval	(p. 196), (p. 198)
	Adaptive cruise control*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert)	(p. 201), (p. 193)
	Radar sensor*	(p. 207), (p. 195), (p. 230)
LIM	Speed limiter	(p. 187)

Symbol	Specification	See
	Windscreen sensor*, Camera sensor*, Laser sensor*	(p. 89), (p. 220), (p. 230), (p. 243), (p. 247), (p. 252)
	Auto Brake*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert), City Safety™, Collision warning system*	(p. 195), (p. 220), (p. 230)
	ABL system*	(p. 91)
	Driver Alert System*, Time for a break	(p. 241)
	Driver Alert System*, Time for a break	(p. 243)
(P)!	Parking brake	(p. 295)
	Rain sensor*	(p. 97)
	Active main beam, AHB (Active High Beam)*	(p. 89)

* Option/accessory.

Symbol	Specification	See
	Start/Stop*	(p. 288)
	Start/Stop*	(p. 288)
	Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)	(p. 243), (p. 247), (p. 252)
	Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning*	(p. 246)
	Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning*	(p. 247), (p. 252)
	Recorded speed information*	(p. 237)
	Engine block and passenger compartment heater*	(p. 138)

Symbol	Specification	See
	Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* Service required	(p. 138)
	Activated timer*	(p. 138)
	Activated timer*	(p. 138)
	Low battery	(p. 138)
	Fuel filler flap, right-hand side	(p. 302)
	Gear shift indicator	(p. 275)
	Gear positions	(p. 276)
	Measuring the oil level	(p. 364)
	Park Assist Pilot - PAP*	(p. 260)

Information symbols in the roof console display

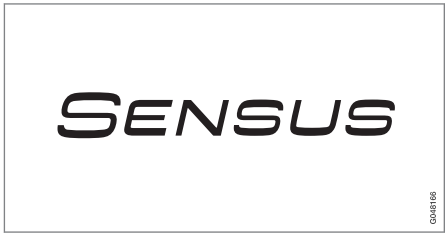
Symbol	Specification	See
	Seatbelt reminder	(p. 31)
	Airbag, passenger seat, activated	(p. 36)
	Airbag, passenger seat, deactivated	(p. 36)

Related information

- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)
- Messages - handling (p. 109)

Volvo Sensus

Volvo Sensus is the heart of the personal Volvo experience and connects you with the car and outside world. Sensus provides information, entertainment and assistance when it is needed. Sensus consists of intuitive functions that both enhance the car journey and simplifies ownership of the car.



An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary, without distracting the driver.

Sensus covers all the car's solutions that enable connection* to the outside world and provides you with intuitive control over all the car's capabilities.

Volvo Sensus combines and presents many functions in several of the car's systems on the centre console's screen. With Volvo Sensus the car can be personalised by means of an intuitive user interface. Settings can be made in Car settings, Audio and media, Climate control, etc.

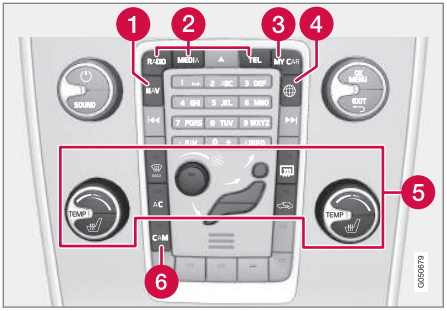
With the centre console buttons and controls or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad* functions can be activated or deactivated and many different settings can be made.

With a press on **MY CAR** all settings related to the driving and control of the car are presented, such as City Safety, locks and alarm, automatic fan speed, setting the clock, etc.

With a press on the respective function **RADIO**, **MEDIA**, **TEL***, ⊕*, **NAV*** and **CAM**[14] other sources, systems and functions can be activated, e.g. AM, FM, CD, DVD*, TV*, Bluetooth®*, navigation* and park assist camera*.

For more information about all functions/systems, see the relevant section in the owner's manual or its supplement.

Overview



Control panel in centre console. The figure is schematic - the number of functions and layout of the buttons both vary, depending on the equipment selected and the market.

1. Navigation* - **NAV**, see separate supplement (Sensus Navigation).
2. Audio and media - **RADIO**, **MEDIA**, **TEL***, see separate supplement (Sensus Infotainment).
3. Function settings - **MY CAR**, see MY CAR (p. 109).
4. Internet-connected car - ⊕*, see separate supplement (Sensus Infotainment).
5. Climate control system (p. 120).
6. Park assist camera* (p. 257) – **CAM***.

14 Applies to certain car models.

* Option/accessory.

Key positions

The remote control key can be used to set the vehicle's electrical system in different modes/levels so that different functions are available; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted.

NOTE

For cars with the keyless start and lock system* the remote control key does not need to be inserted into the ignition switch but can be stored in e.g. a pocket. For more information on the keyless start and lock system, see Keyless drive* (p. 165).

Insert the remote control key

1. Hold the end of the remote control key with the detachable key blade and insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.
2. Then press the remote control key in the ignition switch up to its end position.

IMPORTANT

Foreign objects in the ignition switch can impair the function or destroy the lock.

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - hold the end with the detachable key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161).

Remove the remote control key

Grip the remote control key and pull it out from the ignition switch.

Key positions - functions at different levels

To enable the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels - **0**, **I** and **II** - with the remote control key. This owner's manual describes these levels throughout using the denomination "key positions".

The following table shows the functions available in each key position/level.

Level	Functions
0	• Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated. • Electrically operated seats can be adjusted. • The audio system can be used for a limited time - see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.
I	• Sunroof, power windows, 12 V socket in the passenger compartment, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used.
II	• The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, electric heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after starting the engine. **This key position consumes a lot of current from the starter battery and should therefore be avoided!**

Selecting key position/level

- **Key position 0** - Unlock the car - This means that the car's electrical system is at level **0**.

NOTE

To reach level **I** or **II without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake/clutch pedal when these key positions are due to be selected.

- **Key position I** - With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch[15] - Briefly press **START/STOP ENGINE**.
- **Key position II** - With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch[15] - Give a long[16] press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.
- **Back to key position 0 -** To return to key position **0** from position **II** and **I** - Briefly press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.

Audio system

For information on audio system functions with remote control key removed, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

Starting and stopping the engine

For information about starting/stopping the engine, see Starting the engine (p. 268).

Towing

For important information about the remote control key during towing, see Towing (p. 316).

Related information

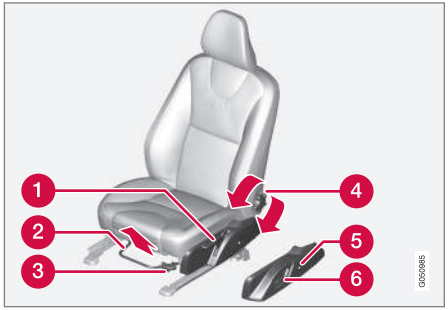
- Key positions (p. 77)

15 Not required for cars with keyless start and lock system*.
16 Approx. 2 seconds.

* Option/accessory.

Seats, front

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort.

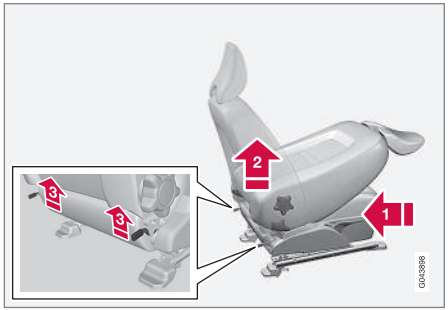


1. Raise/lower the seat, pump up/down.
2. Forward/backward: lift the handle to adjust the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after changing position.
3. Raise/lower* front edge of seat cushion, pump up/down.
4. Adjust backrest rake, turn the wheel.
5. Change the lumbar support*, press the button.
6. Control panel for power seat*, see Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80).

WARNING

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

Lowering the passenger seat backrest*[17]



The passenger seat's backrest can be folded forward to make room for long loads.

1. Move the seat as far back/down as possible.
2. Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
3. Lift the catches on the rear of the backrest and fold it forward.
4. Push the seat forward so that the head restraint "locks" in under the glovebox.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

Grasp the backrest and make sure that it is properly locked after being folded up in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Related information

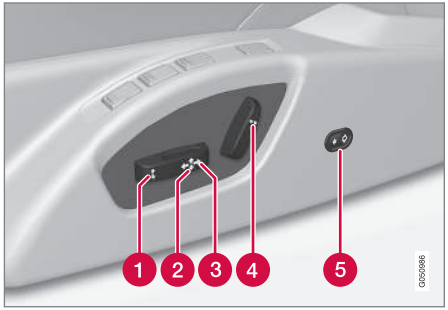
- Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80)
- Seats, rear (p. 81)

17 Only applies to comfort seats.

Seats, front - electrically operated*

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forward/backward and up/down. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered. The backrest angle and lumbar support* can be changed.

Power seat



1. Front edge of seat cushion up/down
2. Raise/lower seat
3. Seat, forward/backward
4. Backrest rake
5. Lumbar support* is adjusted inward and outward

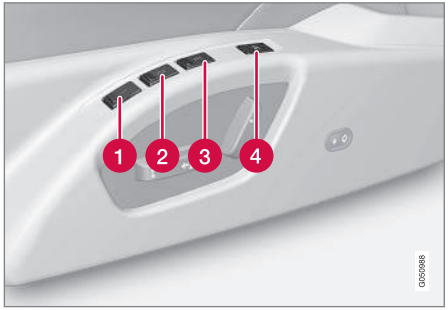
The power seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this should happen, set the car's electrical system in key position **I** or **0** and wait a short time before adjusting the seat again.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down/inward/outward) can be made at a time.

Preparations

The seat can be adjusted for a certain time after unlocking the door with the remote control key without the key in the ignition switch. Seat adjustment is normally made in key position **I** and can always be made when the engine is running.

Seat with memory function*



The memory function stores settings for the seat and the door mirrors.

Store setting

1. Memory button
2. Memory button
3. Memory button
4. Button for storing settings

1. Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.
2. Press and hold button **M** while pressing button **1**, **2** or **3** simultaneously. Hold the buttons depressed until the acoustic signal is heard and text is shown in the combined instrument panel.

The seat must be adjusted again before a new memory can be set.

The setting for lumbar support is not stored.

Using a stored setting

Press one of the memory buttons **1**-**3** until the seat and the door mirrors stop. If the button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be interrupted.

Key memory* in remote control key

All remote control keys can be used by different drivers to store the settings for the driver's seat and door mirrors[18], see Remote control key - personalisation* (p. 155).

18 Only if the car is equipped with power seat with memory and power retractable door mirrors. The setting for lumbar support is not stored.

* Option/accessory.

Emergency stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press one of the setting buttons for the seat or memory buttons in order to stop the seat.

Restarting to reach the seat position stored in the key memory is performed by pressing the unlock button on the remote control key. The driver's door must then be open.

WARNING

Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the controls. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Make sure that none of the passengers in the rear seat is in danger of becoming trapped.

Heated seats

For heated seats, see Heated front seats* (p. 127) and Heated rear seat* (p. 128).

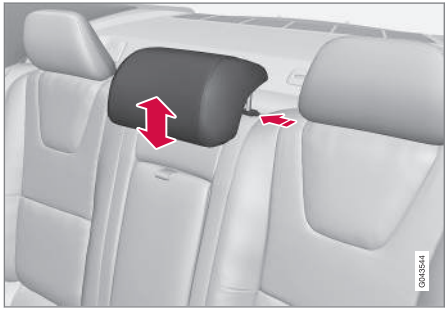
Related information

- Seats, front (p. 79)
- Seats, rear (p. 81)

Seats, rear

The rear seat backrest and the outer seat head restraints can be folded. The centre seat head restraint can be adjusted to suit the height of the passenger.

Head restraint, centre seat, rear



Adjust the head restraint according to passenger height so that the whole of the back of the head is covered if possible. Slide it up as required.

To lower the head restraint again, the button by the left-hand shaft must be pressed in while the head restraint is pressed down carefully.

WARNING

The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Lowering the rear seat backrest

IMPORTANT

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

The backrest is in two parts. The parts can be folded forward, together or separately.

1. Pull on the required handle. They are located just inside the hatch opening.
2. Fold the backrest forward.

Lower the centre head restraint fully if the backrest's wide section shall be lowered.

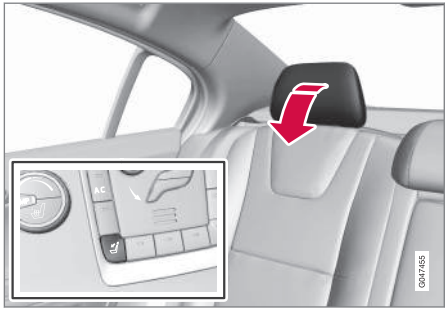
NOTE

When the backrests have been lowered the head restraints must be moved forward slightly so as not to make contact with the seat cushion.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints are securely locked after raising to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Electrical lowering of the rear seat's outer head restraints*



1. The remote control key must be in key position **II**.
2. Press the button to lower the rear outer head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

WARNING

Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer seats.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

WARNING

The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.

Related information

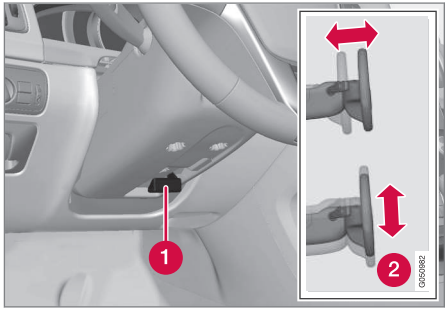
- Seats, front (p. 79)
- Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80)

* Option/accessory.

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions and has controls for horn and cruise control, as well as menu, audio and phone control.

Adjusting



Adjusting the steering wheel.

1. Lever - releasing the steering wheel
2. Possible steering wheel positions

The steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth:

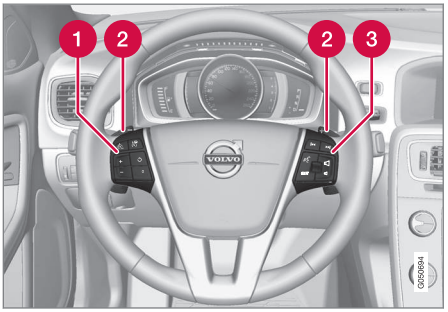
1. The lever is pulled towards the driver to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Push back the lever to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you push the lever back.

WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away.

With speed related power steering* the level of steering force can be adjusted, see Adjustable steering force* (p. 182).

Keypads* and paddles*



Keypads and paddles in the steering wheel.

1. Cruise control* (p. 190)* and Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)*.
2. Paddle for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox, see Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).
3. Audio and phone control, see supplement, Sensus Infotainment.

Horn

Horn.

Press the centre of the steering wheel to signal.

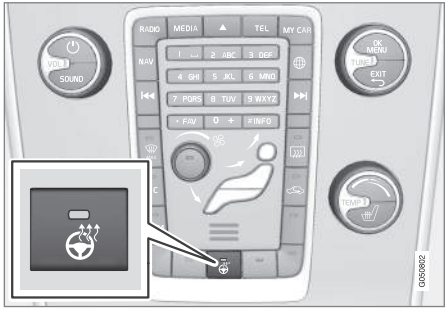
Related information

- Heating* of the steering wheel (p. 84)

Heating* of the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be heated with electric heating.

Function



Button position may vary depending on equipment selected and market.

Repeatedly **press the button to switch** between the following functions:

Function	Indicator
Switched off	Button lamp extinguished
Heating	Button lamp illuminated

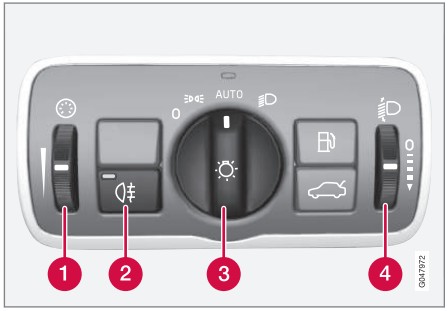
Automatic steering wheel heating

With activated automatic start of steering wheel heating, the heating of the steering wheel starts when the engine is started. Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is below approx. 10 °C. Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109).

* Option/accessory.

Light switches

The headlamp control activates and adjusts the external lighting. It is also used to adjust display and instrument lighting and ambience lights (p. 95).



Overview, light switches.

1. Thumbwheel for adjusting display and instrument lighting as well as ambience lights*
2. Button for rear fog lamp
3. Knob for lighting while driving and parking
4. Thumbwheel for headlamp levelling

A car with active xenon headlamps* has automatic headlamp levelling and therefore does not have the thumbwheel for headlamp levelling.

Knob positions

NOTE

The same lamps are used for daytime running lights and front position lamps. The brightness is higher when the lamps are used as daytime running lights.

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights[A] when the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or the engine is running. Main beam flash can be used.
≡D ⊂≡	Daytime running lights, position lamps rear and side marker lamps when the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or the engine is running. Position lamps/side marker lamps when the car is parked[B]. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Daytime running lights, position lamps rear and side marker lamps in daylight when the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or the engine is running. Dipped beam and position lamps/side marker lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the rear fog lamp or windscreen wipers with continuous wiping are activated. The tunnel detection (p. 88)* function is activated. The Active main beam (p. 89)* function can be used. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
≡D	Dipped beam and position lamps/side marker lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.

A Fitted in or under the front bumper.
B Also at idle when the engine is running, provided that the knob is moved to this position from another position.

Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the car is driven.

WARNING

The car's audio system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Display and instrument lighting

Different display and instrument lighting is switched on depending on key position; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

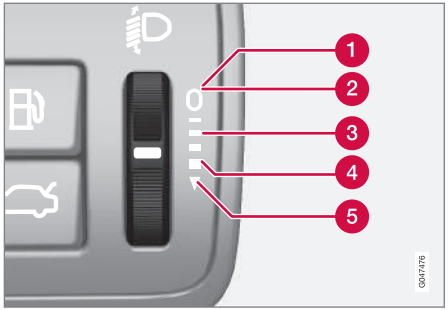
The display lighting is automatically subdued in darkness - the sensitivity is set with the thumbwheel.

The intensity of the instrument lighting is adjusted with the thumbwheel.

Headlamp levelling

The load in the car changes the vertical alignment of the headlamp beam, which could dazzle oncoming motorists. Avoid this by adjusting the height of the beam. Lower the beam if the car is heavily laden.

1. Leave the engine running, or have the car's electrical system in key position **I**.
2. Roll the thumbwheel up/down to raise/lower beam alignment.



Thumbwheel positions for different load cases.

1. Only driver
2. Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat
3. Occupants in all seats
4. Occupants in all seats and maximum load in the cargo area
5. The driver and maximum load in the cargo area

Related information

- Position lamps (p. 86)
- Daytime running lights (p. 87)
- Main/dipped beam (p. 88)

Position lamps

Position lamps are switched on using the headlamp control's knob.

Knob for headlamp control in the position for position lamps.

Turn the knob to the position for (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or the engine is running then the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps.

When it is dark outside and the boot lid is opened the rear position lamps illuminate to alert traffic behind. This takes place irrespective of what position the knob is in or what key position the car's electrical system is in.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed

exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on and **Reset light switch position** is shown in the combined instrument panel, which prompts you to turn to a mode other than .

Related information

- Light switches (p. 85)

Daytime running lights

With the knob for headlamp control in AUTO position, and the car's electrical system in key position **II** or the engine running, the daytime running lights are activated automatically in daylight.

Daytime running lights during the day. DRL

Knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position.

With the knob for headlamp control in AUTO position the daytime running lights (Daytime Running Lights - DRL) are activated automatically when the car is driven in daylight. A light sensor on the top of the instrument panel changes from daytime running lights to dipped beam at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Switching to dipped beam also takes place when the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamp are activated.

WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 88)
- Light switches (p. 85)

Tunnel detection*

Tunnel detection changes the lighting from daytime running lights to dipped beam when the car is driven into a tunnel.

The tunnel detection function is available in cars with rain sensor*. The sensor detects the entrance to a tunnel and resets the lighting from daytime running lights to dipped beam. Approx. 20 seconds after the car has left the tunnel, the lighting returns to daytime running lights. If the car is driven into another tunnel within this time period then dipped beam is kept switched on. This avoids repeated changes to the car's lighting.

Note that the headlamp control's knob must remain in AUTO position for tunnel detection to work.

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 88)
- Light switches (p. 85)

Main/dipped beam

With the knob for headlamp control in position AUTO and the car's electrical system in key position **II** or the engine running, the dipped beam is activated automatically in poor light conditions.

Stalk switch and knob for headlamp control.

1 Position for main beam flash

2 Position for main beam

Dipped beam

With the knob in AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Dipped beam is also activated automatically if the windscreen wipers or the rear fog lamps are activated.

With the knob in position dipped beam is always switched on when the engine is running or when key position **II** is active.

Main beam flash

Move the stalk switch gently towards the steering wheel to the position for main beam flash. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

Main beam can be activated when the knob is in position AUTO[19] or . Activate/deactivate main beam by moving the stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing. Alternatively, the main beam can be deactivated by a light press of the stalk switch toward the steering wheel.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel.

Auxiliary lamps*

If the car has auxiliary lamps, the driver can use the MY CAR menu system to choose whether they should be deactivated or switched on/off simultaneously with the main beam[20], see MY CAR (p. 109).

19 When dipped beam is switched on.
20 Auxiliary lamps must be connected to the electrical system by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Active Xenon headlamps* (p. 91)
- Active main beam* (p. 89)
- Light switches (p. 85)
- Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern (p. 92)
- Tunnel detection* (p. 88)

Active main beam*

Active main beam function detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and switches the lighting from main beam to dipped beam. The lighting returns to main beam when the incoming light has stopped.

Active main beam - AHB

Active main beam (Active High Beam - AHB) is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam. The function can also take streetlights into account.

Main beam is reactivated when the camera sensor no longer sees any oncoming vehicles or vehicles ahead.

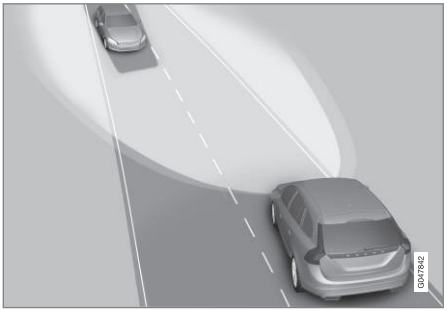
Car with halogen headlamps

The lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

Car with active Xenon headlamps

If the active main beam has the on/off functionality[21] then the lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

If the active main beam has adaptive functionality[21] then, unlike what happens during conventional dimming, the light beam continues to illuminate with main beam on both sides of oncoming traffic or vehicles ahead - only the part of the light beam that points directly to the vehicle is dimmed.



Adaptive functionality: Dipped beam directly toward oncoming vehicles, but continued main beam on both sides of the vehicle.

The lighting returns to full main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

21 Depending on the car's equipment level.

Activating/deactivating

AHB can be activated when the headlamp control's knob is in position AUTO (provided that the function has not been deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109)).

Stalk switch and knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.

Activate/deactivate AHB by moving the left-hand stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing. Deactivation when main beam is on means that the lights are reset directly to dipped beam.

Car with analogue combined instrument panel

When AHB is activated the symbol illuminates in the instrument's information display.

When main beam is switched on the symbol also illuminates in the combined instrument panel. This also applies for active Xenon headlamps if the main beam is partially dimmed, i.e. as soon as the light beam shines with slightly more than dipped beam.

Car with digital combined instrument panel

When AHB is activated the symbol turns white in the instrument's information display.

When main beam is activated, the symbol turns blue. This also applies for active Xenon headlamps if the main beam is partially dimmed, i.e. as soon as the light beam shines with slightly more than dipped beam.

Manual operation

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

If the message **Active main beam Temporary unavailable Switch manually** is shown in the combined instrument panel's information display then you have to switch manually between main and dipped beam. However, the knob for headlamp control can still remain in position AUTO. The same applies if the message **Windscreen sensors blocked See manual** and the symbol are shown. The symbol goes out when these messages are shown.

AHB may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When AHB becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message extinguishes and the symbol illuminates.

WARNING

AHB is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

IMPORTANT

Examples of when manual switching between main and dipped beam may be required:

- In heavy rain or dense fog
- In freezing rain
- In snow flurries or slush
- In moonlight
- When driving in poorly lit built-up areas
- When the traffic ahead has weak lighting
- If there are pedestrians on or beside the road
- If there are highly reflective objects such as signs in the vicinity of the road
- When the lighting from oncoming traffic is obscured by e.g. a crash barrier
- When there is traffic on connecting roads
- On the brow of a hill or in a hollow
- In sharp bends.

For more information on the limitations of the camera sensor, see Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 228).

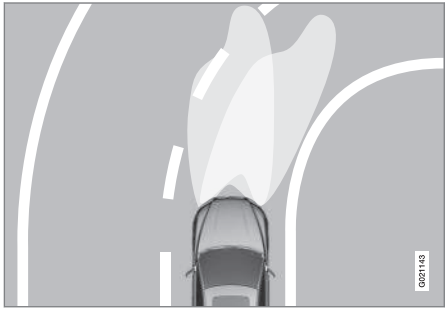
Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 88)
- Light switches (p. 85)

Active Xenon headlamps*

Active xenon headlamps/active bending lights are designed to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

Active xenon headlamps/active bending lights - ABL



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

If the car is equipped with active xenon headlamps/active bending lights (Active Bending Lights, ABL) the light from the headlamps follows the steering wheel movement in order to provide maximum lighting in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started (provided that it has not been deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109)). In the event of a fault in the function the symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel at the same time as the information display shows an explanatory text and a further illuminated symbol.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Headlamp system malfunction Service required	The system is disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

The function is only active in twilight or darkness and only when the car is moving.

The function[22] can be deactivated/activated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

22 Activated on delivery from the factory.

Cornering lights*

Active xenon headlamps/active bending lights with Automatic main beam function with adaptive functionality are equipped with cornering lights. The cornering lights temporarily illuminate the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated when main beam or dipped beam is used and the car's speed is lower than approx. 30 km/h (20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 88)
- Active main beam* (p. 89)
- Light switches (p. 85)

Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern

If the car is equipped with active Xenon headlamps and has the Active main beam function then the headlamp pattern must be reset when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

Active Xenon headlamps*

No adjustment of the headlamp pattern is necessary for cars without the Active main beam* function. The headlamp pattern is designed in such a way that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Adjustment of the headlamp pattern is required for cars with Active main beam. The car must be stationary with the engine running when the headlamp pattern is shifted between right and left-hand traffic.

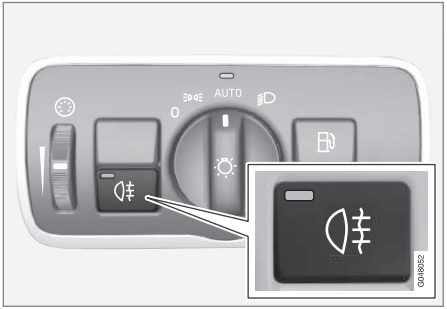
The headlamp pattern is changed in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Halogen headlamps

No adjustment of the headlamp pattern is necessary. The headlamp pattern is designed in such a way that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Rear fog lamp

When visibility is reduced by fog the rear fog lamp can be used so that other road users can detect the vehicle in front at an early stage.



Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when key position **II** is active or the engine is running and the headlamp control's knob is in position AUTO or .

Press the button for On/Off. The indicator symbol in the combined instrument panel and the light in the button both illuminate when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when the **START/STOP ENGINE** button is depressed or when the headlamp control's knob is turned to position 0 or .

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Related information

- Light switches (p. 85)

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is switched on when the brake pedal is depressed. In addition, it is switched on when one of driving support systems Adaptive cruise control (p. 196), City Safety (p. 214) or Collision warning system (p. 221) brakes the car.

Related information

- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 294)

Hazard warning flashers

The hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicator lamps flashing simultaneously when this function is activated.

Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers. Both direction indicator symbols in the combined instrument panel flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

The hazard warning flashers are activated automatically when the car has been braked so suddenly that the emergency brake lights have been activated and speed is below approx. 10 km/h (6 mph). The hazard warning flashers remain active when the car has stopped and are deactivated automatically when you start driving again; they can also be deactivated by pressing the button.

Related information

- direction indicators (p. 94)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 294)

direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.

Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

1 Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Continuous flash sequence

2 Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Direction indicator symbols

For direction indicator symbols, see Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 67).

Related information

- Hazard warning flashers (p. 93)

Interior lighting

The passenger compartment lighting is activated/deactivated with the buttons in the controls above the front seats and the rear seat.

Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

1. Reading lamp, left-hand side
2. Reading lamp, right-hand side
3. Interior lighting

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually within 30 minutes from when:

- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but the engine has not been started.

Front roof lighting

The front reading lamps are switched on or off by pressing the relevant button in the roof console.

Rear roof lighting

Rear roof lighting.

The lamps are switched on or off by pressing each respective button.

Courtesy lighting

Courtesy lighting (and passenger compartment lighting) is switched on and off respectively when a side door is opened or closed.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Vanity mirror lighting

The lighting for the vanity mirror (p. 147) is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Lighting in cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the boot lid is opened or closed.

Automatic lighting

The switch for passenger compartment lighting has three positions for the lighting in the passenger compartment:

- **Off** – right-hand side pressed in, automatic lighting deactivated.
- **Neutral position** – automatic lighting activated.
- **On** – left-hand side pressed in, passenger compartment lighting switched on.

Neutral position

When the button is in neutral position the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off automatically in accordance with the following.

The passenger compartment lighting is switched on and remains on for 30 seconds if:

- the car is unlocked with the remote control key or key blade, see Remote control key -

functions (p. 158) or Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 162)

- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**.

Passenger compartment lighting is switched off when:

- the engine is started
- the car is locked.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on and remains on for two minutes if one of the doors is open.

If any lighting is switched on manually and the car is locked then it will be switched off automatically after two minutes.

Ambience lights*

When the normal passenger compartment lighting is switched off and the engine is running, a number of LEDs illuminate, including one in the ceiling lighting, in order to provide a low-light and enhance the mood while driving. The light also makes it easier to see objects in storage compartments etc. during the darker hours of the day. This lighting goes out for a little while after the normal passenger compartment lighting when the car is locked. The brightness is controlled using the thumbwheel on the headlamp control (p. 85).

Home safe lighting

Home safe lighting consists of dipped beam, position lamps, lamps in the door mirrors, number plate lighting.

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

1. Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to the end position and release it. The function can be activated in the same way as with main beam flash; see Main/dipped beam (p. 88).
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, dipped beam, position lamps, lamps in the door mirrors and number plate lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the home safe lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Approach lighting (p. 96)

Approach lighting

Approach lighting consists of position lamps, lamps in the door mirrors, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting as well as courtesy lighting.

Approach lighting is switched on with the remote control key, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158), and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

When the function is activated with the remote control key, position lamps, lamps in the door mirrors, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps and courtesy lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the approach lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

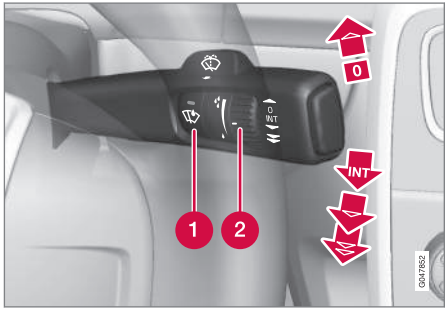
- Home safe lighting (p. 96)

* Option/accessory.

Wipers and washers

Wipers and washers clean the windscreen and rear window. The headlamps are cleaned with high-pressure washing.

Windscreen wipers[23]



Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers.

1. Rain sensor, On/Off
2. Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

Windscreen wipers off

0 — Move the stalk switch to position **0** to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Single sweep

Raise the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Intermittent wiping

INT — Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

The wipers sweep at normal speed.

The wipers sweep at high speed.

IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen (and rear window) is scraped away.

IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

Service position wiper blade

For cleaning the windscreen/wiper blades and replacement of wiper blades, see Car wash (p. 401) and Wiper blades (p. 378).

Rain sensor*

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted using the thumbwheel.

When the rain sensor is activated a lamp in the button is illuminated and the rain sensor symbol is shown in the combined instrument panel.

Activating and setting the sensitivity

When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the remote control key in position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button . The windscreen wipers make one sweep.

Press the stalk switch up for the wipers to make an extra sweep.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. (An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.)

23 For replacing the wiper blades and service position wiper blades, see Wiper blades (p. 378). For filling washer fluid, see Washer fluid - filling (p. 379).

Deactivate

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or move the stalk switch down to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is automatically deactivated when the remote control key is removed from the ignition switch or five minutes after the engine has been switched off.

IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor while the car is in motion or when the remote control key is in position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the combined instrument panel and the lamp in the button go out.

Washing the headlamps and windows

Washing function.

Washing the windscreen

Move the stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.

The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps and the headlamps are washed once the stalk switch has been released.

Heated washer nozzles*

The washer nozzles are heated automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid freezing solid.

High-pressure headlamp washing*

High-pressure headlamp washing consumes a large quantity of washer fluid. To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at every fifth windscreen wash cycle.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message that you should fill the washer fluid is shown in the combined instrument panel, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is in order to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it.

Related information

- Washer fluid - filling (p. 379)

Power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors operate their respective power window.

Driver's door control panel.

1. Electric child safety locks that prevent children from being able to open the rear doors from inside* and open/close the rear windows, see Child safety locks - electrical activation* (p. 177).
2. Controls for rear windows
3. Controls for front windows

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not trapped when the windows are closed from the driver's door.

WARNING

Check that no children or other passengers are trapped if/when the windows are closed using the remote control key.

WARNING

If there are children in the car - remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Operating

Operating the power windows.

1 Operating without auto

2 Operating with auto

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors can only operate their respective power window. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

In order for the power windows to be used, the key position must be at least **I** - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77). The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the engine has been switched off and after the remote control key has been removed - although not after a door has been opened.

Closing of the windows is stopped and the window is opened if anything prevents its movement. It is possible to override the pinch protection when closing has been interrupted, e.g. if there is ice forming. After two successive closing interruptions the pinch protection will be forced and the automatic function deactivated for a short while, now it is possible to close by continually holding the button pulled up.

NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Operating without auto

Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

Operating with auto

Move one of the controls up/down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

Operating with the remote control key or central locking button

To operate the power windows from the outside with the remote control key, or from inside with the central locking button, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158) or Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171).

Resetting

If the battery is disconnected then the function for automatic opening must be reset so that it can work correctly.

1. Gently raise the front section of the button to raise the window to its end position and hold it there for one second.
2. Release the button briefly.
3. Raise the front section of the button again for one second.

WARNING

A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Sun blind*

There is a sun blind built into the rear parcel shelf.

– Pull up the sun blind and hook it into the roof clip using the two hooks for the blind.
  > The spring force in the blind keeps the hooks in position.

When the sun blind is not in use - unhook it, hold onto the handle and allow the blind to roll up slowly.

Door mirrors

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door controls.

Controls for door mirrors.

Adjusting

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

Both mirrors are the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

Storing settings[24]

The settings for the door mirrors and the positions of the driver's seat can be stored for each remote control key in the car key memory*, see Remote control key - personalisation* (p. 155).

Angling the door mirror when parking[24]

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

– Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after approx. 10 seconds, or earlier by pressing the button labelled **L** or **R** respectively.

Automatic angling of the door mirror when parking[24]

When reverse gear is engaged the door mirror is automatically angled down so that the driver can see the side of the road when parking for example. When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after a short time.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Automatic retraction when locking*

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control key the door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/extending to work correctly:

1. Retract the mirrors with the **L** and **R** buttons.
2. Fold them out again with the **L** and **R** buttons.
3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

Automatic dimming*

For the door mirrors to be fitted with this function requires that the interior rearview mirror also has automatic dimming, see Rearview mirror - interior (p. 102).

Retractable power door mirrors*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces:

1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously (key position must be at least **I**).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

Home safe and approach lighting

The lamp on the door mirrors illuminates when approach lighting (p. 96) or home safe lighting (p. 96) is selected.

Related information

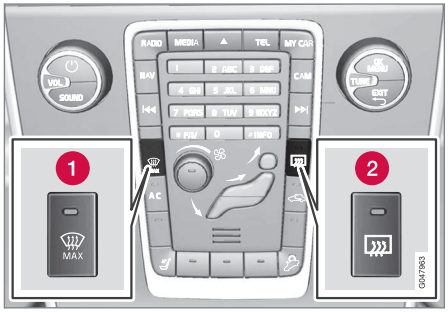
- Rearview mirror - interior (p. 102)
- Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating (p. 102)

[24] Only in combination with power seat with memory, see Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80).

Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating

The defroster is used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen, rear window and door mirrors.

Heated windscreen*, rear window and door mirrors



1 Heating, windscreen

2 Heating, rear window and door mirrors

The function is used to remove ice and misting from the windscreen, rear window and door mirrors.

One press of the respective button starts the heating. The light in the button indicates that the function is active. Switch off the heating as soon as the ice/misting is cleared in order not to load the battery unnecessarily. However, the function is switched off automatically after a certain time. Following which, rear window heating is switched on and off automatically as long as the outside temperature is lower than +7 °C.

> **NOTE**
>
> Rear window heating is not switched on and off automatically if the Eco function is activated, but then remains switched off, even in outside temperatures below +7 °C. For information about the Eco function, see Drive mode ECO* (p. 290).

See also Demisting and defrosting the windscreen (p. 130).

The door mirrors and rear window are demisted/defrosted automatically if the car is started in an outside temperature lower than +7 °C. Automatic defrosting can be selected in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Using the Engine Remote Start (ERS)* function, the heated windscreen is demisted/defrosted automatically if the ambient temperature is lower than +5 °C and automatic defrosting has been selected in the menu system MY CAR.

Rearview mirror - interior

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge. Alternatively, the rearview mirror dims automatically.

1 Control for dimming

Manual dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirror and dazzle the driver. Use dimming with the dimming control when lights from behind are distracting:

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal position by moving the control towards the windscreen.

* Option/accessory.

Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirror. The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

The rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

NOTE

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or on the parcel shelf in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

Only rearview mirror with automatic dimming can be equipped with compass (p. 103).

Related information

- Door mirrors (p. 100)

Compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror contains a display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing.

Operation

Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different directions are shown with English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started or when key position **II** is active, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77). To deactivate/activate the compass - press in the button on the underside of the mirror using a paper clip for example.

Calibration

The compass may need calibrating to show the correct compass direction.

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved across several magnetic zones.

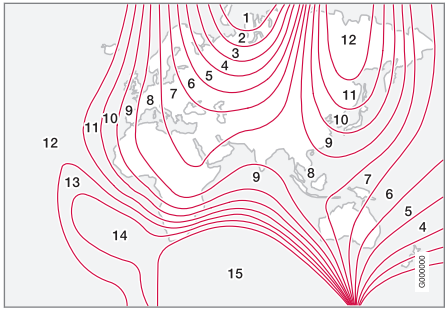
Proceed as follows to perform calibration:

1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed (use a paper clip or similar) for approx. 3 seconds. The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.



Magnetic zones.

4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (**1–15**) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character **C**, or hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds until the character **C** is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.
7. **Cars with heated windscreen*:** If the character **C** is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated, see Demisting and defrosting the windscreen (p. 130).
8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

Sunroof*

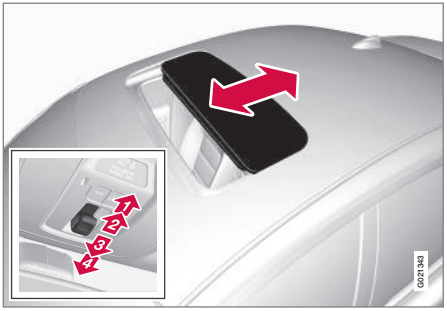
The sunroof is operated with the control in the roof.

The sunroof's inner sunscreen is closed manually.

The sunroof has a wind deflector.

The sunroof controls are located in the roof panel. The sunroof can be opened vertically at the rear edge and horizontally. Key position **I** or **II** is required for the sunroof to be opened.

Horizontal opening



Horizontal opening, backward/forward.

1. Opening, automatic
2. Opening, manual
3. Closing, manual
4. Closing, automatic

* Option/accessory.

Opening

To open the sunroof to comfort position[25], press the control back to the position for automatic opening and release. To fully open the sunroof, press the control back to the position for automatic opening again and release.

Open manually by pressing the control backwards to the point of resistance for manual opening. The sunroof moves to comfort position[25] while the control is being pressed backwards. To fully open the sunroof, press the control backwards again.

Closing

Close manually by pushing the control forwards to the point of resistance for manual closing. The sunroof moves to the closed position while the control is being pressed forwards.

WARNING

Risk of crushing when the sunroof is closed. The sunroof's pinch-protection function only operates during automatic closing, not manual.

Close automatically by pressing the control to the position for automatic closing and then release it.

The power supply to the sunroof is switched off by selecting key position **0** and removing the remote control key from the ignition switch.

WARNING

If there are children in the car:

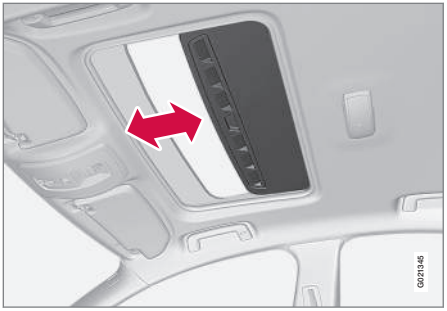
Remember to always switch off the power supply to the sunroof by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Vertical opening

Vertical opening, raised at the rear edge.

1. Open by pressing the rear edge of the control upward.
2. Close by pulling the rear edge of the control down.

Closing using the remote control key or central locking button



Remote control key

– Give one long press on the remote control key's lock button until the sunroof and all the windows are closed and the doors and the boot lid are locked.

To interrupt closing, press the remote control key's lock button again.

25 Comfort position is an open position for the sunroof, where wind noise and resonance noise are at a comfortably low level while driving.

Central locking button

The central locking button in the driver's door or passenger door* can be used to close the sunroof.

– Give one long press on the central locking button until the sunroof and all the windows are closed and the doors and the boot lid are locked.

To interrupt closing, press the central locking button again.

WARNING

If the sunroof is closed with the remote control key or the central locking button, check that no one risks being trapped.

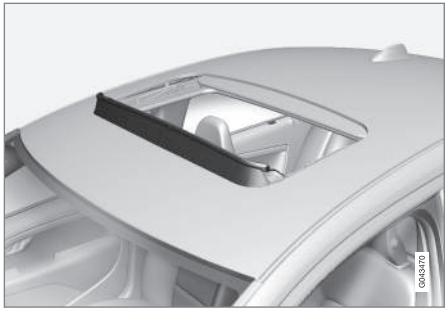
Sunscreen

The sunroof features a manual, sliding interior sunscreen. The sunscreen slides back automatically when the sunroof is opened. Grip the handle and slide the sunscreen forward to close it.

Pinch protection

The sunroof has a pinch protection function which is triggered if it is blocked by an object during automatic closing. If blocked, the sunroof will stop and automatically open to the previous position.

Wind deflector



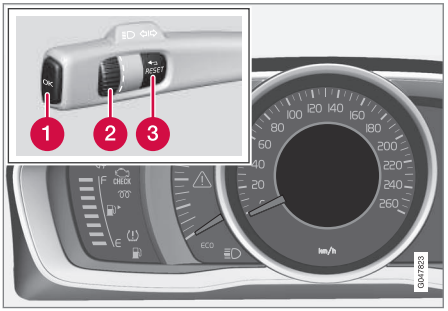
The sunroof has a wind deflector that is folded up when the sunroof is in the open position.

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)

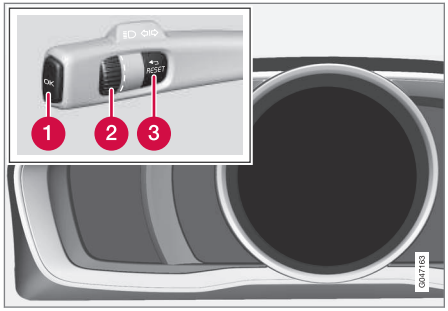
Menu navigation - combined instrument panel

The left-hand stalk controls the menus (p. 107) shown on the information display in the combined instrument panel (p. 62). Which menus are shown depends on the key position (p. 77).



Display (analogue combined instrument panel) and controls for menu navigation.

* Option/accessory.



Display (digital combined instrument panel) and controls for menu navigation.

1. **OK** – access to message list and message confirmation.
2. Thumbwheel – browse between menu options.
3. **RESET** – reset the active function. Used in certain cases to select/activate a function, see the explanation under each respective function.

If there is a message (p. 108) then it must be acknowledged with **OK** in order that the menus shall be shown.

Related information

- Messages - handling (p. 109)

Menu overview - combined instrument panel

Which menus are shown in the combined instrument panel's information display depends on the key position (p. 77).

Some of the following menu options require the function and hardware to be installed in the car.

Analogue combined instrument panel

Digital speed

Parking heater*

Additional heater*

TC options

Service status

Oil level[26]

Messages (##)[27]

Digital combined instrument panel

Settings*

Themes

Contrast mode/Colour mode

Service status

Messages[27]

Oil level[26]

Parking heater*

Trip computer reset

Related information

- Analogue combined instrument panel - overview (p. 62)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106)

26 Certain engines.
27 The number of messages is indicated in brackets.

Messages

When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears on the information display.

Message	Specification
Stop safely[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Stop engine[A]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop[B].
Service urgent[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car immediately.
Service required[A]	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car as soon as possible.
See manual[A]	Read the owner's manual.
Book time for maintenance	Time to book regular service - contact a workshop[B].
Time for regular maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[B]. The timing is determined by the number of kilometres driven, number of months since the last service, engine running time and oil grade.
Maintenance overdue	If the service intervals are not followed then the warranty does not cover any damaged parts - contact a workshop[B].
Transmission Oil change needed	Contact a workshop[B] to check the car as soon as possible.
Transmission Reduced performance	The gearbox cannot handle full capacity. Drive carefully until the message clears[C]. If shown repeatedly - contact a workshop[B].
Transmission hot Reduce speed	Drive more smoothly or stop the car in a safe manner. Disengage the gear and run the engine at idling speed until the message clears[C].
Transmission hot Stop safely Wait for cooling	Critical fault. Stop the car immediately in a safe manner and contact a workshop[B].
Temporarily off[A]	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.
Low battery charge Power save mode	The audio system is switched off to save energy. Charge the battery.

A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.
B An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
C For more information regarding the automatic gearbox, see Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

Related information

- Messages - handling (p. 109)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106)

* Option/accessory.

Messages - handling

Use the left-hand stalk switch to acknowledge and browse among messages (p. 108) that are shown in the information display of the combined instrument panel.

When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears in the display at the same time. An error message is stored in a memory list until the fault has been rectified.

Press **OK** on the left-hand stalk switch to acknowledge a message. Scroll through messages with the thumbwheel (p. 106).

NOTE

If a warning message appears while you are using the trip computer, the message must be read (press **OK**) before the previous activity can be resumed.

Related information

- Menu overview - combined instrument panel (p. 107)

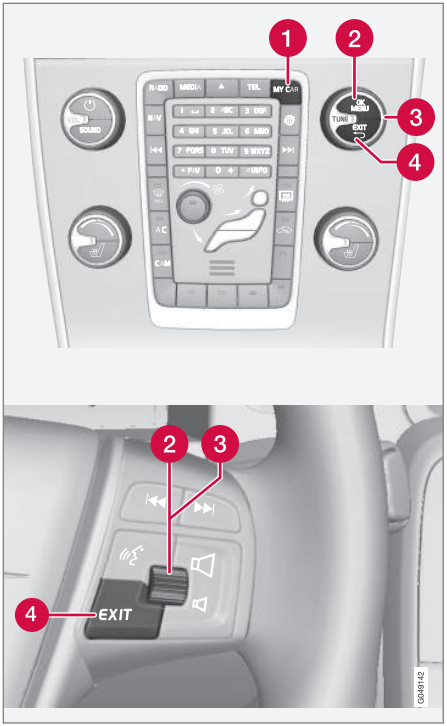
MY CAR

MY CAR is a menu source that handles many of the car's functions, e.g. City Safety™, locks and alarm, automatic fan speed, setting the clock, etc.

Certain functions are standard, others are optional - the range also varies depending on the market.

Operation

Navigation in the menus is carried out using buttons in the centre console or with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad*.



Control panel in centre console and steering wheel keypad. The figure is schematic - the number of functions

and layout of the buttons both vary, depending on the equipment selected and the market.

1. **MY CAR** - opens the menu system MY CAR.
2. **OK/MENU** - press the button in the centre console or the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select/tick in the highlighted menu option or store the selected function in the memory.
3. **TUNE** - turn the knob in the centre console or the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to scroll up/down through the menu options.
4. **EXIT**

EXIT functions

Depending on the function the cursor is on when **EXIT** is depressed briefly, and on which menu level, one of the following may occur:

- phone call is rejected
- current function is interrupted
- input characters are deleted
- most recent selections are undone
- leads up in the menu system.

A long press on **EXIT** leads to the normal view for MY CAR or if you are in the normal view, to the highest menu level (main source menu).

Menu options and search paths

For a description of the menu options and search paths in MY CAR, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

Trip computer

The car's trip computer records and calculates vales such as e.g. distance, fuel consumption and average speed whilst driving.

Trip computer content and appearance varies depending on whether the combined instrument panel is analogue or digital:

- Trip computer - analogue combined instrument panel (p. 112)
- Trip computer - digital combined instrument panel (p. 115)

The information from the trip computer can be shown in the combined instrument panel's information display[28].

Trip meter

The trip computer has two trip meters and one odometer for the total mileage.

Average

Average fuel consumption is calculated from the last resetting.

NOTE

There may be a slight deviation if a fuel-driven heater* has been used.

Average speed

The average speed is calculated for the driving distance driven since the last reset to zero.

* Option/accessory.

Instantaneous

The information for current fuel consumption is updated continuously - approximately once per second. When the car is driven at low speed the consumption is shown per time unit - at a higher speed it is shown related to mileage.

Different units (km/miles) can be selected for the display - see section "Change unit" (p. 110).

Range - distance to empty tank

The trip computer shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the fuel quantity remaining in the tank.

No guaranteed range remains when the heading **Distance to empty** shows "**----**".

- In which case, refuel as soon as possible.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km and the remaining driveable fuel quantity.

> **NOTE**
>
> There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance. For more information on how fuel consumption can be influenced, see Volvo Car Corporation 's Environmental Philosophy (p. 22).

Digital speed display in another unit[29]

If the main instrument is graduated in mph, the equivalent digital speed is shown as km/h.

Change unit

Distance and fuel unit can be changed in the menu system **MY CAR**, see MY CAR (p. 109).

> **NOTE**
>
> In addition to in the trip computer, these units are also changed in Volvo's navigation system*.

Related information

- Trip computer - analogue combined instrument panel (p. 112)
- Trip computer - digital combined instrument panel (p. 115)
- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 118)

28 The appearance and showing of the display may vary depending on the instrument variant.
29 Only digital combined instrument panel and certain markets.

Trip computer - analogue combined instrument panel

The information from the trip computer can be shown in the combined instrument panel and operated with the controls on the left-hand stalk switch and with the combined instrument panel's menu.

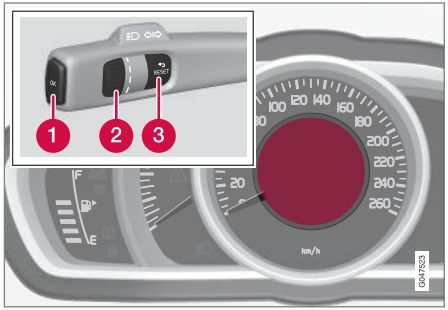
Checking and settings can be made immediately after the combined instrument panel is automatically illuminated in connection with unlocking. If none of the trip computer's controls are actuated within approx. 30 seconds after the driver's door has been opened then the instrument extinguishes, after which either key position **II** or engine starting is required in order to operate the trip computer.

NOTE

If a warning message appears when the trip computer is used then the message must first be acknowledged before the trip computer can be reactivated.

- Acknowledge the message by briefly pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button.

Controls



Information display and controls.

1. **OK** - opens the combined instrument panel's menu, confirms messages or menu selections.
2. **Thumbwheel** - browses between menu options or trip computer options.
3. **RESET** - resets the current trip meter or goes back out of the menu structure.

Trip comp. opt.

Choose which trip computer should be shown:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - reset them first with two presses on **RESET**.
2. Turn the thumbwheel to browse between the options and stop at the required heading.

The trip computer display in the combined instrument panel can be shifted to another option at any time during the journey. One of the options means that no trip computer is shown.

Trip computer heading in combined instrument panel	Information
Trip meter **T1 and total dist.**	• Long press on **RESET** resets trip meter T1.
Trip meter **T2 and total dist.**	• Long press on **RESET** resets trip meter T2.

Trip computer heading in combined instrument panel	Information
Distance to empty	For more information - see the section "Range - distance to empty tank" (p. 110).
Fuel consumption	Current consumption.
Average speed	• Long press on **RESET** resets **Average speed**.
No trip computer information.	This option shows a blank display and it also indicates the beginning/end of the loop.

Resetting the trip computer

1. Turn the thumbwheel and stop at the trip computer heading to be reset: **T1 and total dist.**, **T2 and total dist.** or **Average speed**.
2. One long press on **RESET** resets the value for the selected heading.

   Each heading must be zeroed individually.

Functions in the combined instrument panel's menu

The combined instrument panel's menu includes setting options for trip computer. Open the menu to check/adjust the functions in the table below.

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - reset them first with two presses on **RESET**.
2. Press **OK**.
3. Browse through the functions with the thumbwheel and select/confirm with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing twice on **RESET** after completed checking/adjustment.

Functions	Information
Digital speed • km/h • mph • No display	Shows the car's speed digitally in the centre of the combined instrument panel.
Parking heater* • DIRECT START • - Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time. • - Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time.	For a description of programming the timer, see Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer (p. 136).

Functions	Information
Additional heater* • **Auto On** • **Off**	For more information, see Additional heater* (p. 140).
TC options • Distance to empty tank • Fuel consumption • Average speed • Trip meter **T1 and total dist.** • Trip meter **T2 and total dist.**	Here you can activate the options that you want to be available as selectable headings in the trip computer. The symbols for the options already selected are white with a "tick" - others are grey and have no "tick".
Service status	Shows the number of months and mileage to next service.
Oil level[A]	For more information, see Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364).
Messages (##)	For more information, see Messages - handling (p. 109).

[A] Certain engines.

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 110)
- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 118)

* Option/accessory.

Trip computer - digital combined instrument panel

The information from the trip computer can be shown in the combined instrument panel and operated with the controls on the left-hand stalk switch and with the combined instrument panel's menu.

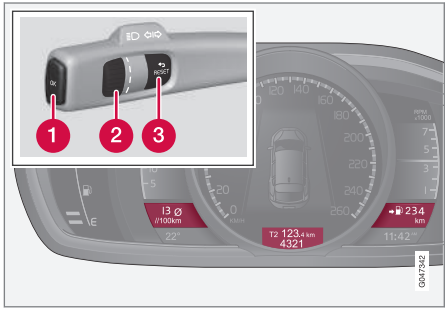
Checking and settings can be made immediately after the combined instrument panel is automatically illuminated in connection with unlocking. If none of the trip computer's controls are actuated within approx. 30 seconds after the driver's door has been opened then the instrument extinguishes, after which either key position **II** or engine starting is required in order to operate the trip computer.

NOTE

If a warning message appears when the trip computer is used then the message must first be acknowledged before the trip computer can be reactivated.

- Acknowledge the message by briefly pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button.

Controls



Three trip computer options can be displayed simultaneously - one in each "window".

1. **OK** - opens the combined instrument panel's menu, confirms messages or menu selections.
2. **Thumbwheel** - browses between menu options or trip computer options.
3. **RESET** - resets the current trip meter or goes back out of the menu structure.

Trip comp. opt.

Choose which trip computer should be shown:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - reset them first with two presses on **RESET**.
2. Turn the thumbwheel to browse between the heading combinations.
3. Stop at the required combination for the constant display of this trip data in the combined instrument panel.

The trip computer display in the combined instrument panel can be shifted to another option at any time during the journey. One of the options means that no trip computer is shown.

Heading combinations			Information
Average	Trip meter T1 + Meter reading	Average speed	• Long press on **RESET** resets trip meter T1.
Instantaneous	Trip meter T2 + Meter reading	Distance to empty tank	• Long press on **RESET** resets trip meter T2.

Heading combinations			Information
Instantaneous	Meter reading	kmh<>mph	kmh<>mph - see section Reverse digital speed display (p. 110).
	No trip computer information.		This option extinguishes all three trip computer displays and it also indicates the beginning/end of the loop.

Resetting the trip computer

Trip meter

1. Turn the thumbwheel and stop at the heading combination with the trip meter to be reset.
2. One long press on **RESET** resets the value for the selected heading.

Average speed and average consumption

1. Press **OK** to open the combined instrument panel's menu.
2. Browse to the **Trip computer reset** menu option with the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
3. Choose to reset average consumption, average speed or to reset both. Confirm the selection with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing **RESET**.

Functions in the combined instrument panel's menu

The combined instrument panel's menu includes setting options for trip computer. Open the menu to check/adjust the functions in the table below.

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - reset them first with two presses on **RESET**.
2. Press **OK**.
3. Browse through the functions with the thumbwheel and select/confirm with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing twice on **RESET** after completed checking/adjustment.

Functions	Information
Trip computer reset ● Average ● Average speed	Reset the value of average fuel consumption and average speed. Note that this function does not reset both trip meters T1 and T2.
Messages	For more information, see Messages - handling (p. 109).
Themes	Select the theme for the appearance of the combined instrument panel (p. 62).

Functions	Information
Settings*	Select **Auto On** or **Off**. For more information, see Additional heater* (p. 140).
Contrast mode/Colour mode	Adjusting the combined instrument panel's brightness and colour intensity.
Parking heater* • **Direct start** • - Symbol Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time. • - Symbol Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time.	For a description of programming the timer, see Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer (p. 136).
Service status	Shows the number of months and mileage to next service.
Oil level[A]	For more information, see Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364).

[A] Certain engines.

Related information

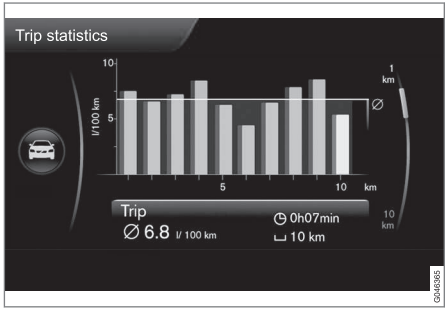
- Trip computer (p. 110)
- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 118)

Trip computer - trip statistics*

Trip statistics from the trip computer can be shown in the centre console's screen and provide a graphic overview of fuel consumption.

Function

– Open the menu system MY CAR (p. 109) and select **Trip statistics** in order to see the bar chart.



Trip statistics[30]

Each bar symbolises 1 km or 10 km driven distance, depending on the scale selected - the bar at the far right shows the value for the current kilometre or 10 km.

Using the **TUNE** control, the scale for the bars can be changed between 1 km and 10 km - the cursor on the far right changes position between up and down in relation to the scale selected.

Settings

Different settings can be made for trip statistics in the menu system **MY CAR** - **Trip statistics**.

- **Reset when vehicle has been off for minimum 4h** - highlight the box by selecting **ENTER** and go back out of the menu by selecting **EXIT**. With this option selected, all statistics are deleted automatically after finishing driving and the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours. Trip statistics start again from zero the next time the engine is started.
- **Start new trip** - **ENTER** is used to delete all previous statistics, go back out of the menu by selecting **EXIT**. If a new driving cycle shall be started before 4 hours have elapsed then the current period must first be deleted manually with this option.

See also information on Eco guide (p. 66).

Related information

- Trip computer (p. 110)

30 The figure is schematic - layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

* Option/accessory.

CLIMATE CONTROL

General information on climate control

The car is equipped with electronic climate control (p. 126). The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Air conditioning (AC) (p. 130) can be switched off, but to ensure the best possible climate comfort in the passenger compartment, and to prevent the windows from misting, it should always be switched on.

To bear in mind

- To ensure that the air conditioning works optimally, the side windows, and sunroof* should be closed.
- Global opening (p. 172) opens/closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather.
- Remove ice and snow from the climate control system air intake (the grille between the bonnet and the windscreen).
- In warm weather, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.
- When the engine requires full power, e.g. for full acceleration, the air conditioning can be temporarily switched off. There may then be a temporary increase in temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Remove misting on the insides of the windows primarily by using the defroster function (p. 130). To reduce the risk of misting, keep the windows clean and use window cleaner.

NOTE

To avoid misting on the rear window, do not block the ventilation holes at the back of the parcel shelf with articles of clothing or other objects.

Cars with Start/Stop*

With an auto-stopped (p. 282) engine certain equipment may have its function temporarily reduced, e.g. climate control fan speed (p. 128).

Cars with ECO*

Certain equipment may have its function temporarily reduced or deactivated when the ECO (p. 290) function is activated, e.g. the air conditioning (p. 130).

NOTE

When the ECO function is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only restored by deactivating the ECO function.

Related information

- Actual temperature (p. 121)
- Menu settings - climate control (p. 123)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 126)
- Air distribution in the passenger compartment (p. 123)
- Air quality (p. 121)

* Option/accessory.

Actual temperature

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physical experience with reference to factors such as ambient temperature, air speed, humidity and solar radiation etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor (p. 121) which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Temperature control in the passenger compartment (p. 129)

Sensors - climate control

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the temperature (p. 121) in the car.

- The sun sensor is located on the top side of the dashboard.
- The temperature sensor for the passenger compartment is located below the climate control panel.
- The outside temperature sensor is located in the door mirror.
- The humidity sensor* is located by the interior rearview mirror.

NOTE

Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Air quality

The interior in a passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

- Passenger compartment filter (p. 122)
- Material in the passenger compartment (p. 123)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) (p. 122)*
- Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) (p. 122)*

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Air quality - passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

The filter must be replaced at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Related information

- Air quality (p. 121)

Air quality - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*

CZIP comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is opened with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened. The amount of time the fan runs is reduced gradually due to reduced need up until the car is 4 years old.
- The air quality system IAQS (p. 122) is a fully automatic system that cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Air quality (p. 121)

Air quality - IAQS*

The air quality system IAQS separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and pollution in the passenger compartment.

If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

NOTE

The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the air quality sensor should be disengaged, and the defroster functions for the windscreen and side windows, as well as the rear window, should be used.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Air quality (p. 121)
- Air quality - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)* (p. 122)

* Option/accessory.

Air quality - material

Tested materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior (p. 404).

Related information

- Air quality (p. 121)

Menu settings - climate control

It is possible to activate/deactivate or change the default settings for six of the climate control system's functions via the centre console.

- Fan level during automatic climate control (p. 129).
- Recirculation timer (p. 131).
- Automatic start of rear window defroster (p. 102)[1].
- Interior air quality system* (p. 122).
- Automatic start of seat heating driver (p. 127).
- Automatic start of steering wheel heating (p. 84).

More information is available in the description of the menu system (p. 109).

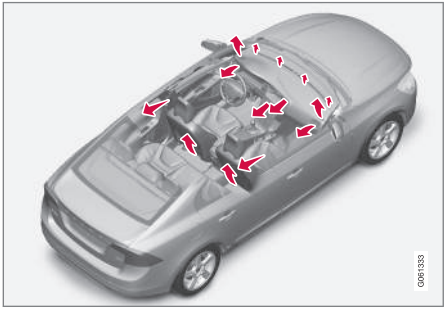
The climate control system's functions can be reset in the menu system MY CAR to the default settings. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Air distribution in the passenger compartment

The incoming air is divided between a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

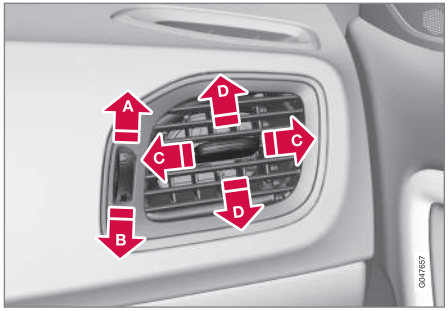


Air distribution is fully automatic in **AUTO** mode.

If necessary it can be controlled manually; see the air distribution table (p. 132).

[1] Using the Engine Remote Start (ERS)* function, the heated windscreen is also demisted/defrosted automatically if the setting for rear window defroster is activated.

Air vents in the dashboard



A Open

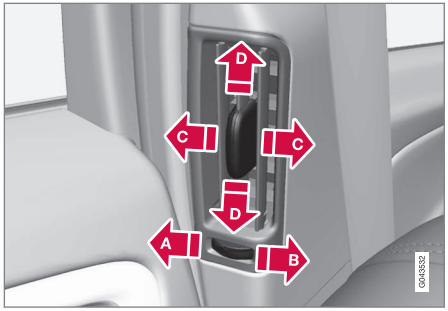
B Closed

C Lateral airflow

D Vertical airflow

Aim the outer vents at the side windows to remove misting.

Air vents in the door pillars



A Closed

B Open

C Lateral airflow

D Vertical airflow

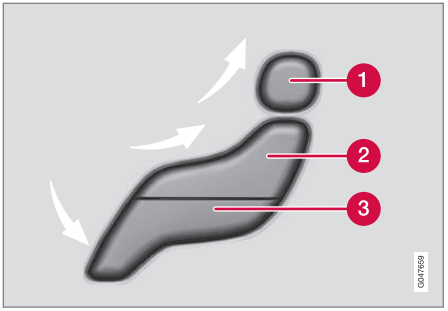
Aim the vents at the windows to remove misting in cold weather.

Aim the vents into the passenger compartment to maintain a comfortable climate in the rear seat in hot weather.

NOTE

Remember that small children may be sensitive to air flows and draughts.

Air distribution

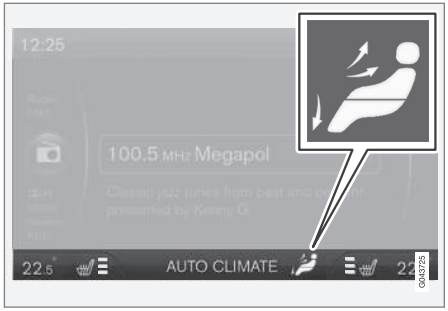


1 Air distribution - defroster windscreen

2 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel

3 Air distribution - ventilation floor

The figure consists of three buttons. When pressing the buttons the corresponding figure is illuminated in the screen (see following figure) and an arrow in front of each part of the figure shows the air distribution that is selected. For more information, see the air distribution table (p. 132).



The selected air distribution is shown in the centre console display screen.

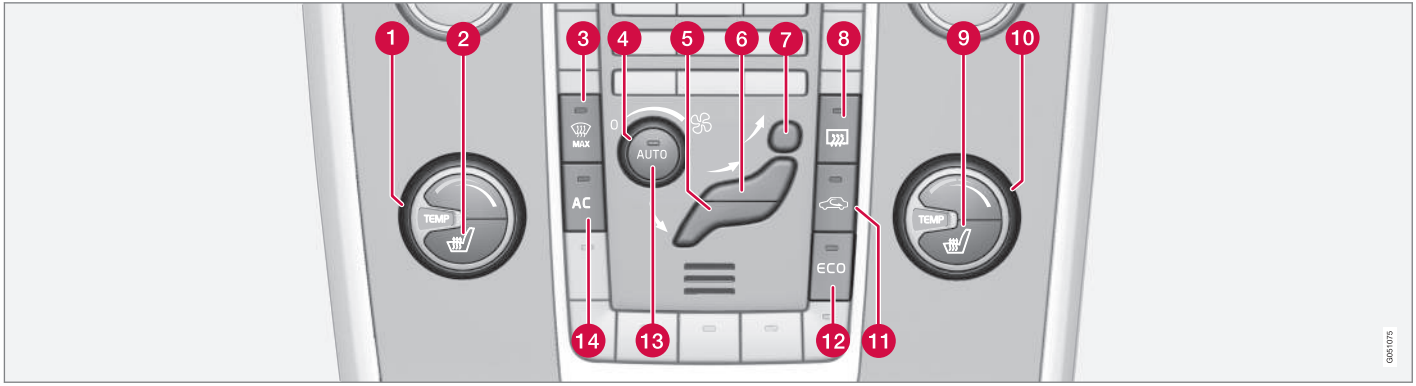
Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Auto-regulation (p. 129)
- Air distribution - recirculation (p. 131)

Electronic climate control - ECC

ECC (Electronic Climate Control) maintains the temperature selected in the passenger compartment and can be set separately for the driver's side and passenger side.

The auto function is used to automatically control temperature, air conditioning, fan speed, recirculation and air distribution.



1. Temperature control (p. 129), left-hand side
2. Electrically heated front seat (p. 127), left side
3. Heated windscreen* and max. defroster (p. 130)
4. Fan (p. 128)
5. Air distribution (p. 123) - ventilation floor
6. Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
7. Air distribution - defroster windscreen
8. Rear window and door mirror defrosters (p. 102)
9. Electrically heated front seat (p. 127), right side
10. Temperature control (p. 129), right-hand side
11. Recirculation (p. 131)
12. ECO* (p. 290)
13. **AUTO** - Automatic climate control (p. 129)
14. **AC** - Air conditioning on/off (p. 130)

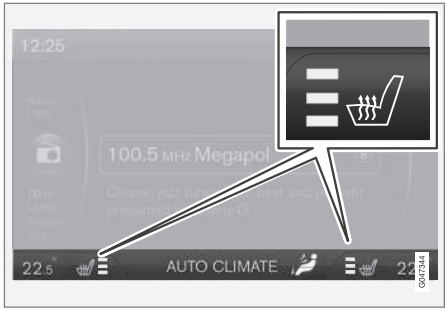
Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

* Option/accessory.

Heated front seats*

The front seat heating has three positions for increasing the comfort for driver and passenger when it is cold.



Current heat level is shown in the centre console display screen.

Press the button repeatedly to change between the different levels or to deactivate the function.

There are three heat levels that give different heating outputs:

- Highest heat level - three orange fields illuminate in the centre console's screen (see figure above).
- Lower heat level - two orange fields illuminate in the screen.
- Lowest heat level - one orange field illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the heat - no field illuminates.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Automatic start of driver's seat heating

With the automatic start of the driver's seat heating activated, the driver's seat will have the highest heat level when the engine is started.

Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is lower than approx. +10 °C.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Heated rear seat* (p. 128)

Heated rear seat*

The heating for the rear seat's outer positions has three positions for increasing the comfort for passengers when it is cold.

Current heat level is shown in the pushbutton's lamps.

Press the button repeatedly to change between the different levels or to deactivate the function.

There are three heat levels that give different heating outputs:

- Highest heat level - three lamps illuminate.
- Lower heat level - two lamps illuminate.
- Lowest heat level - one lamp illuminates.
- Switch off the heat - no lamp illuminates.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Heated front seats* (p. 127)

Fan

The fan should always be activated in order to avoid misting on the windows.

NOTE

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged - which can cause a risk of misting on the windows.

Fan knob

Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed. If **AUTO** is selected, then the fan speed is regulated automatically (p. 129) - the fan speed previously set is disengaged.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 126)

* Option/accessory.

Auto-regulation

The auto function automatically regulates temperature (p. 129), air conditioning (p. 130), fan speed (p. 128), recirculation (p. 131) and air distribution (p. 123).

If you select one or more manual functions, the other functions continue to be controlled automatically. All manual settings are disengaged when **AUTO** is pressed. The display screen shows **AUTO CLIMATE**.

Fan speed in automatic mode can be set in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

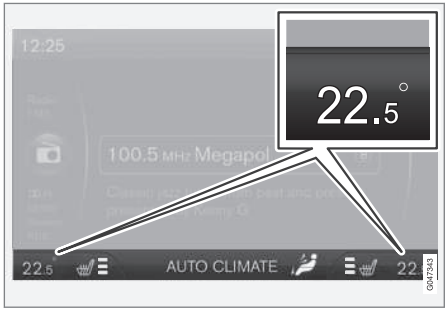
- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Temperature control in the passenger compartment

When the car is started, the most recent temperature setting is resumed.

NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.



Current temperature for each side is shown in the centre console's display screen.

The temperature can be adjusted with the knob - separately for the driver's side and the passenger side.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Actual temperature (p. 121)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 126)

Air conditioning

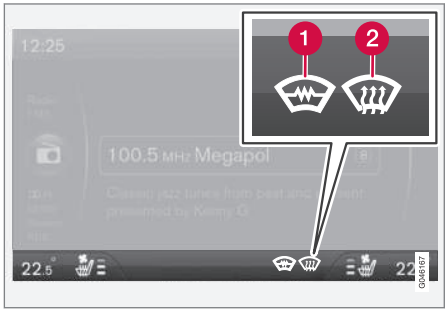
The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

When the lamp in the **AC** button illuminates, the air conditioning is controlled by the system's automatic function.

When the lamp in the **AC** button is switched off the air conditioning is disconnected. Other functions are still controlled automatically. When the max. defroster function (p. 130) is activated, the air conditioning is switched on automatically so that the air is dehumidified at the maximum setting.

Demisting and defrosting the windscreen

Heated windscreen* and max. defroster are used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen and side windows.



The selected setting is shown in the centre console's screen.

1 Heated windscreen*

2 Max. defroster

The light in the defroster button illuminates when the function is active.

Press the button repeatedly to change between the different levels or to deactivate the function.

For cars without heated windscreen there is one defrost level:

- Air flows to the windows - symbol (2) illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the function - no symbol illuminates.

For cars with heated windscreen there are two defrost levels:

- Start the heating for the windscreen[2] - symbol (1) illuminates in the screen.
- Start the heating for the windscreen[2] and air flow to the windows - symbols (1) and (2) illuminate in the screen.
- Switch off the function - no symbol illuminates.

NOTE

Heated windscreen and IR window (p. 20) may have an impact on the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

NOTE

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

[2] If the character **C** is shown in the rearview mirror when the heated windscreen is activated then the compass (p. 103)* must be recalibrated.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

Electrically heated windscreen is not available when the engine is auto-stopped (p. 282).

The following also takes place when the max. defroster function is active in order to provide maximum dehumidification in the passenger compartment:

- the air conditioning is automatically engaged
- recirculation and the air quality system are automatically disengaged.

NOTE

The noise level increases as the fan is operating at max.

When the defroster is switched off the climate control returns to the previous settings.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Air distribution - recirculation

Select recirculation to shut out bad air, exhaust gases etc. from the passenger compartment, i.e. no outside air is taken into the car when this function is activated.

When recirculation is engaged the orange lamp in the button illuminates.

IMPORTANT

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Timer

With the timer function activated the system will exit manually activated recirculation mode according to a time that depends on the outside temperature. This reduces the risk of ice, misting and bad air.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

NOTE

When max. defroster is selected, recirculation is always deactivated.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Air distribution in the passenger compartment (p. 123)
- Air distribution - table (p. 132)

Air distribution - table

Three buttons are used to select the distribution (p. 123) of the air.

	Air distribution	Use
	Air to windows. Some air flows from the air vents. The air is not recirculated. Air conditioning is always engaged.	to remove ice and misting quickly.
	Air to windscreen, via defroster vent, and side windows. Some air flows from the air vents.	to avoid misting and icing in a cold and humid climate (to achieve this the fan level must not be too low).
	Airflow to windows and from dashboard air vents.	to ensure good comfort in warm, dry weather.
	Airflow to the head and chest from dashboard air vents.	to ensure efficient cooling in warm weather.

	Air distribution	Use
	Air to the floor and windows. Some air flows from the dashboard air vents.	to ensure comfortable conditions and good demisting in cold or humid weather.
	Air to floor and from dashboard air vents.	in sunny weather with cool outside temperatures.
	Air to floor. Some air flows to the dashboard air vents and windows.	to direct heat or cold to the floor.
	Airflow to windows, from dashboard air vents and to the floor.	to provide cooling along the floor in hot, dry weather or warming upwards in cold weather.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)
- Air distribution - recirculation (p. 131)

Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater*

Preconditioning prepares the heater, engine and passenger compartment before departure so that both wear and energy needs during the journey are reduced.

The heater can be started directly (p. 135) or with a timer (p. 136).

The heater cannot start if the outside temperature exceeds 15 °C. The heater's maximum running time is 50 minutes.

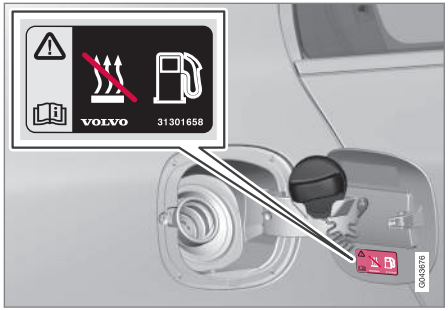
WARNING

Do not use the fuel-driven heater indoors. Exhaust gases are secreted.

NOTE

When the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is active there may be smoke from the right-hand wheel housing, which is perfectly normal.

Refuelling



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

WARNING

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven auxiliary heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the combined instrument panel that the heater is switched off. The heat symbol is shown when it is operating.

Parking on a hill

If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the fuel-driven heater.

Battery and fuel

If the battery has insufficient charge or the fuel level is too low, the heater will be switched off automatically and a message appears on the information display. Acknowledge the message by pressing the indicator stalk (p. 106) **OK** button once.

IMPORTANT

Repeated use of the heater combined with short journeys leads to the battery discharging and consequential starting problems.

The car should be driven for the same time as the heater is used to ensure that the car's battery is recharged adequately to replace the energy consumed by the heater when it is used on a regular basis. The heater is used for a maximum of 50 minutes each time.

Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages (p. 138)
- Additional heater* (p. 140)

* Option/accessory.

Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - direct start

The engine block heater and passenger compartment heater can be started directly.

Direct start can be performed via:

- information display
- remote control key*
- mobile*.

Upon direct start of the engine block and passenger compartment heater (p. 134), it will run for 50 minutes.

Heating of the passenger compartment will begin as soon as the engine coolant has reached the correct temperature.

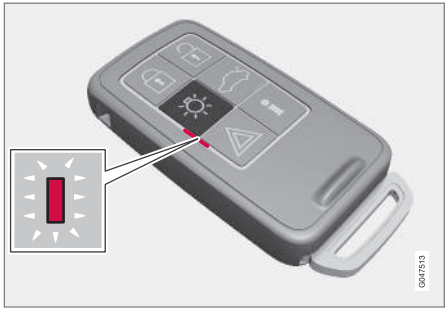
NOTE

The car can be started and driven while the heater is running.

Direct start via the information display

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater** and select with **OK**.
3. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Direct start** in order to activate the heater and select with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Direct start via the remote control key*



Indicator lamp on remote control key with PCC*.

The engine block heater and passenger compartment heater can be activated via the remote control key:

– Hold the button for approach lighting depressed for 2 seconds.

  Hazard warning flashers provide information in accordance with the following:

  - 5 short flashes followed by a constant glow for approx. 3 seconds - the signal has reached the car and the heater has been activated.
  - 5 short flashes - the signal has reached the car but the heater has not been activated.
  - Hazard warning flashers remain switched off - the signal has not reached the car.

If the button for information is depressed when the heater is active then the indicator lamp will show the status for this - at the same time the car's lock status (p. 159) is shown. While the status is being investigated the indicator lamp emits a pair of short flashes followed by a constant glow if the heater is active.

Status is also shown in the trip computer during heating.

Direct start via app*

Activation and information on selected settings are available via the Volvo On Call* app.

Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer (p. 136)
- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - immediate stop (p. 136)
- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages (p. 138)

Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - immediate stop

The engine block heater and passenger compartment heater can be deactivated directly via the information display.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater** and select with **OK**.
3. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Stop** in order to deactivate the heater and select with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - direct start (p. 135)
- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer (p. 136)
- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages (p. 138)

Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - timer

The timer of the engine block and passenger compartment heater (p. 134) is connected to the car's clock.

Two different times can be selected using the timer. Here, time refers to the time when the car is heated and ready. The car's electronic system calculates when heating should be started based on the outside temperature.

> **NOTE**
>
> All timer programming will be cleared if the car's clock is reset.

Adjusting[3]

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Use the thumbwheel (p. 106) to scroll to one of the timers **Parking heater** and select with **OK**.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Briefly press **OK** to move to the lit hours setting.
5. Select the required hour using the thumbwheel.
6. Briefly press **OK** to move to the flashing minutes setting.
7. Select the required minute using the thumbwheel.
8. Press **OK**[4] to confirm the setting.
9. Go back in the menu structure using **RESET**.
10. Select the other time (continue from step 2) or exit the menu with **RESET**.

Starting

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater** and select with **OK**.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and activate with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Switching off

A timer-started heater can be switched off manually before the set time has elapsed. Proceed as follows:

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Parking heater** and select with **OK**.
   > If a timer is set but not activated then a clock icon is shown beside the set time.

[3] Setting the timer is only possible with the engine switched off.
[4] Press **OK** again to activate the timer.

3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Deactivate the timer as follows:
   - long press on **OK** or
   - short press on **OK** to continue in the menu. Then select to stop the timer and confirm with **OK**.
5. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

A timer-started heater can be switched off directly (p. 136).

Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages (p. 138)

Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* - messages

Symbols and display messages regarding the engine block and passenger compartment heater (p. 134) differ depending on whether the combined instrument panel (p. 62) is analogue or digital.

When the heater has been activated the heat symbol illuminates in the information display.

When one of the timers has been activated, the symbol for activated timer illuminates in the display at the same time as the set time is shown next to the symbol.

Symbol for activated timer in analogue combined instrument panel.

Symbol for activated timer in digital combined instrument panel.

The table shows symbols and display texts that appear.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The heater is switched on and running.
	Fuel operated heater stopped Battery saving mode	The heater has been stopped by the car's electronics in order to facilitate starting the engine.

* Option/accessory.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Fuel operated heater stopped Low fuel level	Starting the heater is not possible due to fuel level being too low - this is in order to facilitate starting the engine as well as approx. 50 km driving.
	Fuel operated heater Service required	Heater not working. Contact a workshop for repair. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

A display text clears automatically after a time or after one press on the indicator stalk (p. 106) **OK** button.

Additional heater*

In cold climate zones[5] an additional heater may be required to obtain the correct operating temperature in the engine and to obtain sufficient heating in the passenger compartment.

A fuel-driven additional heater (p. 140) is fitted in cars with diesel engines.

In a semi-cold[5] climate zone diesel-driven cars have an electric additional heater (p. 141) instead of a fuel-driven version.

Cars with certain petrol engines[6] have an electric additional heater integrated into the car's climate control system.

Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* (p. 134)

Fuel-driven additional heater*

The car is equipped with either an electric (p. 141) or a fuel-driven additional heater (p. 140).

The heater starts automatically when extra heat is required when the engine is running.

The heater is switched off automatically when the correct temperature is reached or when the engine is switched off.

NOTE

When the additional heater is active there may be smoke from the right-hand wheel housing, which is perfectly normal.

Auto mode or shutdown

The additional heater's automatic start sequence can be switched off if required.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the fuel-driven additional heater should be switched off for short distances.

1. Before starting the engine: Select key position **I** (p. 77).
2. Press **OK** to access the menu.
3. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Additional heater**[7] or **Settings**[8] and select with **OK**.
4. Select one of the options **ON** or **OFF** using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
5. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

NOTE

The menu options are only visible in key position **I** - any adjustments must therefore be made before starting the engine.

Passenger compartment heater*

If the additional heater is supplemented with a timer function then it can be used as a passenger compartment heater (p. 134).

5 An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the geographical areas concerned.
6 An authorised Volvo dealer has information regarding the engines concerned.
7 Analogue combined instrument panel.
8 Digital combined instrument panel.

Electric additional heater*

The car is equipped with either a fuel-driven (p. 140) or an electric additional heater (p. 140).

The heater cannot be controlled manually, but is instead activated automatically after the engine has been started in outside temperatures below 14 °C and is switched off after the set passenger compartment temperature has been reached.

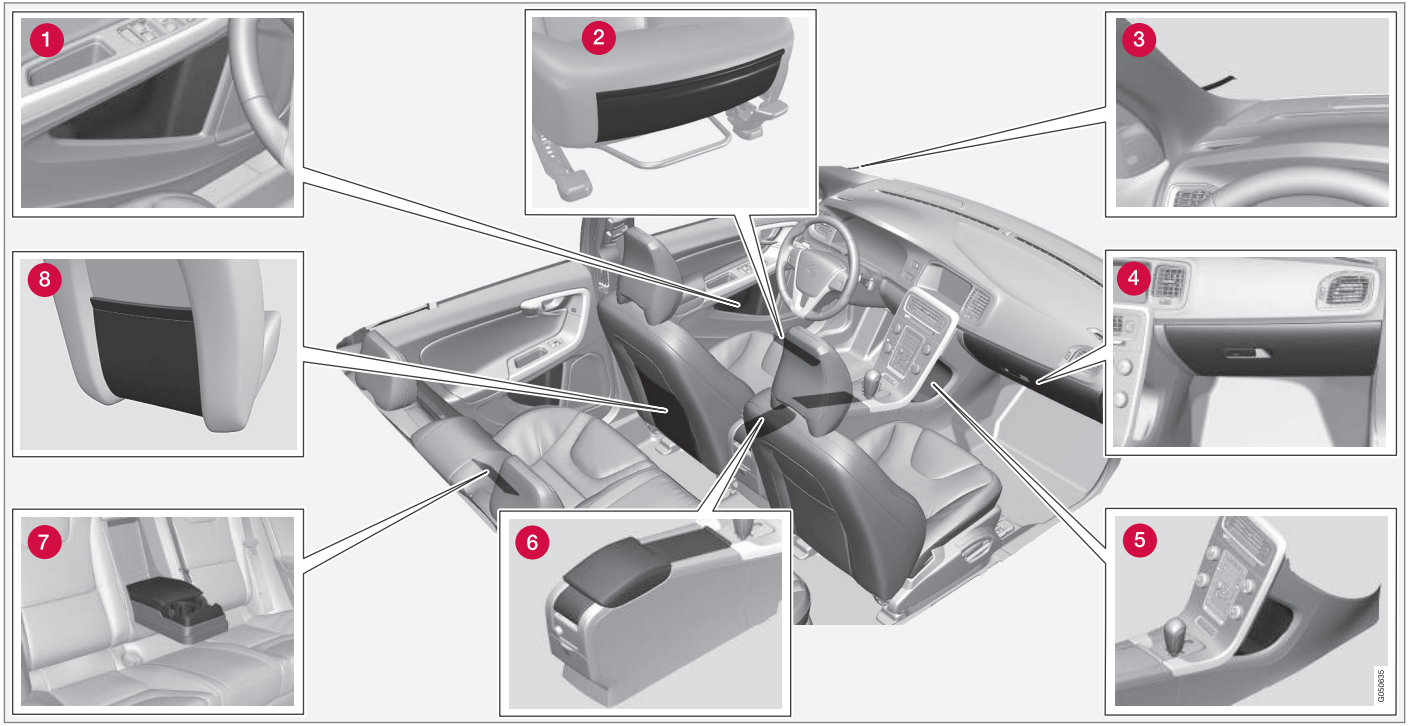
Related information

- Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater* (p. 134)

LOADING AND STORAGE

Storage spaces

Overview of storage spaces in the passenger compartment.



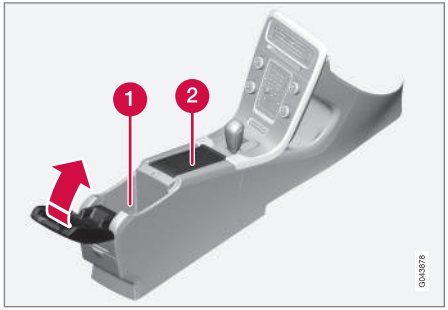
1. Storage compartment in door panel
2. Storage pocket* on front edge of front seat cushions
3. Ticket clip
4. Glovebox (p. 146)
5. Storage compartment
6. Storage compartment, cup holder (p. 146)
7. Cup holder* in armrest, rear seat
8. Storage pocket

WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Storage compartment (e.g. for CDs) and USB*/AUX input under the armrest.
2. Includes cup holder for driver and passenger. If ashtray and cigarette lighter (p. 146) are specified, then there is a cigarette lighter in the 12 V socket (p. 147) for the front seat, and a detachable ashtray in the cup holder.

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 144)
- Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray* (p. 146)

Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray*

A detachable ashtray is fitted in the cup holder under the armrest. The cigarette lighter is fitted in the 12 V socket (p. 147) for the front seat.

The ashtray in the tunnel console (p. 146) is detached by lifting the tray straight up.

Activate the lighter by pushing in the button. The button pops out when the lighter is hot. Pull out the lighter and light a cigarette on the heated coils.

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 144)

Glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side.

The owner's manual and maps can be kept in here for example. There are also holders for pens on the inside of the lid. The glovebox can be locked* (p. 173) using the key blade (p. 161).

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 144)

* Option/accessory.

Inlaid mats*

Inlay mats collect e.g. rubbish and slush. Volvo supplies specially manufactured inlay mats.

WARNING

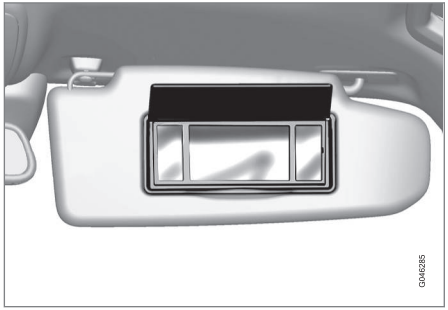
Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 404)

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirror is located on the rear of the sun visor.



Vanity mirror with lighting.

The light illuminates automatically when the cover is lifted.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting (p. 376)

Tunnel console - 12 V-sockets

The electrical sockets (12 V) are located next to the cup holder[1] and rear of the tunnel console.

12 V socket in tunnel console, front seat.

12 V socket in tunnel console, rear seat.

[1] If ashtray and cigarette lighter are specified then there is no cup holder and adjacent 12 V socket.

The electrical socket can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. TV screens, music players and mobile phones. For the socket to supply current, the remote control key must be in at least key position **I** (p. 77).

WARNING

Always leave the plug in the socket when the socket is not in use.

NOTE

Optional equipment and accessories - e.g. display screens, music players and mobile phones - which are connected to one of the passenger compartment's 12V electrical sockets, could be activated by the climate control system, even when the remote control key has been removed or when the car is locked, for example, when the parking heater is activated at a preset time.

For this reason remove the plugs from the electrical sockets for optional equipment or accessories when not in use because the battery could be drained in the event of such an occurrence!

IMPORTANT

Max. socket is 10 A (120 W) if one socket is used at a time. If both sockets in the tunnel console are used simultaneously, 7.5 A (90 W) per socket is applicable.

If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

NOTE

The compressor for emergency puncture repair (p. 348) has been tested and approved by Volvo.

Related information

- Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray* (p. 146)
- 12 V electrical socket, cargo area* (p. 151)

Loading

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight.

The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

For more detailed information on weights, see Weights (p. 414).

The boot lid is opened via a button on the lighting panel or the remote control key, see Locking/unlocking - boot lid (p. 173).

WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

To bear in mind when loading

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.

Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down, see WHIPS - seating position (p. 40).

- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.

* Option/accessory.

- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg.

WARNING

The protection provided by the inflatable curtain in the headlining may be compromised or eliminated by high loads.

- Never load cargo above the backrest.

WARNING

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Related information

- Load retaining eyelets (p. 150)
- Loading - long load (p. 149)
- Roof load (p. 150)

Loading - long load

To simplify loading (p. 148) in the cargo area, the rear seat backrest can be folded down. The passenger seat[2] backrest can also be folded* for an extra long load.

Lowering the rear seat backrest

If the rear seat backrest needs to be lowered, see Seats, rear (p. 81).

Hatch

When transporting long, narrow objects, the hatch behind the armrest in the rear seat can be folded forward.

2 Only applies to comfort seats.

Roof load

The load carriers recommended for roof loads are the ones developed by Volvo. This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

WARNING

The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.

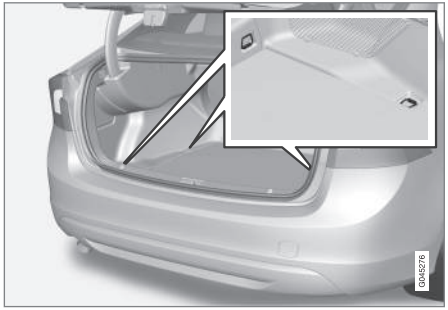
For information about the maximum permitted load on the roof, including load carriers and any space box, see Weights (p. 414).

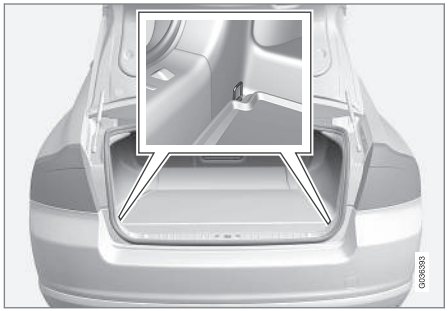
Related information

- Loading (p. 148)

Load retaining eyelets

The folding load retaining eyelets[3] are used to fasten straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.





WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects which protrude may cause injury under violent braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

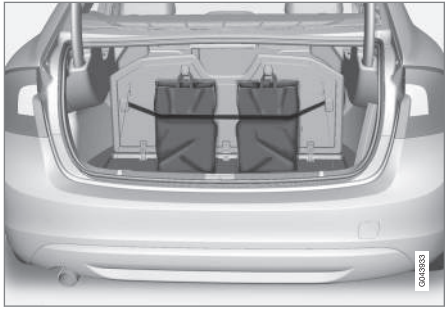
Related information

- Loading (p. 148)

[3] Number of eyes and their locations varies depending on market.

Loading - bag holder*

The bag holder keeps carrier bags in place and prevents them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.



Bag holder under folding hatch in the floor.

1. Fold up the holder, which is part of the floor hatch.
2. Fasten the bags with strap and secure the carrying handle in the hooks.

Related information

- Loading (p. 148)

12 V electrical socket, cargo area*

The electrical socket can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. screens, music players and mobile phones.

Raise the cover to access the electrical socket.

- The socket also provides voltage when the remote control key is not in the ignition switch.

IMPORTANT

Max. power takeoff is 10 A (120 W).

NOTE

Remember that using the electrical socket with the engine switched off involves the risk of discharging the car's starter battery.

NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo's recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), see Emergency puncture repair (p. 348).

LOCKS AND ALARM

Remote control key

Amongst other things, the remote control key is used for locking/unlocking and starting the engine.

There are two variants of remote control key - Remote control key in basic version and Remote control key with PCC (Personal Car Communicator)*.

Functionality	Basic[A]	with PCC[B]
Locking/unlocking and detachable key blade	x	x
Keyless locking/unlocking		x
Keyless engine starting		x
Information button and indicator lamps		x

A 5-button key
B 6-button key

Remote control key with PCC has extended functionality compared with the remote control key in the basic version - e.g. support for keyless starting and locking/unlocking (Keyless Drive (p. 165)) as well as certain unique functions (p. 159).

All remote control keys have a detachable key blade (p. 161) made of metal. The visible section is available in two versions so that it is possible to distinguish between the remote control keys.

More remote control keys can be ordered - but not variants other than the one supplied with the car. Up to six keys can be programmed and used for one single car.

The car is supplied with two remote control keys.

WARNING

If there are children in the car:

Remember to switch off the supply to the power windows and sunroof by removing the remote control key if the driver leaves the car.

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)

Remote control key - losing

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The remaining remote control keys must be taken to the Volvo workshop. The code of the missing remote control key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)

* Option/accessory.

Remote control key - personalisation*

The key memory in the remote control key (p. 154) means that certain settings in the car can be individually adapted for different people.

The key memory function is available in combination with, for example, power* driver's seat.

Settings for door mirrors (p. 100), driver's seat, steering force (p. 182) and the combined instrument panel's theme, contrast and colour mode (p. 63) can be stored in the memory, depending on the car's equipment level.

The function[1] can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

When the function is activated, the settings are automatically linked to the key memory. This means that a change in a setting will automatically be saved to the specific remote control key's memory.

Storing settings

Proceed as follows in order to store the settings and use the key memory in the remote control key:

1. Unlock the car with the remote control key in whose memory the setting[2] shall be stored.
2. Make sure that the key memory function is activated in the menu system MY CAR.
3. Make the desired settings for e.g. the seat and the door mirrors.
4. The settings are stored in the current remote control key's memory.

The next time the car is unlocked with the same remote control key, the positions that are stored in the key memory will be set automatically - providing that they have been changed since the last time the current remote control key was used.

Emergency stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press one of the setting buttons for the seat or memory buttons in order to stop the seat.

Restarting to reach the seat position stored in the key memory is performed by pressing the unlock button on the remote control key. The driver's door must then be open.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the controls. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Make sure that none of the passengers in the rear seat is in danger of becoming trapped.

Changing settings

If several people each with a remote control key approach the car, then the settings for e.g. seat and door mirrors are implemented for the person whose remote control key unlocks the driver's door.

If the driver's door has been opened by person A with remote control key A, but person B with remote control key B shall drive, then the settings can be changed as follows:

- Standing by the driver's door, or sitting behind the steering wheel, person B presses the button for unlocking on his/her remote control key, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158).
- Select one of three possible memories for seat adjustment with seat button 1-3, see Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80).
- Adjust seat and door mirrors manually, see Seats, front - electrically operated* (p. 80) and Door mirrors (p. 100).

[1] Called **Car key memory** in MY CAR.
[2] This setting does not affect settings that have been stored in the power seat's memory function.

Reactivation of settings

When the car is locked or after 30 minutes if the car is left unlocked, the key memory will be deactivated and a standard driver profile will be set. To reactivate the key memory for the current remote control key, the following is required.

For cars without keyless start and lock system

The settings that are stored in the key memory are activated if the car is unlocked by pressing the remote control key's unlock button.

For cars with keyless start and lock system

The key memory is activated if:

1. The car is unlocked either by pressing the remote control key's unlock button or via keyless unlocking.
2. If the car is unlocked, a key scan is made when the driver's door is opened. If a unique remote control key is found, its stored settings will be activated. If the car is locked, see the previous point.

Related information

- Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions (p. 159)

Locking/unlocking - indicator

When the car is locked or unlocked using the remote control key (p. 154) the direction indicators confirm that locking/unlocking was correctly performed.

- Locking - one flash and the door mirrors are folded[3] in.
- Unlocking - two flashes and the door mirrors are folded[3] out.

After locking the indication is only given if all locks are activated once the doors have been closed.

Selecting the function

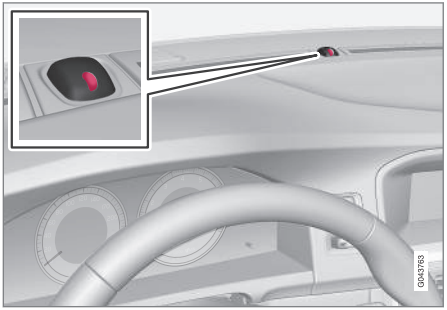
Different options for indicating locking/unlocking with light can be set in the car's menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)
- Lock indicator (p. 156)
- Alarm indicator* (p. 178)

Lock indicator

A flashing LED by the windscreen verifies that the car is locked.



Same LED as alarm indicator (p. 178).

NOTE

Cars that are not equipped with alarm also have this indicator.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking - indicator (p. 156)

3 Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.

* Option/accessory.

Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

Each remote control key (p. 154) has a unique code. The car can only be started with the correct remote control key with the correct code.

The following error messages in the combined instrument panel's information display are related to the electronic immobiliser:

Message	Specification
Insert car key	Error when reading the remote control key during starting - Remove the key from the ignition switch, press it in again and make a new start attempt.
Car key not found	Error reading the remote control key during starting - Try to start again. If the error persists: Insert the remote key into the ignition switch and try to start again.
Immobiliser Try to start again	Error in immobiliser system during starting. If the error persists: Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

For starting the car, see Starting the engine (p. 268).

Related information

- Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system* (p. 157)

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system*

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system[4] makes it possible to track and locate the car, and to remotely activate the immobiliser.

Contact your nearest Volvo dealer for more information and assistance with activating the system.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)
- Immobiliser (p. 157)

Remote control key - functions

The remote control key in basic version has functions such as locking and unlocking the doors.

Functions

Remote control key in basic version.

Locking

Unlocking

Approach light duration

Boot lid

Panic function

Remote control key with PCC*(Personal Car Communicator).

Information

Function buttons

Locking – Locks the doors and boot lid while the alarm is activated.

Press and hold to close all the windows and sunroof* simultaneously. For more information, see Global opening (p. 172).

WARNING

If the sunroof and windows are closed using the remote control key, check that nobody's hands are trapped.

Unlocking – Unlocks the doors and boot lid while the alarm is deactivated.

Press and hold to open all windows simultaneously. For more information, see Global opening (p. 172).

The function can be changed from unlocking all doors simultaneously, to unlocking the driver's door only with one press of the button and, after a further press of the button - within ten seconds - unlocking the remaining doors.

The function can be changed in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Approach light duration – Used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance. For more information, see Approach lighting (p. 96).

Boot lid (p. 173) - Unlocks and disarms the alarm for the boot lid only.

Panic function – Used to attract attention in an emergency.

Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn.

The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after approx. 3 minutes.

4 Only certain markets and in combination with Volvo On Call*.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)
- Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions (p. 159)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 170)

Remote control key - range

Remote control key functions (in its basic version) have a range of approx. 20 metres from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

NOTE

The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade (p. 162).

If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running or key position **I** or **II** (p. 77) is active, and all doors are closed, then a warning message is shown in the information display in the combined instrument panel and a short audio reminder signal sounds at the same time.

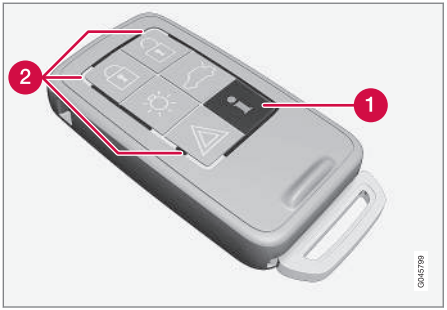
The message extinguishes when the remote control key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the **OK** button, or when all doors are closed.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)

Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions

A remote control key with PCC (Personal Car Communicator) has enhanced functionality compared with a remote control key in basic version (p. 154) in the form of an information button and indicator lamps.



Remote control key with PCC.

1 Information button

2 Indicator lamps

Using the information button enables access to certain information from the car via the indicator lamps.

Using the information button

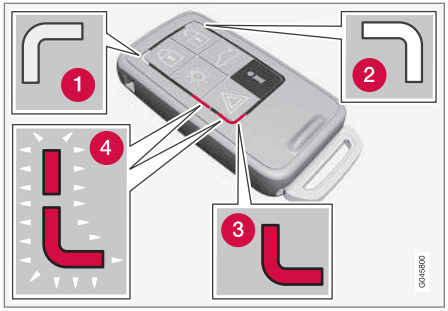
– Press the information button .
  > All indicator lamps flash for approximately 7 seconds and the light travels around on the remote control key. This indicates that information from the car is being scanned.

  If any of the other buttons are pressed during this time then the reading is interrupted.

NOTE

If none of the indicator lamps illuminates with repeated use of the information button and in different locations (as well as after 7 seconds and after the light has travelled around on the PCC), contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Indicator lamps display information in accordance with the following illustration:



1. Green continuous light – the car is locked.
2. Yellow continuous light – the car is unlocked.
3. Red continuous light – the alarm has been triggered since the car was locked.
4. Red light flashing alternately in both indicator lamps – The alarm was triggered less than 5 minutes ago.

Related information

- Remote control key with PCC* - range (p. 160)

Remote control key with PCC* - range

The range of a remote control key with PCC (Personal Car Communicator) for locking, unlocking the doors and boot lid is approx. 20 metres from the car - the other functions are up to approx. 100 metres.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

NOTE

The information button function may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc.

Outside the remote control key's range

If the remote control key is too far away from the car for the information to be read then the status the car was last left in is shown, without the light in the indicator lamps travelling around on the remote control key.

If several remote control keys are used for the car then it is only the one last used for locking/unlocking that shows the correct status.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

If no indicator lamps illuminate when the information button is used within range then this may be because the last communication between the remote control key and the car was disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc.

Related information

- Keyless Drive* - remote control key range (p. 166)
- Remote control key - range (p. 159)

Detachable key blade

A remote control key contains a detachable key blade of metal with which some functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

Key blade functions

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade:

- the left-hand front door is unlocked manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key, see Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 162).
- the rear doors' mechanical child safety locks can be activated/deactivated (p. 176).
- the right-hand front door and the rear doors can be locked manually (p. 170), e.g. in the event of power failure.
- access to the glovebox and cargo area (privacy locking* (p. 163)) can be blocked.
- the airbag for front passenger seat (PACOS*) can be activated/deactivated (p. 36).

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)
- Remote control key (p. 154)

Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching

Detaching/attaching the detachable key blade (p. 161) is carried out as follows:

Removing the key blade

1. Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
2. At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.

Attaching the key blade

Carefully refit the key blade into its location in the remote control key (p. 154).

1. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
2. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.

Related information

- Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 162)
- Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 176)
- Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating* (p. 36)

Detachable key blade - unlocking doors

The detachable key blade (p. 161) can be used if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key (p. 154), e.g. if the key's battery has run out.

If central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key - e.g. if the batteries are discharged - then the left-hand front door is unlocked as follows:

1. Unlock the left-hand front door with the key blade in the door handle's lock cylinder. For illustration and more information, see Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 168).

NOTE

When the door has been unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered.

2. Deactivate the alarm by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch.

For cars with keyless start and lock system, see Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 168).

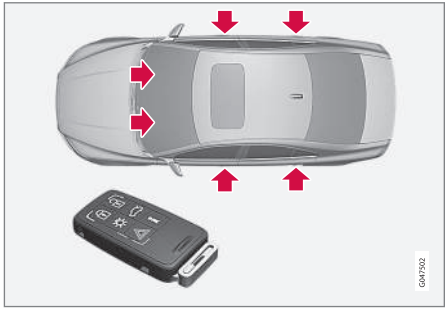
Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)
- Remote control key - replacing the battery (p. 164)

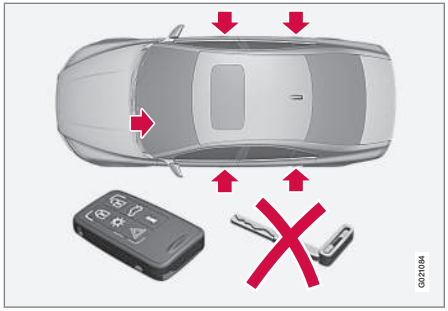
* Option/accessory.

Privacy locking*

Privacy locking is intended for when the car is left for service, with a hotel parking valet or similar. The glovebox is then locked and the boot lid lock is disconnected from the central locking - the boot lid cannot be opened with either the central locking button in the front doors or the remote control key (p. 154).



Active locks for remote control key **with** key blade.

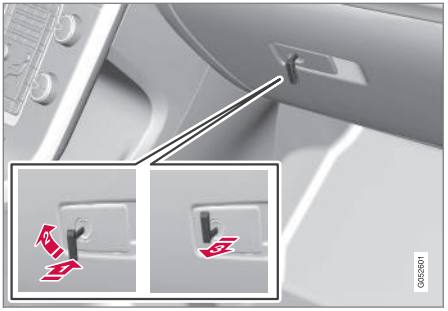


Active locks for remote control key, **without** key blade and privacy locking **activated**.

This means that the remote control key without key blade can only be used to activate/deactivate the alarm (p. 177), to unlock the doors and to start the car.

The remote control key without key blade can then be handed over to the service or hotel staff - the loose key blade is retained by the car owner.

Activate/deactivate



Activating privacy locking.

To activate privacy locking:

1. Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
2. Turn the key blade 180 degrees clockwise.
3. Pull out the key blade. The combined instrument panel's information display shows a message at the same time.

The glovebox is then locked and the boot lid can no longer be unlocked with the remote control key or the central locking button.

NOTE

Do not reinsert the key blade into the remote control key, but keep it in a safe place instead.

- Deactivation takes place in reverse order.

For information on locking the glovebox only, see Locking/unlocking - glovebox (p. 173).

Remote control key - replacing the battery

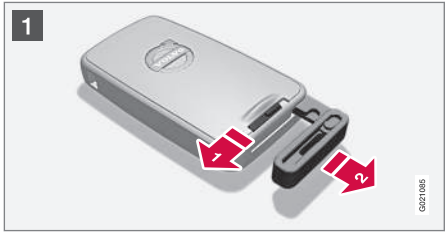
The battery[5] for the remote control key may need to be replaced.

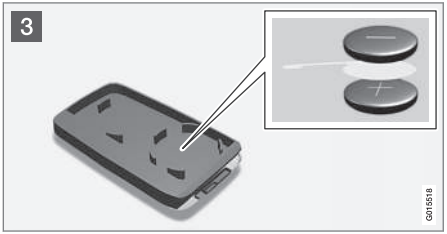
The battery for the remote control key should be replaced if:

- the information symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates and the display shows **Car key battery low See manual**

and/or

- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres from the car.





Opening

1 1 Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.

2 At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.

2 3 Insert a 3 mm slot screwdriver in the hole behind the spring-loaded catch and gently prize the remote control key up.

5 Remote control key with PCC has two batteries.

NOTE

Turn the remote control key over with the buttons facing up, this is to avoid the batteries falling out when it is opened.

IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.

Battery replacement

3 Closely study how the battery/batteries are secured on the inside of the cover, with regard to their (+) and (–) sides.

Remote control key (one battery)

1. Carefully prize out the battery.
2. Install a new one with the (+) side down.

Remote control key with PCC* (two batteries)

1. Carefully prize out the batteries.
2. First install one new one with the (+) side up.
3. Position the white plastic tab in between and finally install a second new battery with the (+) side down.

Battery type

Use batteries with the designation CR2430, 3V - one in the remote control key, two in the remote control key with PCC.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that the batteries to be used in the remote control key/PCC fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, subsection 38.3. Batteries fitted in the factory or replaced by an authorised Volvo workshop fulfil the above criteria.

Assembly

1. Press the remote control key together.
2. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
3. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.

IMPORTANT

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)

Keyless drive*

Cars equipped with Keyless Drive have a starting and locking system that can be operated keylessly.

With the keyless start and lock system the car can be started, locked and unlocked without the remote control key (p. 154)[6] inserted in the ignition switch. It is enough to have the remote control key with you in a pocket. The system makes it easier and more convenient to e.g. open the car when your hands are full.

Both of the remote control keys included with the car have keyless functionality. It is possible to order more remote control keys.

The car's electrical system can be set to three different levels - key position **0**, **I** and **II** (p. 77) - with the remote control key.

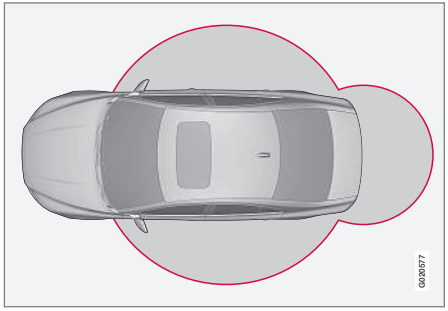
Related information

- Keyless Drive* - remote control key range (p. 166)
- Keyless drive* - secure handling of the remote control key (p. 166)
- Keyless Drive* - interference to remote control key function (p. 167)

Keyless Drive* - remote control key range

In order to unlock the doors or boot lid automatically without pressing a button on the remote control key[7], a remote control key must be within approx. 1.5 metres from the car's door handle or boot lid.

The person who wishes to lock or unlock a door must have the remote control key with him or her. It is not possible to lock or unlock a door if the remote control key is on the opposite side of the car.



The red rings in the above figure indicate the range covered by the system's antennas.

If all remote control keys are removed from the car when the engine is running or key position **I** or **II** (p. 77) is active, and if all doors are closed, then a warning message is shown in the information display in the combined instrument panel and an audio reminder signal sounds at the same time.

When the remote control key has been returned to the car, the warning message goes off and the audible reminder ceases once either/or:

- a door has been opened and closed
- the remote control key has been inserted in the ignition switch
- The **OK** button has been pressed.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)
- Keyless Drive* - antenna location (p. 169)

Keyless drive* - secure handling of the remote control key

It is important to handle the car's remote control keys with great care.

If one of the remote control keys[8] has been left in the car then the keyless functions are deactivated in case the car is e.g. locked with the other remote control key that belongs to the car. This prevents unauthorised entry.

The next time the car is unlocked with the other remote control key the forgotten remote control key is reactivated again.

IMPORTANT

Avoid leaving the remote control key with PCC behind in the car. If someone breaks into your car and takes the remote control key, it will e.g. be possible to start the car by pressing the remote control key in the ignition switch and then pressing the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)

6 Only applies to Remote Control Key with PCC.
7 Applies to remote control key with PCC (Personal Car Communicator).

Keyless Drive* - interference to remote control key function

Electromagnetic fields and screening can interfere with the remote control key's keyless functions (p. 165).

NOTE

Do not place/store the PCC near a mobile phone or metal object - no closer than 10-15 cm.

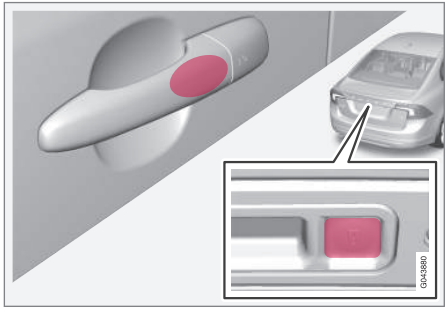
If interference is experienced nonetheless, use the remote control key and the key blade like a remote control key in basic version, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158).

Related information

- Remote control key - replacing the battery (p. 164)
- Keyless drive* - secure handling of the remote control key (p. 166)
- Keyless Drive* - remote control key range (p. 166)

Keyless Drive* - locking

Cars equipped with keyless start and lock system have a touch-sensitive area on the outside handle of the doors and a rubberised button next to the boot lid's rubberised pressure plate for locking/unlocking.



The touch-sensitive area on the outer door handles and a rubberised button next to the boot lid's rubberised pressure plate.

Lock the doors and the boot lid with one long press on any of the door handles' touch-sensitive areas or press the smaller of the boot lid's two rubberised buttons - the lock indicator (p. 156) in the windscreen confirms that locking has been completed by starting to flash.

All doors and the boot lid must be closed before the car can be locked - otherwise the car is not locked.

NOTE

In cars with automatic gearbox selectors, the gear selector must be set to the **P** position; otherwise the car can be neither locked nor alarmed.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)
- Alarm indicator* (p. 178)

8 Applies to remote control key with PCC (Personal Car Communicator).

Keyless drive* - unlocking

Unlocking takes place when a hand grasps a door handle or the boot lid's rubberised pressure plate is actuated - open the door or boot lid as normal.

NOTE

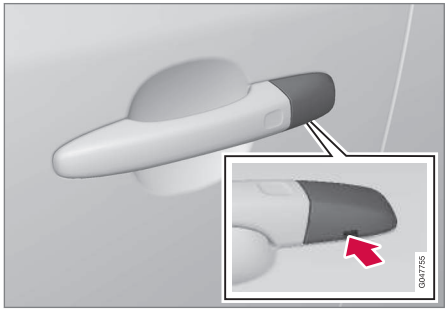
The door handles normally register a hand that takes hold of the handle, but with thick gloves on or after a very quick hand movement a second attempt may be required, or with the glove taken off.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)
- Keyless Drive* - locking (p. 167)

Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade

If central locking cannot be unlocked with the remote control key, e.g. if the batteries are discharged, then the left-hand front door can be opened using the detachable key blade.



Hole for key blade - to loosen the cover.

To access the lock cylinder, the door handle's plastic cover must be removed - this is also done with the key blade:

1. Press the key blade approx. 1 cm straight up into the hole on the underside of the door handle/cover - do not prize.
   > The plastic cover loosens automatically by means of the torque when the blade is pushed straight up and into the opening.
2. Then insert the key blade in the lock cylinder and unlock the door.
3. Refit the plastic cover after unlocking.

NOTE

When the driver's door is unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered. It is switched off by inserting the PCC in the ignition switch, see Alarm* - remote control key not working (p. 179).

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)
- Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161)
- Alarm* (p. 177)

* Option/accessory.

Keyless Drive* - lock settings

Lock settings for cars equipped with keyless start and lock system can be adapted by indicating in the menu system MY CAR which doors are to be unlocked.

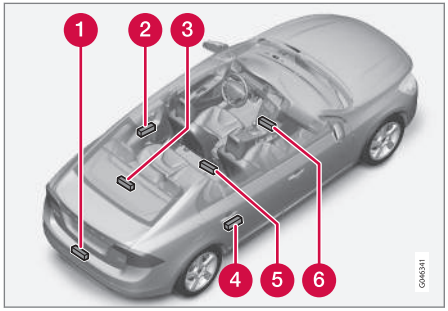
For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)

Keyless Drive* - antenna location

Cars equipped with keyless start and lock system have a number of built-in antennas positioned at different locations in the car.



1. Rear bumper, centre
2. Door handle, left rear
3. Parcel shelf, centre, underside
4. Door handle, right rear
5. Centre console, under the rear section
6. Centre console, under the front section.

WARNING

People with pacemaker operations should not come closer than 22 cm to the keyless system's antennae with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the keyless system.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 165)

Locking/unlocking - from the outside

Locking/unlocking from the outside is carried out using the remote control key (p. 154). The remote control key can lock/unlock all doors and the boot lid simultaneously. Different sequences for unlocking can be selected, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158).

In order that the lock sequence can be activated, the driver's door must be closed - if any of the other doors or the boot lid is open, then it/they is/are locked and the alarm is activated only when it/they are closed. For cars equipped with keyless locking system* all doors and the boot lid must be closed.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

If it is not possible to lock/unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - lock or unlock the left-hand front door with the detachable key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161).

NOTE

Remember that the alarm is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked with the key blade - the alarm is switched off when the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

WARNING

Be aware of the risk of being locked in the car when it is locked from the outside using the remote control key - it is then not possible to open any of the doors from the inside with the door controls.

For more information, see Deadlocks* (p. 175).

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within two minutes of unlocking, all are locked again automatically. This function reduces the risk that the car is left unlocked unintentionally. (For cars with alarm, see Alarm* (p. 177).)

Related information

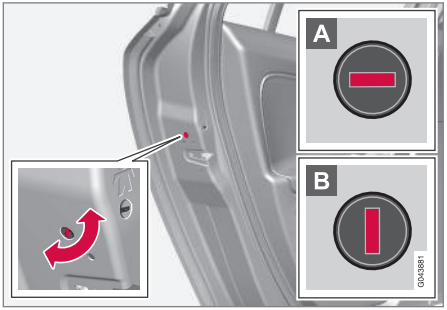
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)
- Keyless drive* (p. 165)

Manual locking of the door

In certain situations the car must be lockable manually, e.g. in the event of power failure.

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the remote control key's detachable key blade, see Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 168).

Other doors do not have lock cylinders and instead have lock knobs on each door's end face which must be re-turned - then they are mechanically locked/blocked against opening from the outside. The doors can still be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child safety locks (p. 176).

– Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161).

* Option/accessory.

A The door is blocked against opening from the outside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

NOTE

- A door's knob control only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with an activated manual child safety lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside, see Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 176). A rear door that is locked in this way can only be unlocked with the remote control key or central locking button.

Related information

- Remote control key - replacing the battery (p. 164)

Locking/unlocking - from the inside

All of the doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously using the central locking button on the driver's door and passenger door*.

Central locking

Central locking.

- Press one side of the button to lock - the other side to unlock.

Press and hold the button to also open all side windows simultaneously*.

Unlocking

A door can be unlocked from the inside in two different ways:

- Press the central locking button .

A long press also opens all the side windows* simultaneously (see also Global opening (p. 172)).

- Pull the door handle and open the door - the door is unlocked and opened in one operation.

Lamp in lock button

Central locking is available in two variants - the lamp in the central locking button for the driver's door has different meanings dependent on the variant.

With central locking button only in the driver's door, other doors have no button:

- Illuminated lamp means that all doors are locked.

With central locking button on both front doors and electric lock button in each rear door:

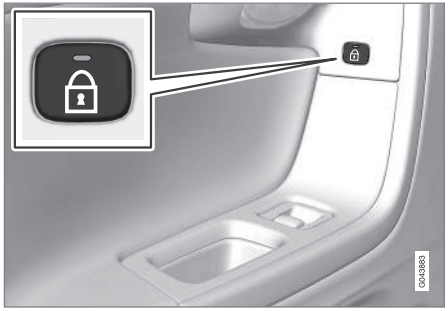
- Illuminated lamp means that only that particular door is locked. When all buttons are illuminated all doors are locked.

Locking

- Press the central locking button - all closed doors are locked.

A long press also closes all side windows and sunroof simultaneously (see also Global opening (p. 172)).

Lock button* rear doors



The button's lamp illuminates when the door is locked.

The rear door lock buttons only lock their respective rear door.

To unlock the door:

- Pull the door handle - the door is unlocked and opened.

Automatic locking

The doors and boot lid are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 170)
- Alarm* (p. 177)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 158)

Global opening

The global opening function opens or closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather.

Central locking button

A long press on the symbol in the central locking button or on the remote control key **opens** all side windows simultaneously. The same procedure on the symbol **closes** all side windows simultaneously.

Related information

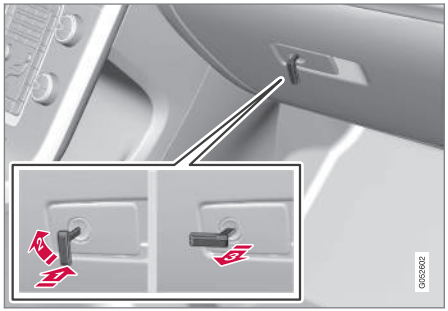
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)
- Power windows (p. 98)

* Option/accessory.

Locking/unlocking - glovebox

The glovebox (p. 146) can only be locked/unlocked using the remote control key's detachable key blade.

For information on the key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161).



Locking the glovebox:

1. Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder in accordance with the illustration above.
2. Turn the key blade 90 degrees clockwise.
3. Pull out the key blade.

- Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

For information on privacy locking, see Privacy locking* (p. 163).

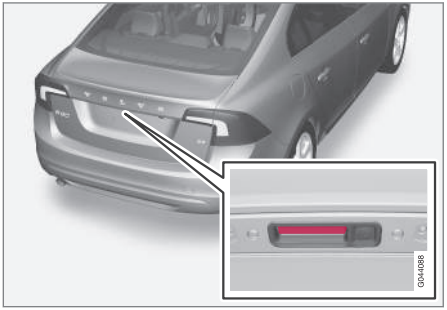
Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)

Locking/unlocking - boot lid

The boot lid can be opened, locked and unlocked in several ways.

Manual opening



Rubber plate with electrical contact.

The boot lid is held closed by an electrical lock.

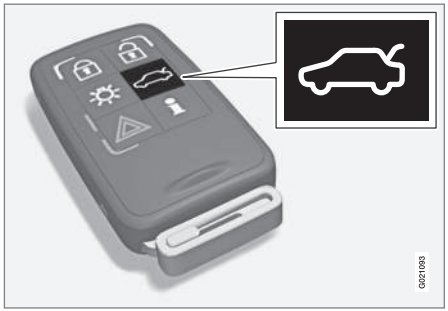
To open:

1. Push down gently on the wide rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle - the lock is released.
2. Lift the outside handle in order to fully open the tailgate.

IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the boot lid's lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the boot lid - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

Unlocking with the remote control key



The alarm for the boot lid can be disarmed and the boot lid unlocked on its own by using the remote control key's* button.

The lock indicator on the instrument panel stops flashing which indicates that not all of the car is locked and the alarm's* level and movement sensors and the sensors for opening the boot lid are disconnected.

The doors remain locked and armed.

- The boot lid is unlocked, but remains closed - press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle and lift the boot lid.

If the boot lid is not opened within two minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

The boot lid can be opened in two different ways

One press - The boot lid is unlocked, but remains closed - press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle and lift the boot lid.

If the boot lid is not opened within two minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Two presses - The boot lid is unlocked and the lock is disengaged at which the boot lid opens about a centimetre - lift the outer handle to open. Rain, cold, frost or snow could however prevent the tailgate from disengaging from the lock.

NOTE

- When the boot lid/tailgate is unlocked with 2 presses, automatic relocking does not take place because the boot lid/tailgate is open - it must be closed manually.
- After the boot lid/tailgate has been closed it is unlocked and the alarm is not armed - relock it and re-arm the alarm with the remote control key's lock button .

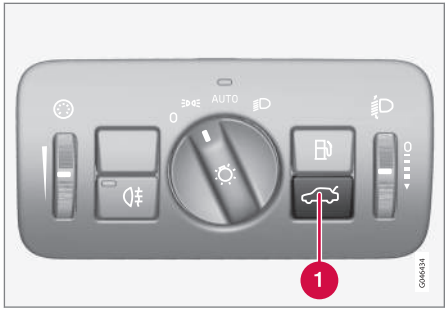
Locking with the remote control key

- Press the remote control key (p. 158) button for locking .

The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts flashing, which means that the car is locked and the alarm* has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

Unlocking the car from inside



To unlock the boot lid:

– Press the button (1) on the headlamp control panel.
  > The lock releases and the tailgate opens by a few centimetres.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 170)

Deadlocks*

Deadlocks[9] means that all door handles are mechanically disengaged, which prevents doors being opened from both inside and outside.

The deadlocks are activated with the remote control key (p. 154) and are set after an approx. ten seconds delay after the doors have been locked.

NOTE

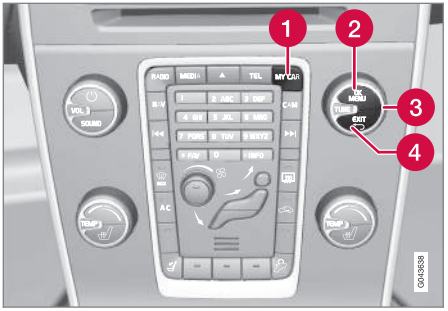
If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked with the remote control key when the deadlocks function is activated. The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade (p. 161). In addition, it is possible to unlock and open the doors and boot lid on cars equipped with keyless start and lock system* by touching door handles or the handle on the boot lid.

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

Temporary deactivation



Active menu options are indicated with a cross.

1. **MY CAR**
2. **OK MENU**
3. **TUNE** knob control
4. **EXIT**

If someone is going to stay in the car but the doors must be locked from the outside, then the deadlocks function can be temporarily switched off. This takes place the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

9 Only in combination with alarm.

NOTE

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

The above applies if the deadlocks have not been deactivated temporarily.

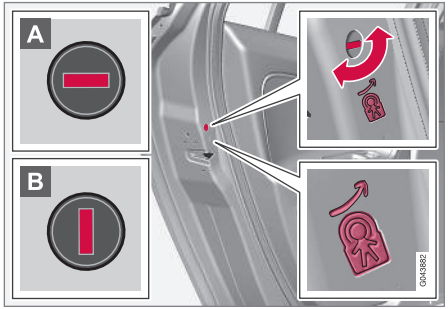
Related information

- Keyless Drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 168)
- Remote control key (p. 154)

Child safety locks - manual activation

The child safety locks prevent children from being able to open a rear door from the inside.

Activate/deactivate child safety locks



Manual child safety locks. Not to be mixed up with manual door lock (p. 170).

The child safety locks are located on the trailing edge of the rear doors and are only accessible when the doors are open.

To activate/deactivate the child safety locks:

– Use the remote control key's detachable key blade (p. 161) to turn the knob.

A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

WARNING

Each rear door has two knob controls - do not mix up the child safety locks with manual door locks.

NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Related information

- Child safety locks - electrical activation* (p. 177)
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 170)

* Option/accessory.

Child safety locks - electrical activation*

Child safety locks with electrical activation prevent children from opening the rear doors or windows from the inside.

Activation

The child safety locks can be activated/deactivated in all key positions (p. 77) higher than **0**. Activation/deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the engine, provided that no door is opened.

To activate the child safety locks:

Control panel driver's door.

1. Start the engine or choose a key position higher than **0**.
2. Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
   > The combined instrument panel's information display shows the message **Rear child lock activated** and the button's lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the child safety lock is active then the rear:

- windows can only be opened with the driver's door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.

Related information

- Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 176)
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 171)

Alarm*

The alarm is a device that warns in the event of e.g. a break-in in the car.

Activated alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the boot lid is opened[10]
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the starter battery's cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

If there is a fault in the alarm system then the information display in the combined instrument panel shows a message. In which case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10 Applies to certain markets.

NOTE

The movement sensors trigger an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window or the sunroof open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this: Close the window/sunroof when leaving the car. If the car's integrated passenger compartment heater (or a portable electric heater) shall be used - direct the airflow from the air vents so that they are not pointing upwards in the passenger compartment. Alternatively, reduced alarm level can be used, see Reduced alarm level* (p. 180).

NOTE

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

Arming the alarm

– Press the remote control key lock button.

Deactivate the alarm

– Press the remote control key unlock button.

Deactivating a triggered alarm

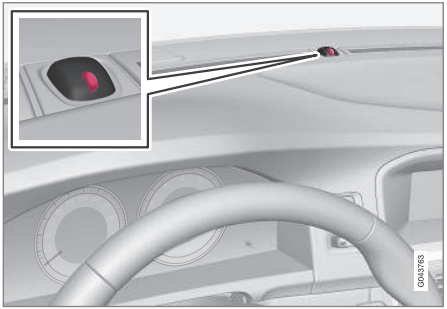
– Press the remote control key unlock button or insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.

Related information

- Alarm indicator* (p. 178)
- Alarm* - automatic re-arming (p. 179)
- Alarm* - remote control key not working (p. 179)

Alarm indicator*

The alarm indicator shows alarm system (p. 177) status.



Same LED as lock indicator (p. 156).

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – Alarm not armed
- The LED flashes once every other second – Alarm is armed
- The LED flashes rapidly after disarming the alarm (and until the remote control key is inserted in the ignition switch and key position **I** is selected) – Alarm has been triggered.

* Option/accessory.

Alarm* - automatic re-arming

Automatic re-arming of the alarm (p. 177) prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.

If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (and the alarm is disarmed) but none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 2 minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

Related information

- Reduced alarm level* (p. 180)

Alarm* - remote control key not working

If the alarm (p. 177) cannot be deactivated with the remote control key, e.g. if the key's battery (p. 164) is discharged - the car can be unlocked, disarmed and the engine started as follows:

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade (p. 168).
   > The alarm is triggered, the alarm indicator (p. 178) flashes rapidly and the siren sounds.

2. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.
   > The alarm is deactivated and the alarm indicator goes out.
3. Start the engine.

Alarm signals*

When the alarm (p. 177) is triggered a siren sounds and all direction indicators flash.

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off. The siren has its own battery and works independently of the car battery.
- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

Reduced alarm level*

Reduced guard means that the movement and tilt detectors can be temporarily deactivated.

To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm (p. 177) - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry - temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt detectors.

The procedure is the same as with the temporary disengaging of deadlocks (p. 175)[11].

Related information

- Alarm indicator* (p. 178)

Type approval - remote control key system

Type approval for the remote control key system can be read in the table.

Lock system, standard

Country/Area	
EU, China	Continental FCC ID: KR5SWK49264 IC:267T-SWK49264 CCAB06LP1040T4 CETS/777C/0306/R TRC/LPD/2006/23 CMII ID:2006DJ1124 Complies with IDA Standards DB01782 TA-2005/910 RLYSWT06-248 Made in Cz

Keyless lock system (Keyless drive)

Country/Area	
EU	Continental SWK4 9265
Korea	Continental SIE-SWK49268 Made in Cz
China	Continental SWK4 9269 CETS/631D/0606/R TRC/LPD/SS/2006/06 CMII ID:2006DJ1121 Complies with IDA Standards DB01782 TA-2006/499 Made in Cz
Hong Kong	Continental SWK4 9209

Related information

- Remote control key (p. 154)

11 Only in combination with alarm.

* Option/accessory.

DRIVER SUPPORT

Active chassis - Four C*

Active chassis "Four-C" (Continously Controlled Chassis Concept), regulates the characteristics of the shock absorbers so that the car's driving characteristics can be adjusted. There are three settings: **Comfort**, **Sport** and **Advanced**.

Comfort

This setting means that the car is perceived as being more comfortable on rough and uneven road surfaces. Shock absorption is soft and the movement of the body is smooth and gentle.

Sport

This setting means that the car is perceived as being more sporty and is recommended for more active driving. Steering response is faster than in the Comfort mode. Shock absorption is harder and the body follows the road in order to reduce rolling during cornering.

Advanced

This setting is only recommended on very even and smooth road surfaces.

The shock absorbers are optimised for maximum roadholding and rolling in bends is further minimised.

Operation

Control buttons.

The required chassis setting is selected using the centre console buttons. The setting used when the engine was switched off is re-activated when the engine is next started.

Adjustable steering force*

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car in order to give the driver enhanced sensitivity.

On motorways the steering feels firmer. Steering is light and requires no extra effort when parking and at low speed.

The driver can choose between three different levels of steering force for road responsiveness or steering sensitivity in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109):

- Once there, search for **Steering force level** and select **Low**, **Medium** or **High**.

This setting is not accessible when the car is moving.

NOTE

In certain situations the power steering may become too hot and then needs to be temporarily cooled - during this time the power steering operates with reduced power and turning the steering wheel may then be perceived to be slightly heavier.

In parallel with the temporarily reduced steering assistance the combined instrument panel shows a message.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- MY CAR (p. 109)

Electronic stability control (ESC) - general

Stability system ESC (Electronic Stability Control) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The activation of the ESC system during braking may be noticed as a throbbing sound. The car may accelerate slower than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

WARNING

The stability system ESC is supplementary assistance - it cannot handle all situations in all road conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

The ESC system consists of the following functions:

- Active Yaw Control
- Spin Control
- Traction control system
- Engine drag control - EDC
- Corner Traction Control - CTC
- Trailer Stability Assist - TSA

Active Yaw Control

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin Control

The function prevents the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Traction control system

The function is active at low speed and transfers power from the driving wheel that is spinning to the one that is not.

Engine drag control - EDC

EDC (Engine Drag Control) prevents involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gears on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Corner Traction Control - CTC*

CTC compensates for understeer and allows higher than normal acceleration in a bend without wheelspin on the inner wheel, e.g. on an arcing motorway entrance road to quickly reach the prevailing traffic speed.

▸▸

Trailer Stability Assist* - TSA[1]

Trailer stability assist (p. 315) function is to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake. For more information, see Driving with a trailer* (p. 309).

NOTE

The function is deactivated if the driver selects **Sport** mode.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation (p. 184)
- Electronic stability control (ESC) - symbols and messages (p. 185)

Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation

Selection of level - Sport mode

The ESC system is always activated - it cannot be deactivated.

However, the driver can select the **Sport** mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

Sport mode is selected in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

In **Sport** mode the system detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding with the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

If, for example, the driver stops a controlled skid by releasing the accelerator pedal, then the ESC system intervenes and stabilises the car.

With **Sport** mode, maximum traction is also obtained if the car has become stuck, or when driving on a loose surface - e.g. sand or deep snow.

Sport mode is indicated in the combined instrument panel by means of this symbol illuminating with a constant glow until the driver deselects the function or until the engine is switched off - after the next time the engine is started the ESC system is back in its normal mode again.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (ESC) - general (p. 183)
- Electronic stability control (ESC) - symbols and messages (p. 185)

[1] Trailer Stability Assist is included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.

Electronic stability control (ESC) - symbols and messages

Table

Symbol	Message	Specification
	ESC Temporarily OFF	ESC system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake disc temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	ESC system disengaged. • Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
and	**"Message"**	There is a text message in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) - Read it!
	Constant glow for 2 seconds.	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light.	ESC system is being activated.
OFF	Constant glow.	**Sport** mode is activated. **NOTE:** The ESC system is not deactivated in this mode - it is partially reduced.

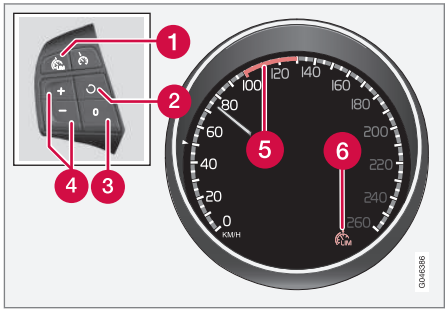
Related information

- Electronic stability control (ESC) - general (p. 183)
- Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation (p. 184)

Speed limiter*

A Speed Limiter (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a preselected/set speed by the speed limiter.

Overview



Steering wheel keypad and combined instrument panel.

1. Speed limiter - On/Off.
2. Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
3. Standby mode.
4. Activate and adjust the max. speed.
5. Selected speed.
6. Speed limiter active.

Related information

- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 189)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 189)

Speed limiter* - getting started

Switch on and activate

When the speed limiter is active, its symbol (6) is shown in combination with a mark (5) by the set maximum speed in the combined instrument panel.

Selection and storage of the highest possible speed in the memory can be made both during a journey and while stationary.

While driving

1. Press the steering wheel button to switch on the speed limiter.
   > The symbol (6) for speed limiter illuminates in the combined instrument panel.
2. When the car is moving at the desired highest possible speed: Press one of the steering wheel buttons + or − until the combined instrument panel shows a mark (5) by the desired maximum speed.
   > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.

When stationary

1. Press the steering wheel button to switch on the speed limiter.

2. Scroll with the + button until the combined instrument panel shows a mark (5) by the desired maximum speed.
   > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 187)

Speed limiter* - changing speed

Changing the stored speed

Stored max. speed is changed with short or long presses on the + or − steering wheel button.

To adjust +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph):

- Use short presses - each press gives +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).

To adjust +/- 1 km/h (+/- 1 mph):

- Hold down the button and release it at the required max. speed.

Last press made is stored in the memory.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 187)

Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode

A Speed Limiter (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a preselected/set speed by the speed limiter.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily deactivate the speed limiter and set it in standby mode:

– Press 0.
  > The mark (5) in the combined instrument panel changes colour from GREEN to WHITE and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed.

  The speed limiter is reactivated with one press on ↺. The mark (5) then changes colour from WHITE to GREEN and the car's maximum speed is limited once again.

Temporary deactivation with the accelerator pedal

The speed limiter can also be set in standby mode with the accelerator pedal, e.g. for rapidly accelerating the car out of a situation:

* Option/accessory.

– Depress the accelerator pedal fully.
  > The combined instrument panel shows the stored maximum speed with a coloured mark (5) and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed - the mark (5) changes colour during this time from GREEN to WHITE.

  The speed limiter is automatically reactivated after the release of the accelerator pedal and the car's speed is slowed down to below the selected/stored maximum speed - the display's mark (5) changes colour from WHITE to GREEN and the car's maximum speed is again limited.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - changing speed (p. 188)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 189)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 189)

Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded

A Speed Limiter (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented by the speed limiter from accidentally exceeding a speed that is selected/set in advance.

On a steep downhill gradient the speed limiter's engine braking effect may be inadequate and the selected maximum speed is exceeded. The driver is alerted about this with an acoustic signal.

The signal is active until the driver has slowed to below the selected maximum speed.

NOTE

The alarm is only activated after 5 seconds if the speed has been exceeded by at least 3 km/h (approx. 2 mph), provided that neither of the − or ↺ buttons has been depressed during the last half minute.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - changing speed (p. 188)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 189)

Speed limiter* - deactivation

A Speed Limiter (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a preselected/set speed by the speed limiter.

To deactivate the speed limiter:

– Press the steering wheel button LIM.
  > The combined instrument panel's symbol for speed limiter (6) and the selection of the set speed (5) both extinguish - the set/stored speed is thus cleared and cannot then be resumed with the ↺ button.

  The driver can then use the accelerator pedal to choose a speed without limitation.

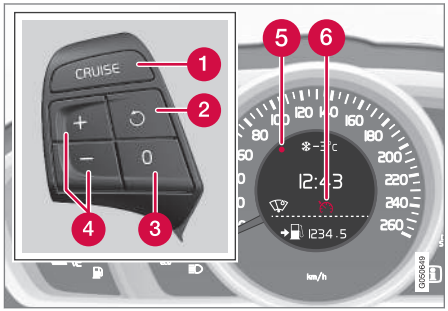
Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 187)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 189)

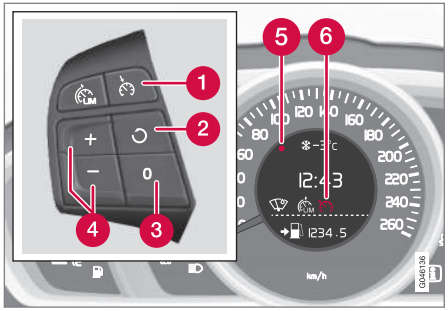
Cruise control*

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in a more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Overview



The steering wheel buttons and combined instrument panel in cars **without** speed limiter[2].



The steering wheel buttons and combined instrument panel in cars **with** speed limiter[2].

1. Cruise control - On/Off.
2. Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
3. Standby mode.
4. Activate and adjust the speed.
5. Selected speed (GREY = Standby mode).
6. Cruise control active - WHITE symbol (GREY = Standby mode).

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed and/or suitable distance.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Related information

- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 191)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 191)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 192)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)

[2] A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.

* Option/accessory.

Cruise control* - managing speed

It is possible to activate, set and change the stored speed.

Activating and setting the speed

To start the cruise control:

- Press the steering wheel button for **CRUISE** (**without** speed limiter) or (**with** speed limiter).

> The cruise control symbol (6) in the combined instrument panel illuminates - cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:

- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button + or −.

> The current speed is stored in memory and the combined instrument panel's marking (5) illuminates at the selected speed and the symbol (6) changes from GREY to WHITE - the car then follows the stored speed.

NOTE

Cruise Control cannot be enabled at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph).

Changing the stored speed

Stored speed is changed with short or long presses on the + or − steering wheel button.

To adjust 5 km/h (5 mph):

- Use short presses - each press gives 5 km/h (5 mph).

To adjust 1 km/h (1 mph):

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.

Last press made is stored in the memory.

If speed is increased using the accelerator pedal prior to pressing the +/− button, then it is the car's current speed when the button is pressed that is stored.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

NOTE

If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 190)

Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode

The function can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button 0.

> The combined instrument panel's marking (5) and symbol (6) change colour from WHITE to GREY - cruise control is temporarily disengaged.

Standby mode due to driver intervention

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and automatically set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the clutch pedal is depressed for longer than 1 minute[3]
- the gear lever/selector is moved to **N** position
- the driver maintains speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect

[3] Disengaging and selecting a higher or lower gear does not involve standby mode.

the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- wheels lose traction
- engine speed is too low/high
- speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then regulate the speed.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 190)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 191)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 192)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 192)

Cruise control* - resume set speed

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed.

After temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 191) it is possible to resume the set speed.

To reactivate the cruise control from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button ↺.

> The combined instrument panel's marking (5) and symbol (6) change colour from GREY to WHITE - the car then follows the last stored speed.

NOTE

A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by selecting the ↺ button.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 190)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 191)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 191)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 192)

Cruise control* - deactivate

How it is deactivated is described here.

Cruise control is switched off with the steering wheel button (1) or by switching off the engine - the set/stored speed is thus cleared and cannot then be resumed with the ↺ button.

Related information

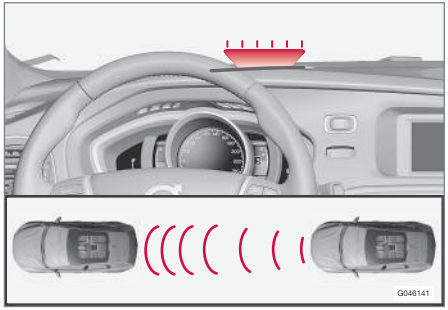
- Cruise control* (p. 190)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 191)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 191)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 192)

* Option/accessory.

Distance Warning*

The Distance Warning function (Distance Alert) warns the driver if the time interval to the vehicle ahead becomes too short.

Distance Warning is active at speeds above 30 km/h (20 mph) and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the car, in the same direction. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.



Orange-coloured warning lamp[4].

An orange-coloured warning lamp in the windscreen illuminates with a constant glow if the distance to the vehicle in front is shorter than the set time interval.

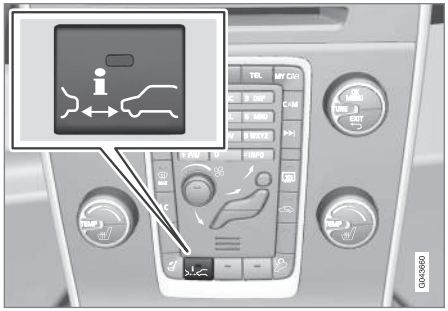
NOTE

Distance warning is deactivated during the time the adaptive cruise control is active.

WARNING

Distance warning only reacts if the distance to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value - the speed of the driver's vehicle is not affected.

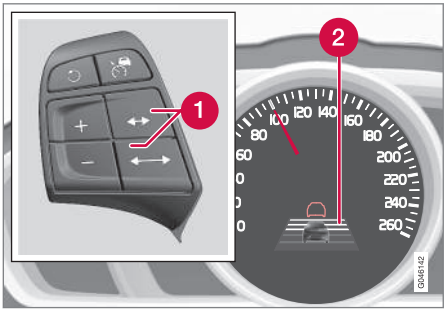
Operation



Press the button in the centre console to switch the function on or off. The function is switched on if one lamp is illuminated in the button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case, the function is operated in the car's menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109) - once there, search for the **Distance Alert** function.

Set time interval



Controls and symbol for time interval.

1. Time interval - Increase/decrease.
2. Time interval - On.

4 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

The same symbol is also shown when Adaptive cruise control (p. 197) is activated.

NOTE

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

The set time interval is also used by the function adaptive cruise control (p. 197).

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

Related information

- Distance Warning* - limitations (p. 194)
- Distance Warning* - symbols and messages (p. 195)

Distance Warning* - limitations

This function, which uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control (p. 196) and Collision warning with auto brake (p. 221), has certain limitations.

NOTE

Strong sunlight, reflections or strong variations in light intensity, as well as wearing sunglasses, could mean that the warning light in the windscreen cannot be seen.

Poor weather or winding roads could affect the radar sensor's capacity to detect vehicles in front.

The size of other vehicles could also affect detection capacity, e.g. motorcycles. This could mean that the warning lamp illuminates at a shorter distance than the setting or that the warning is temporarily absent.

Extremely high speeds can also cause the lamp to illuminate at a shorter distance than that set due to limitations in sensor range.

For further information on radar sensor limitations, see Radar sensor - limitations (p. 209) and (p. 226).

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 193)
- Distance Warning* - symbols and messages (p. 195)

* Option/accessory.

Distance Warning* - symbols and messages

The function has certain symbols and messages that can be shown in the combined instrument panel if the function is reduced due to its limitations.

Symbol[A]	Message	Specification
	Radar blocked See manual	Distance Warning temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles, e.g. in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 209).
	Collision warning Service required	Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake fully or partially disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[A] Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 193)
- Distance Warning* - limitations (p. 194)

Adaptive cruise control - ACC*

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a pre-selected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

The adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver sets the desired speed (p. 199) and time interval (p. 201) to the car in front. When the radar detector detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted to that. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

If the adaptive cruise control is switched off or set to standby mode (p. 201) and the car comes too close to a vehicle in front, then the driver is warned instead by the Distance Warning (p. 193) function about the short distance.

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read all the sections about the adaptive cruise control in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before it is used.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

For a limited time after the service, the ACC function can have a somewhat limited range. The system is calibrated whilst driving and full function returns automatically.

Automatic gearbox

Cars with automatic gearbox have enhanced functionality with the adaptive cruise control's Queue assistance (p. 203) function.

Related information

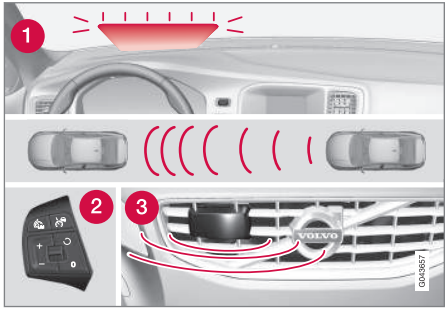
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - managing speed (p. 199)
- Adaptive cruise control* - set time interval (p. 201)
- Adaptive cruise control* - temporary deactivation, and standby mode (p. 201)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle (p. 202)
- Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate (p. 203)
- Adaptive Cruise Control* - queue assistance (p. 203)
- Adaptive cruise control* - switch cruise control functionality (p. 205)
- Radar sensor (p. 209)
- Radar sensor - limitations (p. 209)
- Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action (p. 206)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 207)

* Option/accessory.

Adaptive cruise control* - function

Adaptive cruise control consists of a cruise control system and a coordinated spacing system.

Function overview



Function overview[5].

1. Warning lamp - braking by driver required
2. Steering wheel keypad (p. 198)
3. Radar sensor (p. 209)

WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

Distance to the vehicle ahead (p. 201) is measured primarily by a radar sensor (p. 209). The cruise control function regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used by the adaptive cruise control.

WARNING

The brake pedal moves when the adaptive cruise control brakes. Do not rest your foot beneath the brake pedal - it may then become trapped.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane according to what the driver set for time interval (p. 201). If the radar sensor cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle in front exceeds the stored speed.

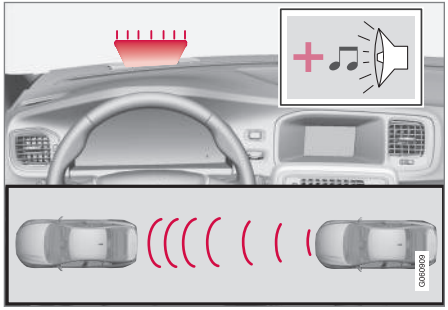
The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies with large differences in speed, or if the vehicle in front brakes heavily. Due to limitations in the radar sensor (p. 209) braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

The adaptive cruise control can be activated to follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h[6] (20 mph) up to 200 km/h (125 mph). If the speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph) or if the engine speed becomes too low, the cruise control is set in standby mode (p. 201) at which automatic braking ceases - the driver must then take over himself/herself to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.

5 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may differ depending on car model.
6 Queue Assist (p. 203) (in cars with automatic gearbox) can operate in the range 0-200 km/h (0-125 mph).

Warning lamp - braking by driver required

Adaptive cruise control has a braking capacity that is equivalent to approx. 40% of the car's braking capacity.



Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk[7].

If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the adaptive cruise control capacity and the driver does not brake, then the warning lamp and warning sound from the Collision warning system (p. 221) are used in order to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

NOTE

Information on the windscreen may be difficult to see in strong sunlight and when wearing sunglasses.

WARNING

The adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles which its radar unit has detected - hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Do not wait for a warning without braking when so required.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. It may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to slow down.

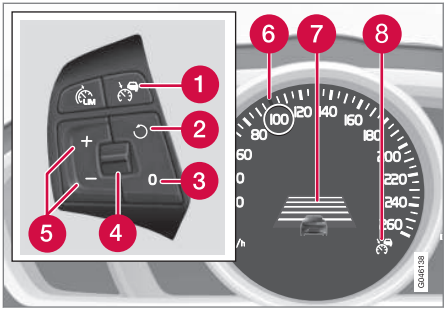
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate (p. 203)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle (p. 202)

Adaptive cruise control* - overview

Operation of the adaptive cruise control and steering wheel keypad varies depending on whether or not the car is equipped with speed limiter[8].

Adaptive cruise control with Speed limiter



1. Cruise control - On/Off.
2. Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
3. Standby mode
4. Time interval - Increase/decrease.
5. Activate and adjust the speed.

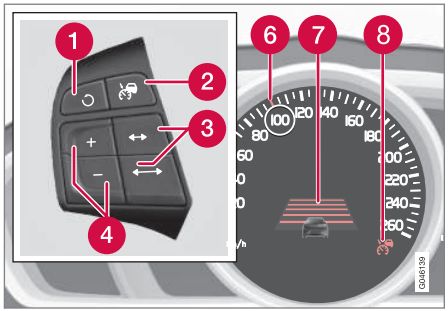
[7] NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
[8] A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.

6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

7 Time distance

8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

Adaptive cruise control without Speed limiter



1 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.

2 Cruise control - On/Off or Standby mode.

3 Time interval - Increase/decrease.

4 Activate and adjust the speed.

5 (Not used)

6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

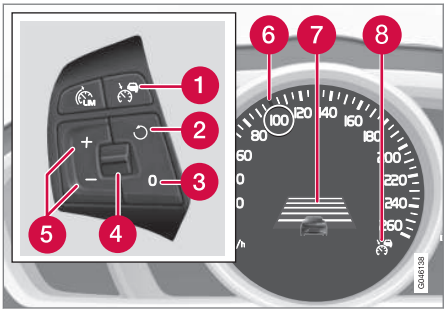
7 Time distance

8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

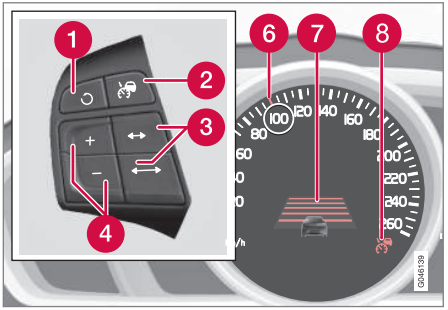
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 207)

Adaptive cruise control* - managing speed



Adaptive cruise control **with** Speed limiter[9].



Adaptive cruise control **without** Speed limiter[9].

To start the ACC:

- Press the steering wheel button - a similar WHITE symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel (8) which shows that the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode (p. 201).

To activate ACC:

- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button + or −.

> The current speed is stored in the memory, the combined instrument panel shows a "magnifying glass" (6) around the stored speed for a second or so and its marking changes from WHITE to GREEN.

When this symbol changes colour from WHITE to GREEN, the ACC is active and the car maintains the stored speed.

Only when the symbol shows an image of another vehicle is the **distance** to the vehicle in front controlled by the ACC.

At the same time a speed range is marked:

- the higher speed with GREEN marking is the pre-programmed speed
- the lower speed is the speed of the vehicle in front.

Changing the stored speed

Stored speed is changed with short or long presses on the + or − steering wheel button.

To adjust +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph):

- Use short presses - each press gives +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).

To adjust +/- 1 km/h (+/- 1 mph):

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.

Last press made is stored in the memory.

If speed is increased using the accelerator pedal prior to pressing the +/− button, then it is the car's current speed when the button is pressed that is stored.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

NOTE

If any of the adaptive cruise control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then the function is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate it, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

In certain situations it cannot be reactivated - in which case, the combined instrument panel (p. 207) shows **Adaptive cruise control unavailable**.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)

9 An explanation of the illustration's figures is given in the section "Adaptive cruise control - overview" (p. 198).

* Option/accessory.

Adaptive cruise control* - set time interval

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

To set/change the time distance:

- Turn the thumbwheel on the steering wheel keypad (p. 198) (or use the ⟷/↔ buttons for cars without Speed limiter).

At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen traffic problem should arise.

The same symbol is also shown when Distance Warning (p. 193) function is activated.

NOTE

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If the adaptive cruise control does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the vehicle in front is preventing an increase in speed.

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

Read more how speed is handled (p. 199).

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)
- Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate (p. 203)

Adaptive cruise control* - temporary deactivation, and standby mode

The adaptive cruise control can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.

Temporary deactivation/standby mode - with speed limiter

To temporarily disengage the adaptive cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button 0

This symbol and the stored speed's marking then change colour from GREEN to WHITE.

Temporary deactivation/standby mode - without speed limiter

To temporarily disengage the adaptive cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button

Standby mode due to driver intervention

The adaptive cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set automatically in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the clutch pedal is depressed for longer than 1 minute[10]
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

The adaptive cruise control is dependent on other systems, e.g. Stability system ESC (p. 183). If any of these systems stops working, the adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message **Adaptive cruise control cancelled** is shown in the combined instrument panel. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

An automatic deactivation can be due to:

- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off his seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- speed has fallen below 30 km/h[11] (20 mph)
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the radar sensor is covered e.g. by wet snow or heavy rain (radar waves blocked).

Resume set speed

Adaptive cruise control in standby mode is reactivated with one press on the steering wheel button - the speed is then set to the last stored speed.

NOTE

A pronounced increase in speed may occur after the cruise control has been reactivated with the button.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Cruise control* (p. 190)

Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle

When the car is following another vehicle and the driver indicates an impending overtaking manoeuvre with the direction indicator[12], the adaptive cruise control helps to briefly accelerate the car towards the vehicle in front.

The function is active at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph).

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations other than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road - the car will then accelerate briefly.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)

10 Disengaging and selecting a higher or lower gear does not involve standby mode.
11 Does not apply to a car with Queue assistance - it can go all the way down to 0 km/h.

Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate

Keypad with Speed limiter

The adaptive cruise control is switched off with the steering wheel button in the steering wheel keypad (p. 198) - the set/stored speed is thus cleared and cannot then be resumed with the button.

Keypad without Speed limiter

With a short press on the steering wheel button the adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode (p. 201). It is switched off with an additional short press - the set/stored speed is thus cleared and cannot then be resumed with the button.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 207)

Adaptive Cruise Control* - queue assistance

Queue assistance also provides the adaptive cruise control with enhanced functionality at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph).

In cars with automatic gearbox the adaptive cruise control is supplemented with the queue assistance function (also referred to as "Queue Assist").

Queue assistance has the following functions:

- Extended speed range - also at lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) and at stationary
- Change of target
- Automatic braking ceases when stationary
- Automatic activation parking brake.

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h (20 mph) - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) **cannot** be selected/stored.

Extended speed range

> **NOTE**
>
> In order to activate the adaptive cruise control, the driver's door must be closed and the driver must be wearing the seatbelt.

With an automatic gearbox, the adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle within the range 0-200 km/h (0-125 mph).

> **NOTE**
>
> A vehicle in front must be within a reasonable distance in order to enable activation of the adaptive cruise control at a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the Adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking. The driver must then reactivate it in one of the following ways:

- Press the steering wheel button

...or...

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The adaptive cruise control will then resume following the vehicle in front.

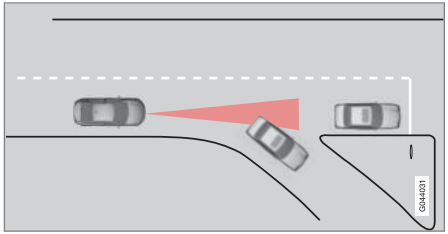
12 On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

NOTE

The Queue Assist function can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 4 minutes - then the parking brake is applied and the adaptive cruise control is disengaged.

- The parking brake must be released before the adaptive cruise control can be reactivated.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will brake for the stationary vehicle.

WARNING

When the adaptive cruise control is following a vehicle in front at speeds **in excess of** 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a vehicle in front to a stationary vehicle, the adaptive cruise control will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead select the stored speed.

- The driver must intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The adaptive cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (5 mph) and the adaptive cruise control is uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (5 mph) and the vehicle in front turns off so the adaptive cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Termination of automatic braking at a standstill

In certain situations, queue assistance stops automatic braking at a standstill. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself in order to maintain its position.

Queue assistance releases the foot brake and sets the adaptive cruise control in standby mode in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N** or **R** position
- the driver sets the adaptive cruise control in standby mode.

Automatic activation parking brake

In certain situations queue assistance applies the parking brake in order to keep the car remaining stationary.

This takes place if:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- ESC is changed from **Normal** to **Sport** mode
- Queue assistance has held the car stationary for more than 4 minutes
- the engine is switched off
- the brakes have overheated.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)

Adaptive cruise control* - switch cruise control functionality

Changing from ACC to CC

A symbol for active cruise control is shown in the combined instrument panel:

CC Cruise Control	ACC Adaptive Cruise Control
Cruise control	Adaptive cruise control

With one press of the button the adaptive part (spacing system) in the cruise control is deactivated, at which point the car just follows the set/stored speed.

- Give a **long** press on the steering wheel button - the combined instrument panel's symbol changes from to .

> By these means the standard cruise control (p. 190) CC (Cruise Control) is activated.

WARNING

The car no longer brakes automatically after switching from ACC to CC - it merely follows the set speed.

Changing back from CC to ACC

Switch off cruise control with 1-2 presses on the button in accordance with the deactivation instructions (p. 203). The next time the system is switched on it is the Adaptive cruise control that is activated.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)

Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action

If the combined instrument panel shows the message **Radar blocked See manual** then it means that the adaptive cruise control's radar sensor (p. 209) cannot detect other vehicles in front of the car.

This message indicates that neither of the functions for Distance Alert (p. 193) or Collision Warning with Auto Brake (p. 221) are working.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The radar surface in the grille is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the radar surface in the grille from dirt, ice and snow.
Heavy rain or snow blocking the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the radar does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals.	No action. Sometimes the radar does not work on a very wet or snowy road surface.
The radar surface has been cleaned but the message remains.	Wait. It could take several minutes for the radar to sense that it is no longer blocked.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 207)

* Option/accessory.

Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages

Sometimes the adaptive cruise control may display a symbol and/or text message. Here are some examples - follow the recommendation given if appropriate:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is GREEN	The car maintains the stored speed.
	The symbol is WHITE	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
		Standard cruise control is selected manually.
	Set ESC to Normal to enable Cruise	The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated until the Stability system (ESC) (p. 183) has been set in Normal mode.
	Adaptive cruise control cancelled	The adaptive cruise control has been deactivated - the driver has to regulate the speed himself.
	Adaptive cruise control unavailable	The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated. This could be due to: • brake temperature is high • the radar sensor is blocked by e.g. wet snow or rain.
	Radar blocked See manual	The adaptive cruise control is temporarily disengaged. • The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. The driver can then choose to switch to (p. 205) normal Cruise control (CC) - a text message provides information on appropriate alternatives. Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 209).

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Adaptive cruise control Service required	The adaptive cruise control is disengaged. • Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Press brake to hold vehicle + acoustic alarm[A]	The car is stationary and the cruise control will release the foot brake to allow the parking brake to take over and hold the car, but a fault in the parking brake means the car will shortly begin to roll. • The driver must brake himself/herself. The message remains and the alarm sounds until the driver depresses the brake pedal or uses the accelerator pedal.
	Below 30 km/h Lead vehicle required[A]	Shown in the event of attempts to activate the adaptive cruise control at speeds below 30 km/h (20 mph) without a vehicle in front within the activation distance.

[A] Only with Queue Assist.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 198)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 197)

* Option/accessory.

Radar sensor

The function of the radar sensor is to detect cars or larger vehicles in the same direction, in the same lane.

The radar sensor is used by the following functions:

- Distance Warning*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Collision Warning System with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection*

IMPORTANT

In the event of visible damage to the car's grille, or if you suspect that the radar sensor may be damaged:

- Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The function may completely or partially disappear - or malfunction - if the grille, the radar sensor or its bracket is damaged or has loosened.

Modification of the radar sensor could result in it being illegal to use.

Related information

- Radar sensor - limitations (p. 209)
- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Collision warning system* (p. 221)
- Distance Warning* (p. 193)

Radar sensor - limitations

A radar sensor (p. 209) has certain limitations - due to its limited field of vision for example.

The capacity of the adaptive cruise control to detect a vehicle in front is significantly reduced if:

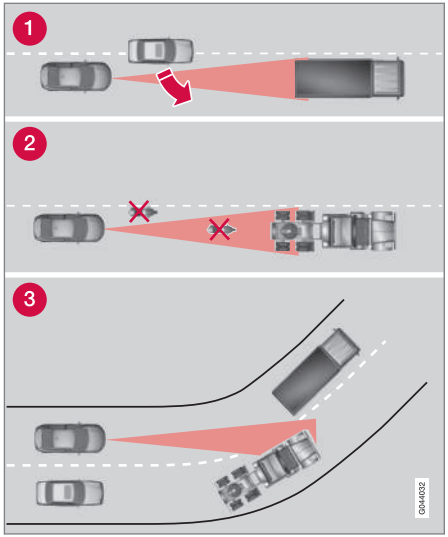
- the speed of vehicles in front is significantly different from your own speed
- its radar sensor becomes blocked - e.g. in heavy rain or slush, or if other objects have collected in front of the radar sensor.

NOTE

Keep the area in front of the radar sensor clean - see subheading "Maintenance" (p. 225).

Field of vision

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



ACC field of vision.

1. Sometimes the radar sensor is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between the car and vehicles in front.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends the radar sensor may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read all the sections about the adaptive cruise control in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before it is used.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

WARNING

Accessories or other objects such as auxiliary lamps must not be fitted in front of the grille.

WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 196)
- Collision warning system* (p. 221)
- Distance Warning* (p. 193)

* Option/accessory.

Type approval - radar system

Type approval for the car's radar units can be seen in the following table.

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Brazil	✓		ANATEL	Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Modelo: L2C0038TR 1071-10-3451 EAN: 07897843800248
		✓		Modelo: L2C0055TR 1500-15-8065 EAN: 07897843840978
Europe	✓	✓	CE	Hereby, Delphi Electronics & Safety declares that L2C0038TR / L2C0055TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. The Declaration of Conformity may be consulted at Delphi Electronics & Safety / 2151 E. Lincoln Road / Kokomo, Indiana 46902 USA
The United Arab Emirates	✓			TRA REGISTERED No: 0018923/09 DEALER No: DA37380/15
		✓		TRA REGISTERED No: ER37357/15 DEALER No: DA37380/15

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Indonesia	✓			14785/POSTEL/2010 1982
		✓		38806/SDPPI/2015 4927
Jordan	✓			Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2009/87 Equipment type: Low Power Device (LPD)
		✓		Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2015/3 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
Korea	✓			Certification No. DPH-L2C0038TR
		✓		Certification No. MSIP-CMI-DPH-L2C0055TR
Morocco	✓			AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numero d'agrement : MR 4838 ANRT 2009 Date d'agrement : 22/05/2009
		✓		AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC NUMÉRO D'AGRÉMENT: MR 9929 ANRT 2014 DATE D'AGRÉMENT: 26/12/2014
Moldavia	✓	✓		1024

Market	ACC[A]	BLIS[B]	Symbol	Type approval
Singapore	✓	✓	Complies with IDA standards DA105753	Complies with IDA Standards DA105753
South Africa	✓		ICASA	TA-2009/163 APPROVED
		✓		TA-2014/2390 APPROVED
Taiwan	✓			CCAB09LP4590T3
		✓		CCAB15LP0680T0

[A] ACC = Adaptive Cruise Control
[B] BLIS = Blind Spot Information

Related information

- Radar sensor (p. 209)

City Safety™

City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The City Safety™ function is active at speeds below 50 km/h (30 mph) and it helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of imminent risk of collision with vehicles in front, should the driver not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety™ is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety™ is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

City Safety™ must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on City Safety™ to do the braking, there might be a risk of a collision sooner or later.

The driver or passengers normally only notice City Safety™ if a situation arises where the car is extremely close to being in a collision.

If the car is also equipped with Collision Warning with Auto Brake (p. 221)* these two systems complement each other.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance and replacement of City Safety™ components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

WARNING

City Safety™ does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

City Safety™ does not react to vehicles driving in a different direction from the car, to small vehicles and motorcycles or to humans and animals.

City Safety™ can prevent collision at a speed difference of less than 15 km/h (9 mph) - at a higher speed difference, it is only possible to reduce collision speed. In order to obtain full brake function, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

Never wait for City Safety™ to engage. The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the proper distance and speed.

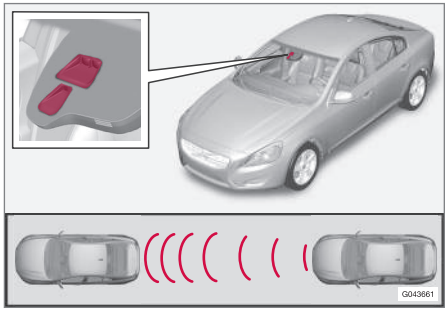
Related information

- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 216)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 218)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 220)

* Option/accessory.

City Safety™ - function

City Safety detects the traffic in front of the car with a laser sensor fitted in the top edge of the windscreen. If there is an imminent risk of collision, City Safety will automatically brake the car, which may be experienced as heavy braking.



Laser sensor transmitter and receiver window[13].

If the speed difference is 4-15 km/h (3-9 mph) in relation to the vehicle in front then City Safety can completely avoid a collision.

City Safety activates a short, sharp braking procedure and stops the car in normal circumstances, just behind the vehicle in front. For most drivers this is well outside normal driving style and may be experienced as being uncomfortable.

If the difference in speed between the vehicles is greater than 15 km/h (9 mph) then City Safety may not avoid the collision on its own - to obtain full brake force, the driver must depress the brake pedal and this could then make it possible to avoid a collision, even at speed differences above 15 km/h (9 mph).

When the function is activated and brakes, the combined instrument panel shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

NOTE

When City Safety™ brakes, the brake lights come on.

Related information

- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 216)
- City Safety™ (p. 214)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 218)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 220)

City Safety™ - operation

City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

On and Off

NOTE

The City Safety™ function is activated automatically when the engine is started.

In certain situations, it may advisable to disable City Safety™, e.g. where leafy branches could sweep over the bonnet and/or windscreen.

City Safety™ handled in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109) and after starting the engine the function can be deactivated as follows:

- Search in **MY CAR** for **Driver support system** and select the **Off** option at **City Safety**.

  However, the function will be enabled the next time the engine is started, regardless of whether the system was enabled or disabled when the engine was switched off.

13 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

WARNING

The laser sensor also transmits laser light when City Safety™ is disabled manually.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 214)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 216)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 218)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 220)
- MY CAR (p. 109)

City Safety™ - limitations

The sensor in City Safety is designed to detect cars and other large vehicles in front of the car irrespective of whether it is day or night.

However, the function does have some limitations.

The sensor's limitations mean that City Safety has poorer functionality - or none at all - in e.g. heavy snowfall or rain, dense fog, dust storms or white-out situations. Misting, dirt, ice or snow on the windscreen may also disrupt the function.

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

The laser beam from the sensor in City Safety measures how the light is reflected. The sensor cannot detect objects with low reflection capacity. The rear sections of the vehicle generally reflect the light sufficiently thanks to the number plate and rear light reflectors.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS[14] and ESC[15] systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

When your own car is reversing, City Safety is temporarily deactivated.

City Safety is not activated at low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph), which is why the system does not intervene in situations where a vehicle in front is being approached very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety does not intervene in situations where the driver is steering or accelerating in a clear manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

When City Safety has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when City Safety has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

14 (Anti-lock Braking System) - Anti-lock braking system.
15 (Electronic Stability Control) - Stability system.

NOTE

- Keep the windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor free from ice, snow and dirt (see the illustration for sensor location (p. 215)).
- Do not affix or mount anything on the windscreen in front of the laser sensor.
- Remove ice and snow from the bonnet - snow and ice must not exceed a height of 5 cm.

Fault tracing and action

If the message **Windscreen sensors blocked See manual** is shown in the combined instrument panel it indicates that the laser sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in front of the car. This means in turn that City Safety is not operational.

The **Windscreen sensors blocked See manual** message is not shown for all situations in which the laser sensor is blocked. The driver must therefore be diligent about keeping the windscreen and area in front of the laser sensor clean.

The following table presents possible causes for the message being shown, along with suggestions for appropriate action.

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the windscreen surface in front of the sensor from dirt, ice and snow.
The laser sensor field of vision is blocked.	Remove the blocking object.

IMPORTANT

If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the windscreen in front of either of the laser sensor's "windows" and they cover a surface of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm (or larger), then a workshop must be contacted for replacement of the windscreen (see the illustration for sensor location (p. 215)) - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Failure to take action may result in reduced performance for City Safety™.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation for City Safety™, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends that you do **not** repair cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the laser sensor - instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

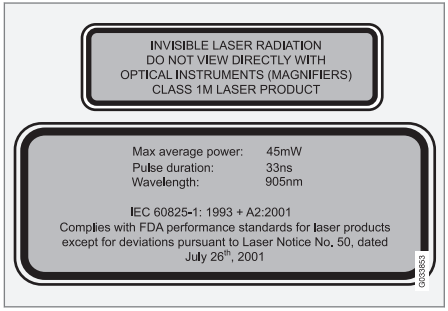
Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 214)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 215)

City Safety™ - laser sensor

The City Safety™ function includes a sensor which transmits laser light (see illustration (p. 215) for sensor location). Contact a qualified workshop in the event of a fault or if the laser sensor needs servicing - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. It is absolutely essential to follow the prescribed instructions when handling the laser sensor.

The following two labels relate to the laser sensor:



The upper label in the figure describes the laser beam's classification:

- Laser radiation - Do not look into the laser beam with optical instruments - Class 1M laser product.

The lower label in the figure describes the laser beam's physical data:

- IEC 60825-1:1993 + A2:2001. Complies with FDA (U.S. Food Administration) standards for laser product design with the exception of deviations in accordance with "Laser Notice No. 50" from 26 July 2001.

Radiation data for the laser sensor

The following table specifies the laser sensor's physical data.

Maximum pulse energy	2.64 µJ
Maximum average output	45 mW
Pulse duration	33 ns
Divergence (horizontal x vertical)	28° × 12°

WARNING

If any of these instructions are not followed then there is a risk of eye injury!

- Never look into the laser sensor (which emits spreading invisible laser radiation) at a distance of 100 mm or closer with magnifying optics such as a magnifying glass, microscope, lens or similar optical instruments.
- Testing, repair, removal, adjustment and/or replacement of the laser sensor's spare parts must only be carried out by a qualified workshop - we recommend an authorised Volvo workshop.
- To avoid exposure to harmful radiation, do not carry out any readjustments or maintenance other than those specified here.
- The repairer must follow specially drawn up workshop information for the laser sensor.
- Do not remove the laser sensor (this includes removing the lenses). A removed laser sensor does not fulfil laser class 3B as per standard IEC 60825-1. Laser class 3B is not eye-safe and therefore entails a risk of injury.
- The laser sensor's connector must be unplugged before removal from the windscreen.
- The laser sensor must be fitted onto the windscreen before the sensor's connector is plugged in.
- The laser sensor transmits a laser light when the remote control key is in key position **II** (p. 77) even if the engine is switched off.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 214)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 216)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 220)

City Safety™ - symbols and messages

In conjunction with automatic braking by the City Safety™ (p. 214) system, one or more symbols may illuminate in the combined instrument panel and a text message may be shown. A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

Symbol	Message	Meaning/Action
	Auto braking by City Safety	City Safety™ is braking or has automatically braked.
	Windscreen sensors blocked See manual	The laser sensor is temporarily non-operational because something is blocking it. ● Remove the object blocking the sensor and/or clean the windscreen in front of the sensor. Read about laser sensor limitations (p. 216).
	City Safety Service required	City Safety™ is not operational. ● Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 214)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 216)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 215)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 218)

Collision warning system*

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, cyclist or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed.

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on Collision Warning with Auto Brake to do the braking, there might be a risk of a collision sooner or later.

Two system levels

Depending on how the car is equipped, the "Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" function may appear in two variants:

Level 1

The driver is merely warned[16] of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - no automatic braking intervenes, the driver must himself brake.

Level 2

The driver is warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - the car is braked automatically if the driver himself does not act within a reasonable time.

IMPORTANT

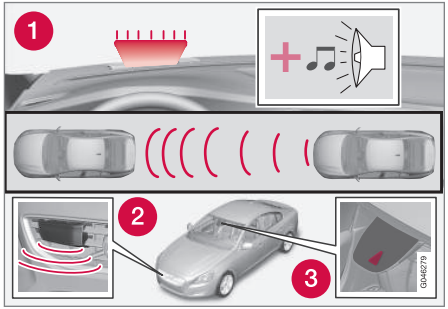
Maintenance of the internal components of the "Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Collision warning system* - function (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 224)
- Collision warning system* - detection of cyclists (p. 223)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 225)
- Collision warning system* - limitations (p. 227)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 228)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 230)

16 No warning for cyclists with "Level 1".

Collision warning system* - function



Function overview[17].

1. Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk.
2. Radar sensor[18]
3. Camera sensor

Collision Warning with Auto Brake executes three steps in the following order:

1. **Collision warning**
2. **Brake support[18]**
3. **Auto Brake[18]**

The collision warning system and City Safety™ (p. 214) complement each other.

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

The collision warning system can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as your car and are located in front of you.

If there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian, cyclist or a vehicle then the driver's attention is attracted with a flashing red warning signal (1) and an acoustic signal.

2 - Brake support[18]

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

This means that the brake system is prepared for rapid braking by applying the brakes lightly, which may feel like a slight jolt.

If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then full brake function is implemented.

Brake support also reinforces the driver's braking if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake[18]

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision. For cyclists, the warning and full brake intervention may come very late or simultaneously.

17 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.
18 With system Level 2 only.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

The collision warning system does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions. The collision warning system does not react to vehicles or cyclists driving in another direction to the car or to animals.

Warning only activated in the event of a high risk for collision. This section "Function" and the section "Limitations" inform about limitations that the driver must be aware of before using the Collision Warning system with Auto Brake.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds above 80 km/h (50 mph).

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists do not work in darkness and tunnels - not even when streetlights are lit.

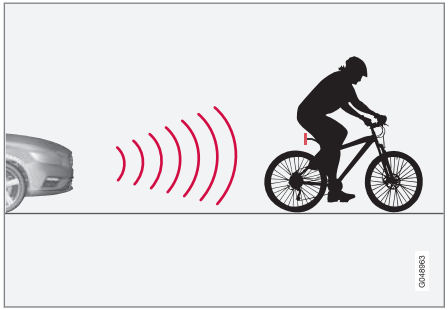
The auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed. To ensure full brake performance, the driver should always depress the brake pedal - even when the car auto-brakes.

Never wait for a collision warning. The driver is always responsible that the correct distance and speed are maintained - even when the collision warning system with auto-brake is used.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

Collision warning system* - detection of cyclists



The function only "sees" cyclists from behind, who are travelling in the same direction.

Optimum examples of what the system interprets as a cyclist - with clear body and bicycle contours, directly from behind and in the car's centre line.

Optimal performance of the system requires that the system function that detects a cyclist receives as unambiguous information as possible about the body and bicycle contours - this implies the opportunity to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body combined with a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

- For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding an "adult bicycle".
- The bicycle must be equipped with a highly visible and approved[19] rearward-facing red reflector, fitted at least 70 cm above the roadway.
- The function can only detect cyclists directly from behind and who are travelling in the same direction - not at an angle from behind, not from the side.
- Cyclists travelling on the left or right-hand edge of the car's imagined/extended side lines may be detected late or not at all.
- The function's capacity to detect cyclists at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The function's capacity to detect cyclists is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when streetlights are lit.
- For optimum bicycle detection, the City Safety™ function must be activated, see City Safety™ (p. 214).

WARNING

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Cyclist Detection is a means of assistance.

The function cannot detect:

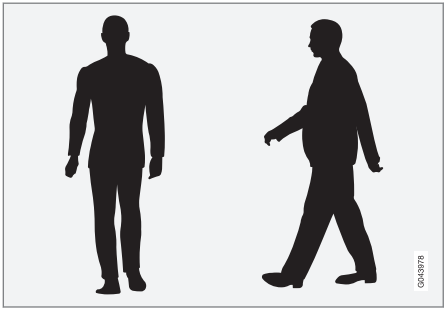
- all cyclists in all situations and does not see partially obscured cyclists, for example.
- cyclists in clothing that obscures the contours of the body or who are approaching from the side.
- bicycles that have no rearward-facing red reflector.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians



Optimal examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body contours.

Optimal performance of the system requires that the system function that detects pedestrians receives as unambiguous information as possible about the contours of the body - this implies the opportunity to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body combined with a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a pedestrian.

19 The reflector must fulfil the recommendations and conditions of the traffic authority in the market in question.

* Option/accessory.

- In order for a pedestrian to be detected he/she must appear full-length and have a height of at least 80 cm.
- The camera sensor's ability to see pedestrians at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The camera sensor's capacity to detect pedestrians is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when streetlights are lit.

WARNING

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is a means of assistance. The function cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and does not see, for example:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

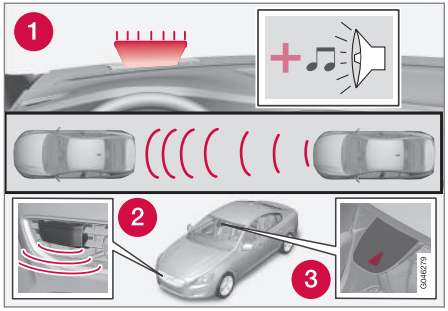
The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

Collision warning system* - operation

Warning signals On and Off



1. Acoustic and visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk[20].

You can select whether the collision warning system's acoustic and visual warning signals should be switched on or off.

When starting the engine, the setting that was selected when the engine was switched off is obtained automatically.

NOTE

The Brake Support and Auto Brake functions are always enabled - they cannot be deactivated.

Settings for the collision warning system are made via the centre console's screen and the menu system **MY CAR**, see (p. 109).

Light and acoustic signals

When the collision warning system's light and acoustic warnings are activated, the warning lamp (no. [1] in previous illustration) is tested each time the engine is started by briefly illuminating the warning lamp's separate points of light.

After starting the engine, both the light and acoustic signals can be switched off:

- Search for **Collision warning** in **Driver support system** in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109) - and there select to uncheck the function.

Acoustic signal

After starting the engine the warning sound can be activated/deactivated separately:

- Search for **Warning sound** in **Collision warning** in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109) - and there select On or Off.

Following which, the collision warning system is only indicated with a light signal.

20 The illustration is schematic - car model and details may differ.

Set warning distance

The warning distance regulates the distance at which the visual and acoustic warnings are deployed.

- Search for **Warning distance** in **Collision warning** in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109) - and there select **Long**, **Normal** or **Short**.

The warning distance determines the system's sensitivity. Warning distance **Long** provides an earlier warning. First test with **Long** and if this setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, then change to warning distance **Normal**.

Only use warning distance **Short** in exceptional cases, e.g. for dynamic driving.

NOTE

When the adaptive cruise control is in use the warning lamp and warning sound will be used by the cruise control even if the collision warning system is switched off.

The collision warning system warns the driver in the event of a risk of a collision, but the function cannot shorten driver reaction time.

In order for the collision warning system to be effective - always drive with Distance Warning (p. 193) set at time interval 4–5.

NOTE

Even if the warning distance has been set to **Long** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles in front brake heavily.

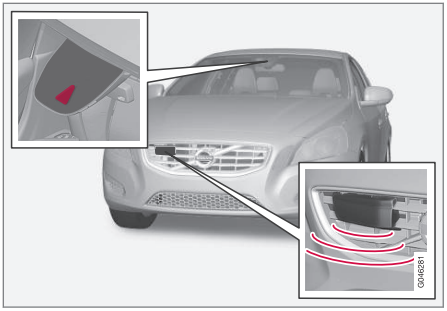
WARNING

No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test Collision Warning with Auto Brake by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.

Checking settings

The current settings can be controlled via the centre console's screen and the menu system (p. 109) **MY CAR**.

Maintenance



Camera and radar sensor[21].

For the sensors to work correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

21 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory.

Collision warning system* - limitations

The function has certain limitations - for example, it is not active until 4 km/h (3 mph).

The collision warning system's visual warning signal (see (1) in the illustration (p. 222)) may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead. The warning sound should therefore always be activated.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and ESC (p. 183) systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

NOTE

The visual warning signal can be temporarily disengaged in the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by strong sunlight for example. If this occurs then the warning sound is activated even if it is deactivated in the menu system.

- Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle in front is small or if steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g. a very active driving style.

WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences mean that the radar or camera sensor cannot detect a pedestrian, a vehicle or a cyclist in front correctly.

The sensor system has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists[22] - the system can give effective warnings and brake interventions for them at vehicle speeds up to 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph).

Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).

The collision warning system uses the same radar sensors as the Adaptive cruise control (p. 196). Read more about radar sensor limitations (p. 209).

If warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning distance can be reduced (p. 225). This would lead to the system warning at a later stage, which reduces the total number of warnings.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily deactivated with reverse gear engaged.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is not activated at low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph), which is why the system does not intervene in situations where the car is approaching a vehicle in front very slowly, e.g. when parking.

In situations where the driver demonstrates active, aware driving behaviour, a collision warning may be postponed slightly in order to keep unnecessary warnings to a minimum.

When Auto Brake has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when Auto Brake has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

22 For cyclists, the warning and full brake intervention may come very late or simultaneously.

Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

The function uses the car's camera sensor, which has certain limitations.

The car's camera sensor is also used - as well as by Collision Warning with Auto Brake - by the functions:

- Active main beam (p. 89)
- Road sign information (p. 236)
- Driver Alert Control - DAC (p. 241)
- Lane assistance (p. 244)

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

The camera sensors have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. they "see" worse in darkness, heavy snowfall or rain and in thick fog for example. Under such conditions the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings could also significantly reduce camera sensor function when it is used to scan the carriageway and detect pedestrians and other vehicles.

The field of vision of the camera sensor is limited, which is why pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles cannot be detected in some situations, or they are detected later than anticipated.

During very high temperatures the camera is temporarily switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started in order to protect camera functionality.

Fault tracing and action

If the display shows the message **Windscreen sensors blocked See manual** then this means that the camera sensor is blocked and cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, vehicles or road markings in front of the car.

At the same time, this means that - besides Collision Warning with Auto Brake - the following functions will not have full functionality either:

- Active main beam
- Driver Alert Control
- Lane Keeping Aid
- Road sign information

The following table presents possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera from dirt, ice and snow.
Thick fog, heavy rain or snow means that the camera does not work sufficiently well.	No action. At times the camera does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
The windscreen surface in front of the camera has been cleaned but the message remains.	Wait. It may take several minutes for the camera to measure the visibility.
Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the camera cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)

Collision warning system* - symbols and messages

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

Symbol[A]	Message	Specification
	Collision warning system OFF	Collision warning system switched off. Shown when the engine is started. The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the **OK** button.
	Collision warning system Unavailable	The collision warning system cannot be activated. Shown when the driver attempts to activate the function. The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the **OK** button.
	Auto Braking was activated	Auto Brake has been active. The message clears after one press of the **OK** button.
	Windscreen sensors blocked See manual	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. ● Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 228).

* Option/accessory.

Symbol[A]	Message	Specification
	Radar blocked See manual	Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 209).
	Collision warning Service required	Collision Warning with Auto Brake is fully or partially disengaged. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 221)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 224)
- Collision warning system* - detection of cyclists (p. 223)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 225)
- Collision warning system* - limitations (p. 227)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 228)

BLIS*

BLIS (Blind Spot Information) is a function designed for providing support for the driver when driving in dense traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

BLIS is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- rapidly approaching vehicles in the left and right-hand lanes closest to the car.

The BLIS function CTA (p. 234) (Cross Traffic Alert) is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

- crossing traffic when the car is reversed.

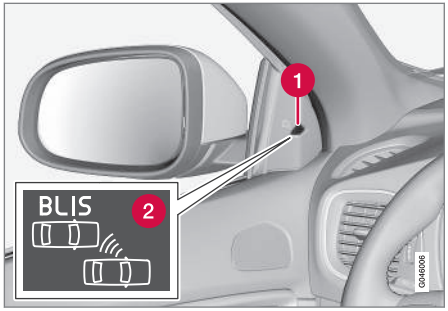
WARNING

BLIS is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

BLIS is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

BLIS can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to change lanes in a safe manner.

Overview



BLIS lamp location[23].

1. Indicator lamp
2. BLIS symbol

NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

Maintenance

The sensors for the BLIS functions are located inside the rear wing/bumper on each corner of the car.

Keep this surface clean - also on the left-hand side.

- To ensure optimal functionality the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

Related information

- BLIS* - operation (p. 233)
- BLIS - symbols and messages (p. 236)
- CTA* (p. 234)

23 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

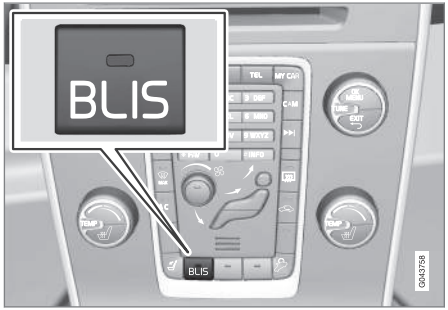
* Option/accessory.

BLIS* - operation

BLIS (Blind Spot Information) is a function designed for providing support for the driver when driving in dense traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Activate/deactivate BLIS

BLIS is activated when the engine is started. This is confirmed by the indicator lamps in the door panels flashing once.



Button for activating/deactivating.

The **BLIS** function can be deactivated/activated by pressing the **BLIS** button on the centre console.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the function is handled by the car's menu system MY CAR (p. 109).

When BLIS is deactivated/activated the lamp in the button extinguishes/illuminates and the combined instrument panel confirms the change with a text message. The door panel indicator lamps flash once upon activation.

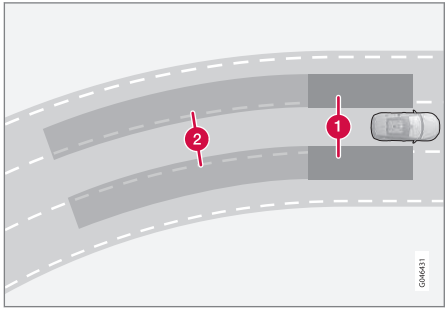
To extinguish the message:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.

or

- Wait approx. 5 seconds - the message extinguishes.

When BLIS operates



Principle for BLIS: 1. Zone in blind spot. 2. Zone for rapidly approaching vehicle.

The BLIS function is active at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

The system is designed to react when:

- the driver's vehicle is overtaken by other vehicles
- the driver's vehicle is rapidly caught up by another vehicle.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in zone 2, the door panel BLIS lamp illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning in this situation then the BLIS lamp will change from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

WARNING

BLIS does not work in sharp bends.

BLIS does not work when the car is being reversed.

Limitations

- Dirt, ice and snow covering sensors can reduce functionality and make it impossible to provide warnings. BLIS cannot detect hazards if it is covered.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- BLIS is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

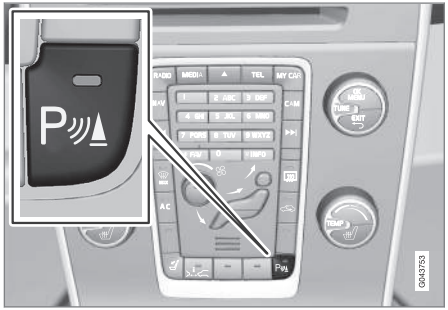
- BLIS* (p. 232)
- BLIS - symbols and messages (p. 236)

CTA*

The BLIS function CTA (Cross Traffic Alert) is a driver aid intended to warn about crossing traffic when the car is reversing. CTA is a supplement to BLIS (p. 232).

Activate/deactivate CTA

CTA is activated when the engine is started. This is confirmed by the indicator lamps for BLIS in the door panels flashing once.



On/Off for parking assistance and CTA sensors.

The CTA function can be deactivated/activated separately with the Parking assistance (p. 253) On/Off button. The BLIS lamps flash once on reactivation.

However, the BLIS function remains activated after the CTA has been deactivated.

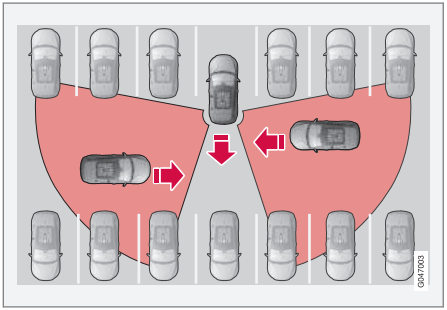
WARNING

CTA is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

CTA is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

CTA can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to reverse in a safe manner.

When CTA operates



Principle for CTA.

CTA supplements the BLIS function by being able to see crossing traffic from the side during reversing, such as when reversing out of a parking space.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions, it may also be able to

* Option/accessory.

detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

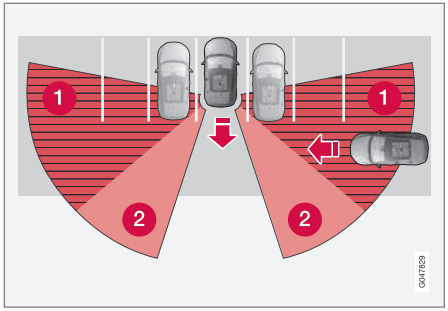
CTA is only active during reversing and is activated automatically when the gearbox's reverse position is selected.

- If CTA detects something approaching from the side, an acoustic warning signal sounds. The signal comes from either the left or the right-hand speaker, depending on the direction from which the object is approaching.
- CTA also warns by illuminating the BLIS lamps.
- An additional warning is provided in the form of an illuminated icon in the display screen's PAS graphics (p. 253).

Limitations

CTA does not perform optimally in all situations, but has a certain limitation - for example, the CTA sensors cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or obstructing objects.

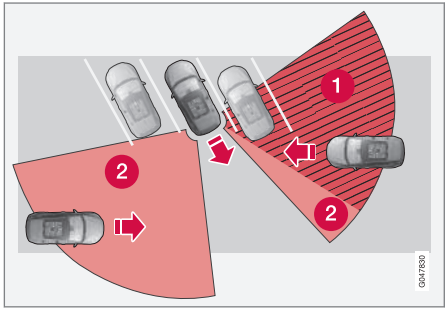
Here are some examples of when CTA's "field of vision" may be limited from the beginning and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.

1 Blind CTA sector.

2 Sector where CTA can detect/"see".



In an angled parking slot CTA can be completely "blind" on one side.

However, when the driver is slowly reversing the car, the angle is changed in relation to the vehicle/object that is blocking, at which the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Examples of further limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering sensors can reduce functionality and make it impossible to provide warnings. CTA cannot detect hazards if it is covered.
- CTA is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance

The sensors for the BLIS and CTA functions are located inside the rear wing/bumper on each corner of the car.

Keep this surface clean - also on the left-hand side.

- To ensure optimal functionality the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.

Related information

- BLIS* (p. 232)
- BLIS - symbols and messages (p. 236)

BLIS - symbols and messages

In situations where the BLIS (Blind Spot Information) (p. 232) and CTA (Cross Traffic Alert) (p. 234) functions fail or are interrupted, the combined instrument panel may show a symbol, supplemented by an explanatory message. Follow any recommendation given.

Message examples:

Message	Specification
CTA OFF	CTA is manually switched off - BLIS is active.
BLIS and CTA OFF Trailer attached	BLIS and CTA are temporarily non-operational because a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.
BLIS and CTA Service required	BLIS and CTA are non-operational. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

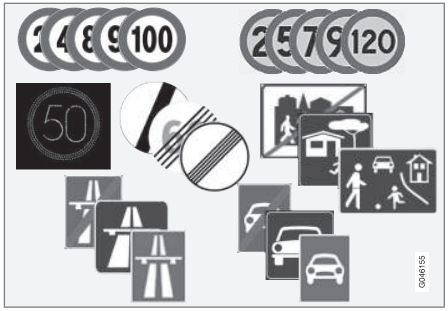
Related information

- BLIS* (p. 232)

Road Sign Information (RSI)*

The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed.

* Option/accessory.



Examples of readable speed related signs[24].

The RSI function gives information on current speed, e.g. that a motorway or road is starting/ending and when overtaking is prohibited.

If both a sign for motorway/road for motorised traffic and a sign showing the maximum permitted speed are passed, RSI decides to show the sign symbol for maximum permitted speed.

WARNING

RSI does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

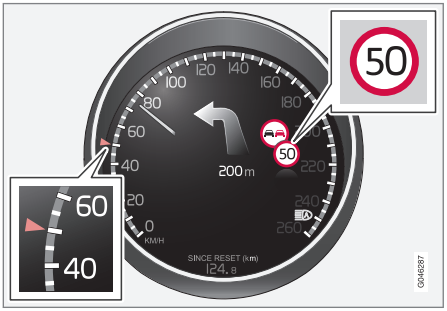
Related information

- Road sign information (RSI)* - operation (p. 237)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations (p. 240)

Road sign information (RSI)* - operation

The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed.

The function is operated as follows:



Recorded speed information[25].

When RSI has recorded a road sign with an imposed speed, the combined instrument panel displays the sign as a symbol.

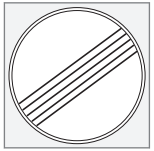
24 Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.
25 Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

Together with the symbol for the current speed limit, a sign showing that overtaking is prohibited may also be displayed where appropriate.

End of restriction or motorway

A corresponding road sign is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 10 seconds in situations where RSI detects a sign that involves the end of a speed limit - or other speed-related information, e.g. end of a motorway.

Examples of such signs are:

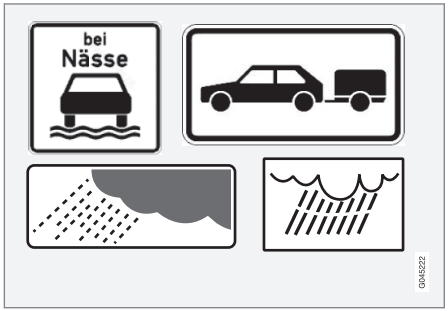


End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

Following which, the sign information is hidden until the next speed-related sign is detected.

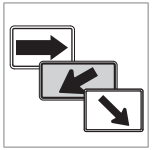
Additional signs



Examples of additional signs[25].

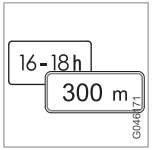
Sometimes different speed limits are signposted for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.



The speed applicable on an exit is indicated in certain markets by means of an additional sign containing an arrow.

Speed signs linked to this type of additional sign are displayed only if the driver is using the direction indicator.



Some speeds are applicable only after e.g. a specific distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to the situation by means of a symbol for an additional sign under the symbol showing speed.

Display of additional information

A symbol for additional sign in the form of an empty frame under the combined instrument panel's speed symbol means that the RSI has

25 Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

detected an additional sign with supplementary information for the current speed limit.

Setting in MY CAR

There are options for RSI in the **MY CAR** menu system; see MY CAR (p. 109).

Road sign information On/Off

The combined instrument panel's speed symbol display can be disabled. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Speed warning

The driver can opt to receive a warning when the applicable speed limit is exceeded by 5 km/h (5 mph) or more. This warning is given by the symbol showing the applicable maximum speed temporarily flashing when this speed is exceeded. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Sensus Navigation

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation, speed information is read from the navigation unit in the following cases:

- On detecting signs that indirectly indicate a speed limit[26], such as motorway and expressway.
- If a previously detected sign is assumed not to apply any longer, but no new sign has been detected.

Related information

- Road Sign Information (RSI)* (p. 236)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations (p. 240)
- MY CAR (p. 109)

26 Variations may occur in different markets.

Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations

The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed. The function has the following limitations.

The RSI function's camera sensor has limitations just like the human eye - read more about camera sensor limitations (p. 228)).

Signs which indirectly provide information on a prevailing speed limit, e.g. name signs for towns/districts, are not recorded by the RSI function.

Here are several examples of what can disrupt the function:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Concealed or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt.

Related information

- Road Sign Information (RSI)* (p. 236)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - operation (p. 237)

Driver Alert System*

The Driver Alert System is intended to assist drivers whose driving ability is deteriorating or who are inadvertently leaving the lane they are driving on.

The Driver Alert System consists of different functions which can either be switched on at the same time or individually:

- Driver Alert Control - DAC (p. 241).
- Lane Departure Warning - LDW (p. 244).

or

- Lane Keeping Aid - LKA (p. 248)

A switched-on function is set in standby mode and is not activated automatically until speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph).

The function is deactivated again when speed decreases to below 60 km/h (37 mph).

Both functions use a camera which is dependent on the lane having side markings painted on each side.

WARNING

Driver Alert System does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Related information

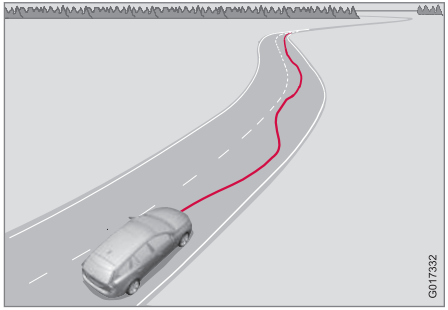
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 241)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)

* Option/accessory.

Driver Alert Control (DAC)*

The DAC function is intended to attract the driver's attention when he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.



A camera detects the side markings painted on the carriageway and compares the section of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements. The driver is alerted if the vehicle does not follow the carriageway evenly.

In some cases driving ability is not affected despite driver fatigue. In which case there may not be any warning issued for the driver. For this reason it is always important to stop and take a break in the event of any signs of driver fatigue, irrespective of whether or not DAC issues a warning.

NOTE

The function must not be used to extend a period of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals, and make sure you are well rested.

Limitation

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

NOTE

The camera sensor has certain limitations (p. 228).

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 240)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation (p. 241)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages (p. 243)

Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation

Settings are made from the centre console display screen and its menu system.

On/Off

The Driver Alert function can be set in standby mode via the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 109):

- Checked box - function activated.
- Unchecked box - the function is deactivated.

Function

Driver Alert is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is above 60 km/h (37 mph).

If the vehicle is being driven erratically, the driver is notified by an acoustic signal plus the text message **Driver Alert Time for a break** - the linked symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel at the same time. The warning is repeated after a time if driving ability does not improve.

The warning symbol can go off:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.

WARNING

An alarm should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

In the event of an alarm or a feeling of tiredness; stop the car in a safe manner as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is equally as dangerous to drive while tired as it is under the influence of alcohol.

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 240)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 241)

* Option/accessory.

Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages

DAC (p. 241) can show symbols and text messages on the combined instrument panel or in the centre console's display screen in different situations.

Here are some examples:

Symbol[A]	Message	Specification
	Driver Alert Time for a break	The vehicle has been driven inconsistently - the driver is alerted by an acoustic warning signal + text.
	Windscreen sensors blocked See manual	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. • Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 228).
	Driver Alert system Service required	The system is disengaged. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[A] Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 240)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 241)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation (p. 241)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)*

The purpose of Lane Departure Warning (Lane Departure Warning) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the vehicle accidentally leaving its own lane in certain situations on motorways and similar major routes.

Lane Departure Warning LDW or LKA

There are two versions of Lane assistance:

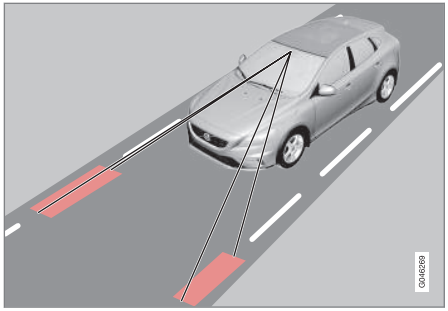
- LDW - **Lane Departure Warning** - alerts the driver with an acoustic signal or vibration in the steering wheel.
- LKA - **Lane Keeping Aid** (Lane Keeping Aid) - steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with an acoustic signal or vibration in the steering wheel.

The car is supplied with one of these two systems - market and engine alternative determine which of the systems the car is equipped with.

In the event of uncertainty whether the car has LDW or LKA:

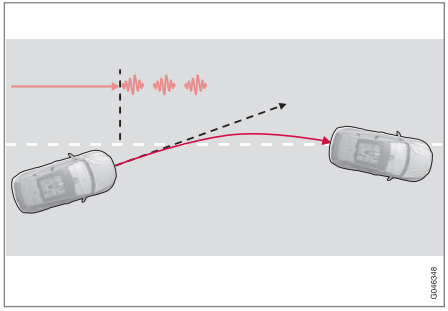
- Open the menu system **MY CAR** and locate **Driver support system** - which specifies **Lane Departure Warning** if the car has LDW or **Lane Keeping Aid** for LKA.

Principle for LDW



(The figure is schematic - not model specific.)

A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.



Warning with steering wheel vibration[27].

If the car crosses one of the side lines the driver is alerted with an acoustic signal or vibration in the steering wheel. Steering wheel vibration varies - the longer the time for which the car has crossed the side line, the longer the vibration.

NOTE

The driver is only warned once each time the wheels cross a line. So there is no acoustic alarm when there is a line between the car's wheels.

WARNING

Lane assistance is merely a driver aid and does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable laws and road traffic regulations are followed.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 245)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation (p. 246)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations (p. 246)

27 The figure shows 3 vibrations when the side line is crossed.

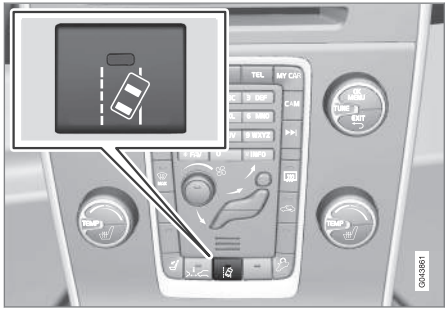
* Option/accessory.

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages (p. 247)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)
- Driver Alert System* (p. 240)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function

Certain settings can be made for the Lane Departure Warning (Lane Departure Warning) function.

Off & On



Press the centre console's button to activate or deactivate the function. The button's lamp illuminates when the function is switched on.

This function is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations.

Personal preferences

Settings are made from the centre console's screen via the menu system in **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

Select from the options:

- **On at startup** - The function is set in standby mode each time the engine is started. Otherwise the same value as when the engine was switched off is obtained.
- **Increased sensitivity** - The sensitivity increases, an alarm is triggered earlier and fewer limitations apply.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Departure Warning) is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations. Here are some examples:

LDW function side lines.

- The LDW symbol has WHITE side lines - the function is active and detects/"sees" one side line, or both.
- The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is active but detects neither left nor right side line.

or

- The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is in standby mode because the speed is below 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The LDW symbol has no side lines - the function is deactivated.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Departure Warning) camera sensor has limitations in a similar way to the human eye.

For more information, read about camera sensor limitations (p. 228).

NOTE

There are some situations where LDW does not give any warning, such as:

- Direction indicators are switched on
- The driver has his/her foot on the brake pedal[28]
- In the event of rapid depression of the accelerator pedal[28]
- In the event of rapid steering wheel movements[28]
- If turning is so sharp that the car rolls.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)

[28] When "**Increased sensitivity**" is selected a warning is still given, see Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 245).

* Option/accessory.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages

In situations where there is no Lane assistance function, a symbol may be shown in the combined instrument panel in combination with an explanatory message - follow the recommendation given if appropriate.

Message examples:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Lane Departure Warning ON/Lane Departure Warning OFF	The function is switched on/off. Shown at switch-on/off. The text disappears after approx. 5 seconds.
	Windscreen sensors blocked See manual	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. • Clean the windscreen in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 228).
	Driver Alert system Service required	The system is disengaged. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)*

The purpose of Lane Departure Warning is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the vehicle accidentally leaving its own lane in certain situations on motorways and similar major routes.

Lane Departure Warning LDW or LKA

There are two versions of Lane assistance:

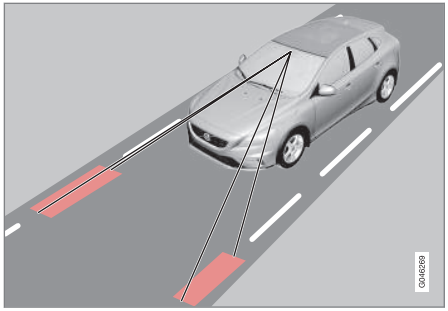
- LDW - **Lane Departure Warning** - alerts the driver with an acoustic signal or vibration in the steering wheel.
- LKA - **Lane Keeping Aid** (Lane Keeping Aid) - steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with an acoustic signal or vibration in the steering wheel.

The car is supplied with one of these two systems - market and engine alternative determine which of the systems the car is equipped with.

In the event of uncertainty whether the car has LDW or LKA:

- Open the menu system **MY CAR** and locate **Driver support system** - which specifies **Lane Departure Warning** if the car has LDW or **Lane Keeping Aid** for LKA.

Principle for LKA



(The figure is schematic - not model specific.)

A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.

If the car is about to cross a side line then Lane Keeping Aid will actively steer the car back into the lane with a slight steering torque in the steering wheel.

If the car reaches or crosses a side line then Lane Keeping Aid will also alert the driver with vibration in the steering wheel.

WARNING

Lane assistance is merely a driver aid and does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable laws and road traffic regulations are followed.

Related information

- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - function (p. 249)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - operation (p. 250)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - limitations (p. 251)
- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - symbols and messages (p. 252)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)
- Driver Alert System* (p. 240)

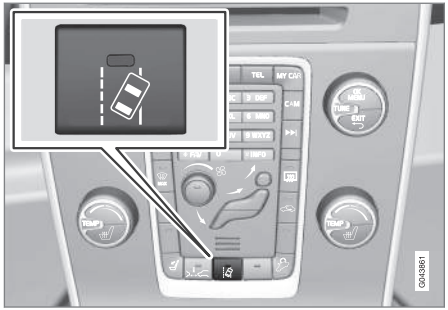
* Option/accessory.

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - function

Certain settings can be made for the Lane Keeping Aid (Lane Keeping Aid) function.

Off & On

Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65-200 km/h (40-125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines. The function is temporarily deactivated on narrow roads with less than 2.6 metres between the lane's side lines.



Press the centre console's button to activate or deactivate the function. The button's lamp illuminates when the function is switched on.

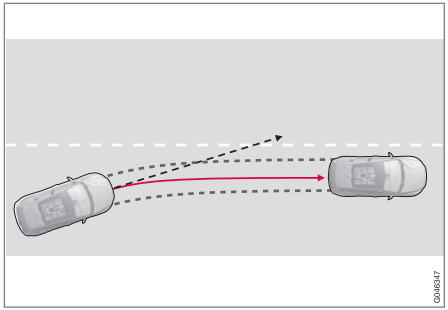
Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for an On/Off button in the centre console - in which case the function is instead handled in the car's menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 109).

In addition, the following selections can be made in **MY CAR**:

- Warning with vibration in the steering wheel: **Vibration only** - On or Off.
- Active steering: **Steering assist only**- On or Off.
- Both Warning with vibration in the steering wheel and Active steering: **Full function** - On or Off.

Active steering

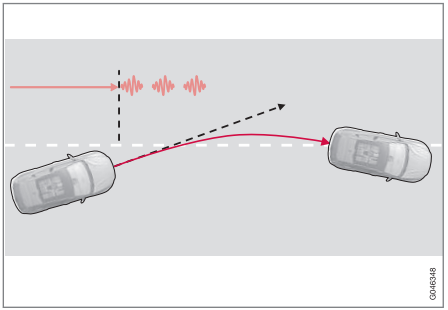
Lane Keeping Aid strives to keep the car within the side lines for the lane.



LKA intervenes and steers away.

If the car approaches the left or right side line of the lane and the direction indicator is not activated, the car is steered back into the lane.

Warning with vibration in steering wheel

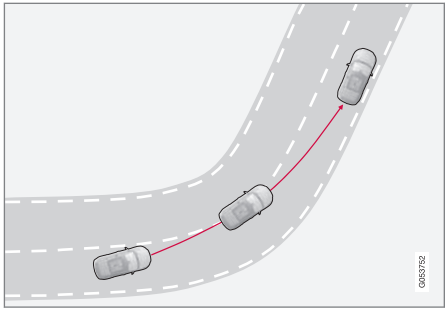


LKA steers and alerts with steering wheel vibration[29].

If the car crosses a side line then Lane Keeping Aid will alert the driver with vibration in the steering wheel[30]. This occurs regardless of whether the car is actively steered back by applying a slight steering torque.

29 The figure shows 3 vibrations when the side line is crossed.
30 Steering wheel vibration varies - the longer the time for which the car has crossed the side line, the more pulses there are.

Dynamic cornering



LKA does not intervene in sharp inside bends.

In certain cases Lane assistance will allow the car to cross lane lines without engaging active steering or activating a warning. Using an adjacent lane for cutting a corner when there is a clear line of vision is an example of this.

Related information

- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - operation

Lane Keeping Aid (Lane Keeping Aid) is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations. Here are some examples:

NOTE

LKA is temporarily deactivated for as long as the direction indicator is switched on.

LKA "sees" and follows the side lines.

If Lane Keeping Aid is active and detects/"sees" the side lines, the LKA symbol indicates this with WHITE lines.

- GREY side line - Lane Keeping Aid does not see a line on that side of the car.

LKA intervenes on the right-hand side.

Lane Keeping Aid intervenes and steers away from the side line - this is indicated with:

- RED line for the side in question.

Related information

- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)

* Option/accessory.

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - limitations

Lane Keeping Aid (Lane Keeping Aid) camera sensor has limitations in a similar way to the human eye.

For more information, read about camera sensor limitations (p. 228) and see Collision warning system* - operation (p. 225).

NOTE

In certain demanding situations Lane assistance may have difficulty assisting the driver in the right way - in which case it is recommended to deactivate the function.

Examples of such situations may be:

- roadworks
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- very sporty driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Lane Keeping Aid to operate, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel. LKA continually monitors this. If hands are not detected on the steering wheel then a text message is shown, prompting the driver to actively steer the car.

If the driver does not follow the request to begin steering then Lane Keeping Aid goes into standby mode and will remain in this mode until the driver begins to steer the car again.

Related information

- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) - symbols and messages

In situations where there is no Lane assistance function, a symbol may be shown in the combined instrument panel in combination with an explanatory message - follow the recommendation given if appropriate.

Message examples:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Windscreen sensors blocked See manual	The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. • Clean the windscreen in front of the camera sensor. Read about the limitations of the camera sensor, see Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 228) and Collision warning system* - operation (p. 225).
	Lane Keeping Aid Service required	The system is disengaged. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Lane Keeping Aid Interrupted	LKA has been set to standby mode. The lines of the LKA symbol indicate when the function is active again.

Related information

- Lane Keeping Aid (LKA)* (p. 248)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 244)

* Option/accessory.

Park Assist*

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

Parking assistance sound level can be adjusted during the ongoing acoustic signal using the centre console's **VOL** knob. The sound level can also be adjusted in the audio settings menu, which is accessed by pressing **SOUND** or in the car's menu system (p. 109) **MY CAR**[31].

Parking assistance is available in two variants:

- Rear only
- Both front and rear.

NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

WARNING

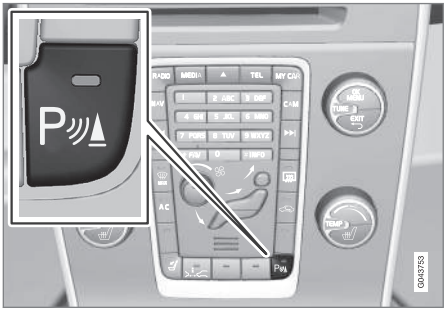
- Parking assistance does not relinquish the driver's own responsibility during parking.
- The sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of e.g. people or animals near the car.

Related information

- Park assist syst* - function (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 255)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 254)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 256)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

Park assist syst* - function

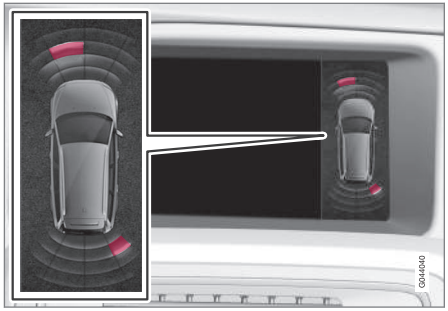
The parking assistance system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch's On/Off lamp is illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.



On/Off for parking assistance and CTA*.

If the car is equipped with CTA (p. 234) the indicator lamps flash for BLIS (p. 232) once, then parking assistance is activated using the button.

31 Depending on the audio and media system.



Display screen view - showing an obstacle left front and right rear.

The centre console's display screen shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacle.

Marked sectors show which of the four sensor(s) detected an obstacle. The closer to the car symbol a selected sector box is, the shorter the distance between the car and a detected obstacle.

The frequency of the signal increases the shorter the distance to an obstacle, in front of or behind the car. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

When the distance is within 30 cm the tone is constant and the active sensor's field nearest the car is filled in. If the detected obstacle is within the distance for the constant tone both behind and in front of the car, then the tone sounds alternately from the loudspeakers.

IMPORTANT

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

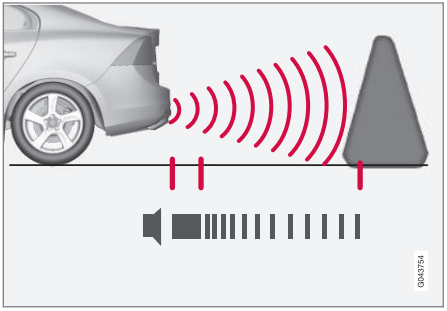
- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 255)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 254)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 256)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

Park assist syst* - backward

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.



The distance covered to the rear of the car is about 1.5 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind comes from one of the rear loudspeakers.

Rear parking assistance is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

When reversing with e.g. a trailer on the towbar, rear parking assistance is switched off automatically - otherwise the sensors would react to the trailer.

* Option/accessory.

NOTE

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

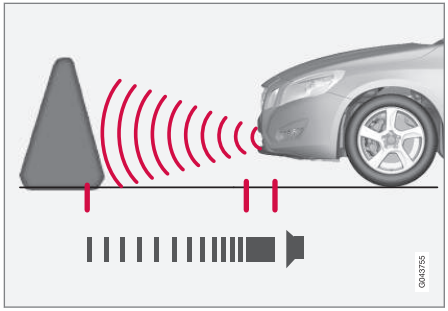
Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 255)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 256)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

Park assist syst* - forward

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's screen indicate distance to detected obstacles.

The parking assistance system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch's On/Off lamp is illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.



The distance covered in front of the car is about 0.8 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles in front comes from one of the front loudspeakers.

The front parking assistance system is active up to 10 km/h (6 mph).

If the Parking Assistance System is deactivated because the car is moving too quickly - 11 km/h (7 mph) or above - the function is reactivated when the speed falls below 10 km/h (6 mph).

NOTE

Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is applied or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 254)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 256)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

Park assist syst* - fault indication

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

If the combined instrument panel's information symbol illuminates with constant glow and the text message **Park Assist System Service required** is shown then parking assistance is disengaged.

IMPORTANT

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources that emit the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

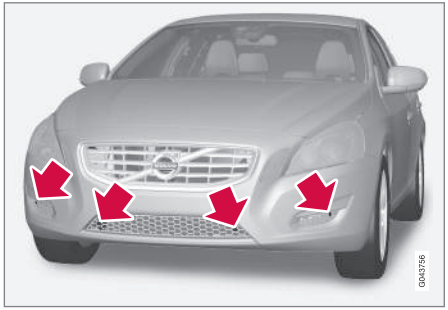
Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 255)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 254)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

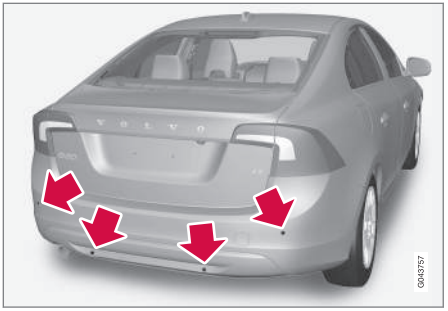
Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

The sensors must be cleaned regularly to ensure that they work properly. Clean them with water and car shampoo.



Sensor location, front.



Sensor location, rear.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 253)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 255)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 254)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 256)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

* Option/accessory.

Park assist camera*

Parking camera is an auxiliary system, which is activated when the reverse gear is selected.

The camera image is shown on the centre console's screen.

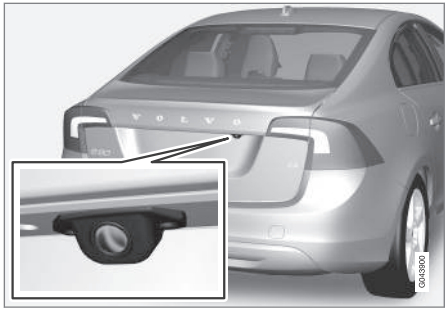
NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

WARNING

- The parking camera serves as an aid. It does not relieve the driver of responsibility when reversing.
- The camera has blind spots, where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of people and animals in the vicinity of the car.

Function and operation



Camera location next to the opening handle.

The camera shows what is behind the car and if something appears from the sides.

The camera shows a wide area behind the car and part of the bumper and any towbar.

Objects on the screen may appear to tilt slightly - this is normal.

NOTE

Objects on the display screen may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

If another view is active then the parking camera system takes over automatically and its camera image is displayed on the screen.

When reverse gear is selected, two unbroken lines are shown graphically which illustrate where the car's rear wheels will roll with the current steering wheel angle - this facilitates parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces and for hitching a trailer. The car's approximate external dimensions are illustrated by means of dashed lines. The park assist lines can be deactivated - see section Settings (p. 259).

If the car is also equipped with Parking assistance sensors (p. 253)* then their information is shown graphically as coloured areas in order to illustrate distances to detected obstacles, see heading "Cars with reversing sensors" later in the text.

The camera is active approx. 5 seconds after reverse gear has been disengaged or until the car's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph) forward or 35 km/h (22 mph) backward.

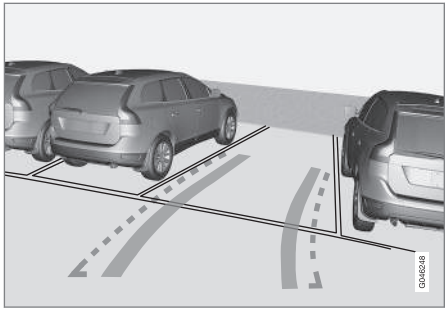
Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in a slightly reduced image quality.

NOTE

Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.

Park assist lines



Examples of how the park assist lines can be displayed for the driver.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and are directly related to steering wheel movement, which shows the driver the path the car will then take - also when the car is turning.

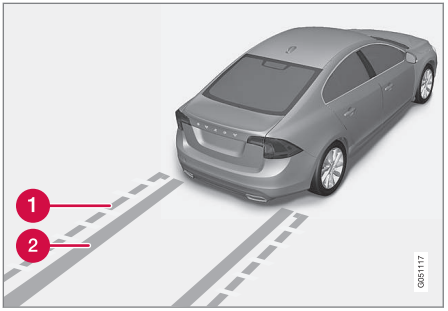
NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the lines on the display show the route the **car** will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- The parking camera is deactivated automatically when towing a trailer if a Volvo genuine trailer cable is used.

IMPORTANT

Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.

Boundary lines



The system's different lines.

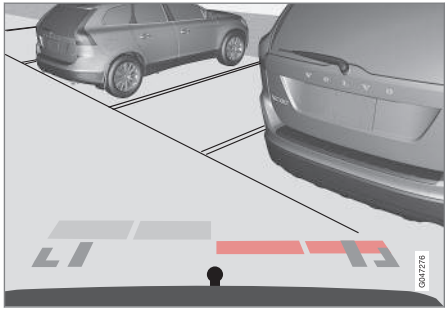
1 Boundary line, free reversing zone

2 "Wheel tracks"

The dashed line (1) frames in a zone up to about 1.5 m back from the bumper. It is also the limit of the car's most protruding parts, such as door mirrors and corners - also when the car is turning.

The wide "wheel tracks" (2) between the side lines indicate where the wheels will roll and can extend about 3.2 m back from the bumper if no obstacle is in the way.

Cars with reversing sensors*



Coloured fields (one per sensor) show distance.

If the car is also equipped with Parking assistance (p. 253) the distance is shown with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

The colour of the areas changes with decreasing distance to the obstacle - from light yellow to yellow, via orange to red.

Colour / paint	Distance (metres)
Light yellow	0.7–1.5
Yellow	0.5–0.7
Orange	0.3–0.5
Red	0–0.3

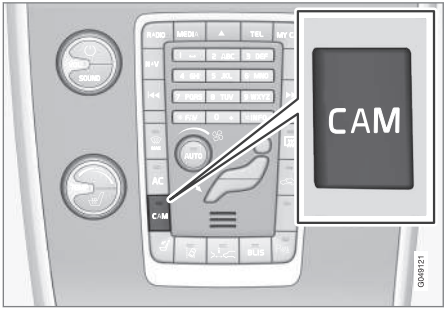
Related information

- Park assist camera - settings (p. 259)
- Park assist camera - limitations (p. 260)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)

Park assist camera - settings

Activate switched-off camera

The camera starts automatically when reverse gear is selected, but it can also be activated manually as follows:



- Press **CAM** - the screen shows the current camera view.

Change setting

The settings for the parking camera can be changed when the screen shows a camera view:

1. Press **OK/MENU** when a camera view is shown - the screenchanges to a menu with various options.
2. Turn to reach the desired option with **TUNE**.
3. Highlight the option by pressing **OK/MENU** once and go back out with **EXIT**.

Towbar

The camera can be used to advantage when hitching a trailer. A park assist line for the towbar's intended "trajectory" toward the trailer can be shown on the screen - exactly as for the "wheel tracks".

A choice can be made between showing the "wheel tracks" or the towbar's trajectory - both options cannot be shown simultaneously.

1. Press **OK/MENU** when a camera view is shown.
2. Turn to reach the **Tow bar trajectory guide line** option with **TUNE**.
3. Highlight the option by pressing **OK/MENU** once and go back out with **EXIT**.

Zoom

If precise manoeuvring is required then the camera view can be zoomed in:

- Press **CAM** or turn **TUNE** - repeated press/turn changes back to the normal view.

If more options are available, they are in a loop - press/turn until the desired camera view is shown.

Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 257)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)

Park assist camera - limitations

NOTE

A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera's view.

To bear in mind

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, it could be a relatively large sector that is hidden from view. Obstacles could thereby go undetected until they are very close to the car.

- Keep the camera lens free from dirt, ice and snow.
- Clean the camera lens regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - take care not to scratch the lens.

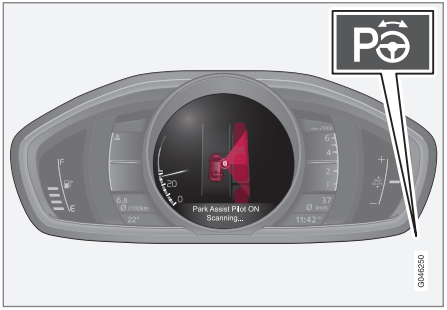
Related information

- Park assist camera* (p. 257)
- Park assist camera - settings (p. 259)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)*

The Park Assist Pilot (PAP – Park Assist Pilot) helps the driver to park by first checking whether a space is sufficiently large and then turning the steering wheel and steering the car into the space.

The combined instrument panel uses symbols, graphics and text for when the different steps are to be carried out.



The On/Off button is on located the centre console.

NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

* Option/accessory.

WARNING

PAP does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always has the final responsibility for driving the car in a safe manner and for paying attention to the surroundings and other road users approaching or passing while parking.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - symbols and messages (p. 265)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - operation (p. 262)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - function (p. 261)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - limitations (p. 264)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - function

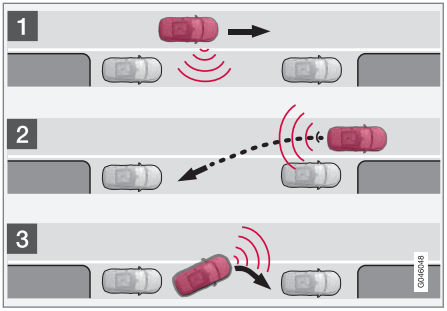
NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and steers the car - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the combined instrument panel
- change gear (reverse/forward)
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

PAP can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- The functions ABS[32] or ESC[33] must not intervene when the PAP function is activated - these can be activated in the event of e.g. steep and slippery surfaces, see the sections on Foot brake and Stability system ESC (p. 183) for more information.
- A trailer must not be connected to the car.
- Speed must be lower than 50 km/h (30 mph).



Principle for PAP.

The PAP function parks the car using the following steps:

1. The function searches for a parking space and measures it - during measurement, speed must not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph).
2. The car is steered into the space during reversing.
3. The car is positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)

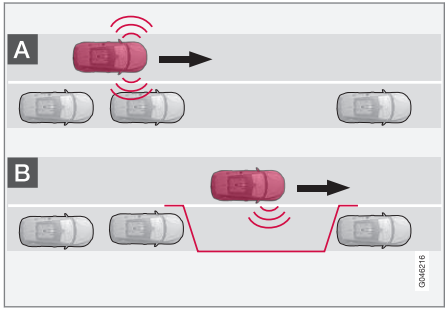
32 (Anti-lock Braking System) - Anti-lock braking system.
33 (Electronic Stability Control) - Stability system.

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - operation

NOTE

Remember that certain steering wheel positions may obstruct the combined instrument panel's instructions when you turn it during the parking manoeuvre.

1 - Searching and checking measurements



NOTE

The PAP function measures the space and steers the car - the driver's task is to:

- keep a close watch around the car
- follow the instructions in the combined instrument panel
- change gear (reverse/forward)
- control and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

NOTE

The distance between the car and parking spaces should be 0.5-1.5 metres while PAP is searching for a parking space.

The PAP function searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough. Proceed as follows:

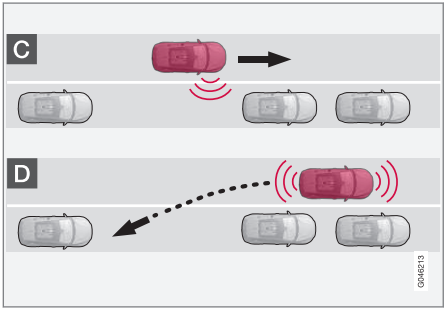
1. Activate PAP by pressing this button and do not drive faster than 30 km/h (20 mph).
2. Keep an eye on the combined instrument panel and be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and text so request.
3. Stop the car when the graphics and text so request.

NOTE

PAP searches the area for parking, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator to the driver's side - then the system searches for a parking space on that side of the car instead.

2 - Reversing in



During the Reversing step, PAP will steer the car into the parking space. Proceed as follows:

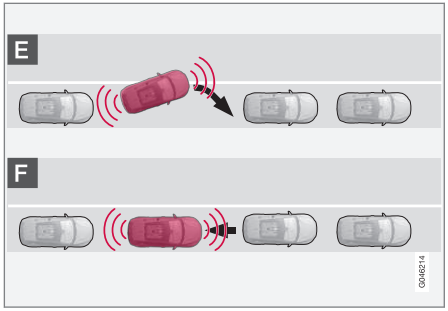
* Option/accessory.

1. Check that the area behind the car is clear, then engage reverse gear.
2. Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than 7 km/h (4 mph).
3. Keep an eye on the combined instrument panel and be prepared to stop the car when the graphics and text so request.

NOTE

- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the PAP function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve optimum results - wait until the steering wheel is fully turned before starting to drive backward/forward.

3 - Positioning



When the car has reversed into the parking space, it must be straightened up and positioned.

1. Engage first gear or **D** position, wait until the steering wheel has been turned, then drive slowly forwards.
2. Stop the car when the graphics and text message so request.
3. Engage reverse gear and drive backwards slowly until the graphics and text message tell you to stop.

The function is deactivated automatically and the graphics and message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the positioning. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

IMPORTANT

The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by PAP compared with when Park Assist uses the sensors.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - symbols and messages (p. 265)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - function (p. 261)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - limitations (p. 264)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - limitations

The PAP sequence is stopped:

- if the car is driven too quickly - above 7 km/h (4 mph)
- if the driver touches the steering wheel
- if the ABS[34] or ESC[35] function is engaged - e.g. if a wheel loses grip on a slippery road surface.

A text message indicates where the PAP sequence was stopped.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

IMPORTANT

Under certain circumstances, PAP is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

To bear in mind

The driver should bear in mind that the Park Assist Pilot is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to intervene. There are also a few details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:

- PAP starts out from the current location of the parked vehicles - if they are inappropriately parked then the car's tyres and wheel rims may be damaged against kerbs.
- PAP is designed for parking on straight streets, not sharp curves or bends. For this reason, make sure the car is parallel to the parking space when PAP measures the space.
- It is not always possible to find parking spaces on narrow streets since there is not enough space for manoeuvring. In such parking situations, it helps the system to drive as close to the side of the road as possible where you intend to park.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic while being parked.
- Objects situated higher than the detection areas of the sensors are not included when calculations are made for the parking manoeuvre. This may cause PAP to swing into the parking space too early, and hence such parking spaces should be avoided.
- The driver is responsible for determining whether the space selected by PAP is suitable for parking.
- Use approved tyres[36] with the correct tyre pressure - this affects PAP's ability to park the car.
- Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
- Do not use PAP if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.
- Do not use PAP if loaded objects are protruding from the car.

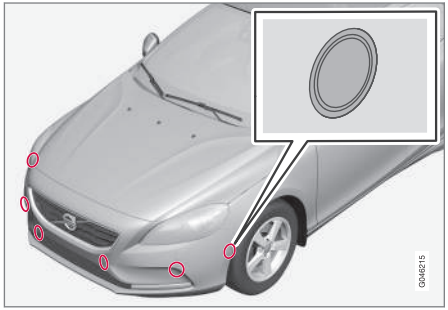
34 (Anti-lock Braking System) - Anti-lock braking system.
35 (Electronic Stability Control) - Electronic stability control.
36 "Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those fitted new on delivery from the factory.

* Option/accessory.

IMPORTANT

Changing to another approved wheel rim and/or tyre dimension may involve a changed tyre circumference, which means that the PAP system's parameters may then need to be updated. Consult a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance



The PAP sensors are located in the bumpers[37] - 6 front and 4 rear.

For the PAP function to work correctly, its sensors must be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 256)

Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - symbols and messages

The combined instrument panel uses symbols, graphics and text for when the different steps are to be carried out.

The combined instrument panel may display different combinations of symbols and text with varying meaning - sometimes with self-explanatory advice on appropriate action.

If a message indicates that PAP is inoperative then contact with an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - operation (p. 262)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - function (p. 261)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* - limitations (p. 264)
- Park Assist* (p. 253)
- Park assist camera* (p. 257)
- Park Assist Pilot (PAP)* (p. 260)

37 NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the engine

The engine is started and switched off using the remote control key and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted. and **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

IMPORTANT

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - hold the end with the detachable key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 161).

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and press it in to its end position.
2. Hold the clutch pedal fully depressed[1]. (For cars with automatic gearbox - Depress the brake pedal.)
3. Press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button and then release it.

When the engine is started the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers.

IMPORTANT

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch after starting the engine or when the car is being towed.

WARNING

Always remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when leaving the car, and make sure that the key position is **0** - in particular if there are children in the car. For information on how this works - see Key positions (p. 77).

NOTE

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

Keyless starting (Keyless drive)*

Follow steps 2-3 for keyless (p. 165) starting of the engine.

NOTE

A prerequisite for the engine to start is that one of the car's remote control keys with the keyless start and lock function is in the passenger compartment or cargo area.

WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the car while driving or during towing.

Related information

- Switching off the engine (p. 269)

[1] If the car is moving then it is enough to press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to start the engine.

* Option/accessory.

Switching off the engine

The engine is switched off using the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

To stop the engine:

- Press **START/STOP ENGINE** - the engine stops.

If the gear selector is not in **P** position or if the car is moving:

- Press twice on **START/STOP ENGINE** or hold the button depressed until the engine stops.

Related information

- Key positions (p. 77)

Steering lock

The steering lock makes steering difficult if the car is e.g. taken unlawfully. A mechanical noise may be noticed when the steering lock unlocks or locks.

Function

- The steering lock is activated when the driver's door is opened after the engine has been switched off.
- The steering lock is deactivated when the remote control key is in the ignition switch[2] and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button is depressed.

Related information

- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Key positions (p. 77)
- Steering wheel (p. 83)

Remote start (ERS)*

Remote start (ERS – Engine Remote Start) means that the car's engine can be started remotely in order to be able to warm up/cool down the passenger compartment before departure. Remote start is activated via key and/or via Volvo On Call*.

The climate control system starts on automatic settings. A remote-started engine is activated for a maximum of 15 minutes, then it is switched off. After two activations of remote start, the engine must be started in the normal way before remote start can be used again.

Engine remote start is only available in cars with automatic gearbox and cars that have a bonnet switch[3] installed.

NOTE

The service life of the remote control key's battery is affected by the remote start function. In the event of frequent use of remote start, the battery should therefore be changed once per year, see Remote control key - replacing the battery (p. 164).

2 In cars with keyless start and lock system it is enough to have a remote control key inside the passenger compartment.
3 Available in the XC60, cars with alarm, most cars with 4-cylinder engines or if ERS is selected for new construction.

NOTE

Follow local/national rules/regulations on idling. Also take into account the local/national rules/regulations regarding the noise level when the engine is running.

WARNING

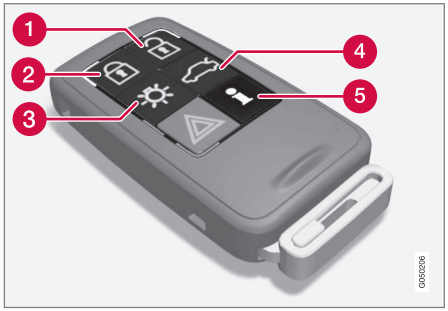
To remote-start the engine, the following criteria must be met:

- The car must be supervised.
- There must be no people or animals inside or around the car.
- The car must not be parked in a closed, unventilated area - the exhaust gases may seriously injure humans and animals.

Related information

- Remote start (ERS) - operation (p. 270)
- Remote start (ERS) - symbols and messages (p. 271)

Remote start (ERS) - operation



The key's buttons for remote start.

1. Unlocking
2. Locking
3. Approach lighting
4. Unlocking, boot lid
5. Information[4]

Remote starting the engine

To be able to remotely start the engine the car must be locked and the bonnet closed.

Proceed as follows:

1. Briefly press on the key's button (2).
2. Follow this immediately afterwards with a long press - at least 2 seconds - on button (3).

If the conditions for remote start are fulfilled then the following takes place:

1. The direction indicators flash quickly several times.
2. The engine starts.
3. The direction indicators illuminate with a constant glow for 3 seconds to verify that the engine has started.

NOTE

After remote starting, the car continues to be locked but with deactivated movement detector*.

With PCC[5] key

The light indication for Approach lighting[6] flashes a few times when the button is pressed and then changes over to constant glow if all criteria for remote start have been fulfilled. However, this does not mean that remote start has started the engine.

[4] Only on PCC key, see Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions (p. 159).
[5] For more information on the PCC key, see Remote control key with PCC* - unique functions (p. 159).
[6] For more information on Approach lighting, see Remote control key - functions (p. 158) and Approach lighting (p. 96).

* Option/accessory.

To check whether remote start has started the engine, the user can press the button (5) - if the engine has started, there is a light indication by the buttons (2) and (3).

Active functions

The following functions are activated with a remote started engine:

- Climate control system
- Audio/video system
- Approach lighting.

Deactivated functions

The following functions are deactivated with a remote started engine:

- Headlamps
- Position lamps
- Number plate lighting
- Windscreen wiper.

Remote start is stopped

The following steps switch off a remote-started engine:

- The remote control key's button (1), (2) or (4) is depressed
- The car is unlocked
- A door is opened
- Accelerator pedal or brake pedal is depressed
- The gear selector is moved out of **P** position
- Active remote start time exceeds 15 minutes.

When a remote-started engine is switched off, the direction indicators illuminate with a constant glow for 3 seconds.

Related information

- Remote start (ERS)* (p. 269)
- Remote start (ERS) - symbols and messages (p. 271)

Remote start (ERS) - symbols and messages

In situations where the ERS function fails or is interrupted, a symbol is shown in the combined instrument panel, supplemented by an explanatory text message.

ERS function unavailable

Message	Specification
No remote start Too many tries	ERS unavailable because a maximum of 2 ERS activations in succession are allowed.
No remote start Low fuel level	ERS unavailable because fuel level too low.
No remote start Gear not in P	ERS unavailable because gear selector is not in **P** position.
No remote start Driver in car	ERS unavailable because someone is in the passenger compartment.
No remote start Low battery	ERS unavailable due to low battery voltage. Charge the battery by starting the engine.

Message	Specification
No remote start Engine warning	ERS unavailable due to warning message from engine. Contact a workshop[A].
Remote start off Engine coolant level low	ERS unavailable due to error message from cooling system, see Coolant - level (p. 366).
No remote start Door open	ERS unavailable because a door/boot lid was not closed.
No remote start Bonnet open	ERS did not activate because the bonnet was not closed.
No remote start Car not locked	ERS unavailable because the car was not locked.
No remote star Key in car	ERS did not activate because the key was in the car.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Interrupted ERS function

Message	Specification
Remote start off Gear not in P	ERS interrupted because gear selector is not in **P** position.
Remote start off Driver in car	ERS interrupted because someone is in the passenger compartment.
Remote start off Engine warning	ERS interrupted due to error message from engine. Contact a workshop[A].
Remote start off Engine coolant level low	ERS interrupted due to error message from cooling system.
Remote start off Bonnet open	ERS interrupted because the bonnet is open.
Remote start off Low battery	ERS interrupted since the battery voltage is too low.
Remote start off Low fuel level	ERS interrupted since the fuel level is too low.

A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

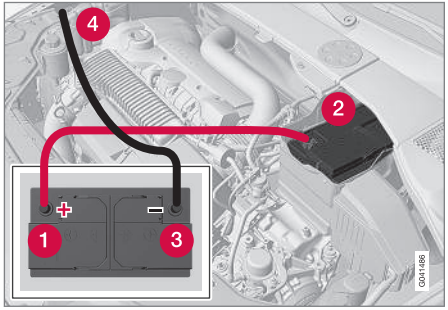
Related information

- Remote start (ERS)* (p. 269)
- Remote start (ERS) - operation (p. 270)

* Option/accessory.

Jump starting with another battery

If the starter battery (p. 380) is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.



When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in key position **0**, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the clips on the front cover of the battery in your car and remove the cover, see Starter battery - replacement (p. 382).
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive terminal (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the other clamp to a grounding point, e.g. right-hand engine mounting at the top, the outer screw head (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.
    > Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

Related information

- Starting the engine (p. 268)

Gearboxes

There are two main types of gearbox. Manual gearbox and automatic gearbox.

- Manual gearbox (p. 274)
- Automatic gearbox, Geartronic (p. 276)

IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel in conjunction with a text message being shown. Follow the recommendation given in the text message.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276)

Manual gearbox

The function of the gearbox is to change the gear ratio depending on speed and power requirements.

Gearing pattern.

The manual gearbox has 6 gears, the shifting pattern is imprinted on the gear lever.

- Depress the clutch pedal fully during each gear change.
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal between gear changes.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.

* Option/accessory.

Reverse gear inhibitor

The reverse gear inhibitor hinders the possibility of mistakenly attempting to engage reverse gear during normal forward travel.

- Follow the gearing pattern printed on the gear lever and start from neutral position, **N** before moving it to **R** position.
- Engage reverse gear only when the car is stationary.

Related information

- Gearboxes (p. 274)
- Transmission fluid - grade and volume (p. 423)

Gear shift indicator*

The gear shift indicator notifies the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear.

An essential detail in connection with environmental driving is to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.

An indicator is available as an aid on certain variants - GSI (Gear Shift Indicator) - which notifies the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear in order to obtain the lowest possible fuel consumption.

However, taking into consideration characteristics such as performance and vibration-free running, it may be advantageous to change gear at a higher engine speed. The framed number indicates the current gear.

Manual gearbox

Gear shift indicator for manual gearbox. Only one marker is illuminated at a time - during normal driving it is only illuminated in the centre.

At the recommended upshift the cursor illuminates "**+**", and at the recommended downshift the cursor illuminates "**-**" (marked red in the illustration).

Automatic gearbox

Combined instrument panel "Digital" with gear shift indicator.

The framed number indicates the current gear.

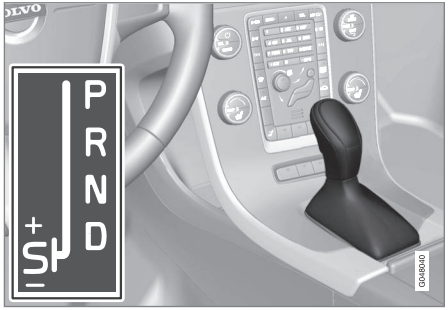
With "Analogue" combined instrument panel, the gear positions and indicator arrows are displayed in its centre.

Related information

- Manual gearbox (p. 274)
- Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276)

Automatic gearbox - Geartronic*

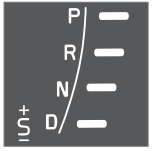
The Geartronic gearbox has two different gear modes - Automatic and Manual.



D: Automatic gear positions. **+/–**: Manual gear positions. **S**: Sport mode*.

Combined instrument panel (p. 62) shows the position of the gear selector using the following indications: **P**, **R**, **N**, **D**, **S***, **1**, **2**, **3** etc.

Gear positions



Automatic gear positions are indicated on the right of the combined instrument panel. (Only one marker is illuminated at a time - the one showing the current gear selector position.)

Symbol "**S**" for Sport mode is ORANGE when the mode is active.

Parking position - P

Select **P** position when starting the engine or when the car is parked.

In order to be able to move the gear selector from the **P** position, the brake pedal must be depressed and key position must be **II**, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the **P** position is engaged. Also apply the parking brake (p. 295) when the car is parked.

NOTE

The gear selector must be in **P** position to allow the car to be locked and alarmed.

IMPORTANT

The car must be stationary when position **P** is selected.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

Reverse position - R

The car must be stationary when **R** position is selected.

Neutral position - N

No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in **N** position.

In order to be able to move the gear selector from **N** to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and key position must be **II**, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Drive position - D

D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be stationary when the gear selector is moved to **D** position from **R** position.

Geartronic – Manual gear positions (+S-)

The driver can also change gear manually using the Geartronic automatic gearbox. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

The manual gear position is reached by moving the lever to the side from position **D** to the end position at "**+S-**". The combined instrument panel's symbol "**+S-**" changes colour from WHITE to ORANGE and the digits **1**, **2**, **3** etc. are shown in a box, corresponding to the gear selected at the time.

- Move the lever forwards towards "**+**" (plus) to change up a gear and release the lever,

* Option/accessory.

which returns to its rest position between **+** and **–**.

or

- Pull the lever back towards "**–**" (minus) to change down a gear and release it.

The manual gearshift mode "**+S–**" can be selected at any time while driving.

Geartronic automatically shifts down if the driver allows the speed to decrease lower than a level suitable for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

To return to automatic driving mode:

- Move the lever to the side to the end position at **D**.

NOTE

If the gearbox has a Sport programme then the gearbox will only become manual after the gear selector has been moved forwards or backwards in its "**+S–**" position. The combined instrument panel then changes indication from **S** to show which of the gears **1**, **2**, **3** etc. is engaged.

Paddles*

As a supplement to manual gear changing with the gear selector there are also controls located on the steering wheel, so-called "paddles".

To be able to change gear with the steering wheel paddles they must first be activated. This is by means of pulling one of the paddles toward the steering wheel - the combined instrument panel then changes indication from "**D**" to a figure, which indicates the current gear.

To then change gear one step:

- Pull one of the paddles backwards - towards the steering wheel - and release.

Both steering wheel "paddles".

1 "**-**": Selects the next lower gear.

2 "**+**": Selects the next higher gear.

A gear change occurs at each pull of the paddle provided that the engine speed does not leave the permitted range.

After each gear change the combined instrument panel changes figure to show the current gear.

NOTE

Automatic deactivation

If the steering wheel paddles are not used then they are deactivated after a short time - this is indicated when the combined instrument panel switches indication, from the figure for the current gear back to "**D**".

The exception is during engine braking - then the paddles are activated as long as engine braking is in progress.

Manual deactivation

The steering wheel paddle shifters can also be deactivated manually:

- Pull both paddles toward the steering wheel and hold until the combined instrument panel changes character from the figure for the current gear to "**D**".

The paddles can also be used with the gear selector in Sport mode* - then the paddles are constantly activated without being deactivated.

Geartronic - Sport mode* (S)[7]

The Sport programme provides sportier characteristics and allows higher engine speed for the gears. At the same time it responds more quickly to acceleration. During active driving, the use of a lower gear is prioritised, leading to a delayed upshift.

To activate Sport mode:

- Move the gear selector to the side from **D** position to the end position at "**+S–**" - the combined instrument panel changes indication from **D** to **S**.

Sport mode can be selected at any time while driving.

Geartronic - Winter mode

It can be easier to pull away on slippery roads if 3rd gear is engaged manually.

1. Depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector from **D** position to the end position at "**+S–**" - the combined instrument panel changes indication from **D** to the figure **1**[8].
2. Scroll up to gear 3 by pushing the lever forward towards "**+**" (plus) twice - the display shifts the indication from **1** to **3**.
3. Release the brake and accelerate carefully.

The gearbox "winter mode" means that the car moves off with a lower engine speed and reduced engine power on the drive wheels.

Kick-down

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

Safety function

To prevent over-revving the engine, the transmission's control program has a protective downshift inhibitor, which prevents the kick-down function.

Geartronic does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

When kick-down is activated the car can change one or more gears at a time depending on engine speed. The car changes up when the engine reaches its maximum speed in order to prevent damage to the engine.

Towing

If the car has to be towed - see important information in the section Towing (p. 316).

Related information

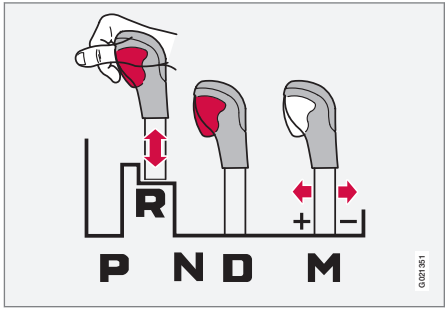
- Transmission fluid - grade and volume (p. 423)
- Gearboxes (p. 274)

[7] With certain engines only.
[8] If the car has Sport mode* then "**S**" is shown first.

Gear selector inhibitor

There are two different types of gear selector inhibitor - mechanical and automatic.

Mechanical gear selector inhibitor



M: Manual shifting[9] - "**+/-**" or "Sport mode".

The gear selector can be moved forward and back freely between **N** and **D**. Other positions are locked with a latch that is released with the inhibitor button on the gear selector.

With the inhibitor button depressed the lever can be moved forwards or backwards between **P**, **R**, **N** and **D**.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gearbox has special safety systems:

Parking position (P)

Stationary car with engine running:

- Keep your foot on the brake pedal when moving the gear selector to another position.

Electric gear inhibitor – Shiftlock Parking position (P)

In order to be able to move the gear selector from **P** to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the key position (p. 77) must be **II**.

Shiftlock – Neutral (N)

If the gear selector is in **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

In order to be able to move the gear selector from the **N** position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the key position (p. 77) must be **II**.

Deactivate automatic gear selector inhibitor

If the car cannot be driven, e.g. due to a flat starter battery, the gear selector must be moved from the **P** position so that the car can be moved.

1. Lift the rubber mat in the compartment behind the centre console and locate a hole[10] for the key blade (p. 161) in the bottom of the compartment.
2. Search for a spring-loaded button down in the hole with the key blade; depress the button with the blade and hold.
3. Move the gear selector from the **P** position and pull up the key blade.
4. Set the rubber mat back in place.

9 The illustration is schematic.
10 There may be 2 holes - one for the key blade and one that fixes the rubber mat.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276)

Hill start assist (HSA)*[11]

The foot brake can be released before setting off or reversing uphill - the HSA (Hill Start Assist) function means that the car does not roll backwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver accelerates.

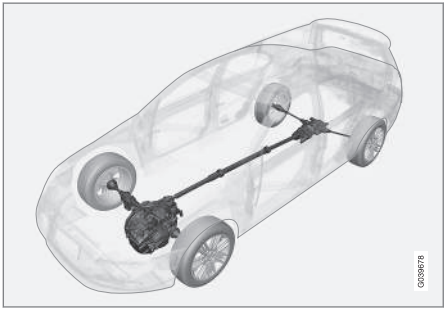
Related information

- Starting the engine (p. 268)

All-wheel drive - (AWD)*

Optimal traction is achieved with all-wheel drive.

All Wheel Drive is always available



All Wheel Drive (All Wheel Drive) means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time.

The power is automatically distributed between the front and rear wheels. An electronically controlled clutch system distributes the power to the wheels that have the best grip on the current road surface. This provides the best traction and prevents wheel spin. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels.

All Wheel Drive improves driving safety in rain, snow and icy conditions.

11 Depends on engine and gearbox combination. HSA not possible with some combinations.

Related information

- Hill Descent Control (HDC)* (p. 281)

Hill Descent Control (HDC)*[12]

HDC can be compared to an automatic engine brake. When you release the accelerator on downhill gradients the car is normally braked by means of the engine striving for low engine idling speeds, so-called engine braking. But the steeper the roadway and the more load in the car, the faster the car coasts despite engine braking - the HDC function compensates for this with automatic brake intervention.

General information on HDC

HDC makes it possible to increase/reduce speed on steep downhill gradients, with a foot only on the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake. The sensitivity of the accelerator pedal decreases and becomes more precise by means of the full actuation of the pedal being restricted to adjusting engine speed within a limited range. The brake system brakes itself and provides the car with a low and even speed, so allowing the driver to fully focus on steering.

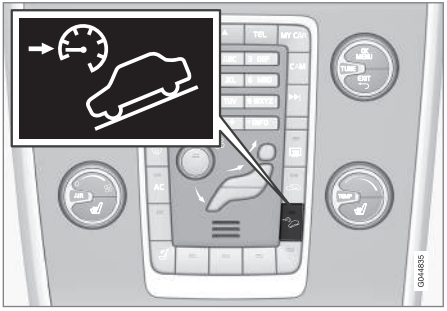
HDC is particularly helpful on steep gradients with an uneven road surface and slippery sections. E.g. when launching a boat on a trailer from a ramp.

WARNING

HDC does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Function



HDC On/Off.

HDC is activated or deactivated with one of the centre console's switches. The lamp within it illuminates when the function is activated.

When HDC is operating, the combined instrument panel's symbol illuminates combined with the text message **Hill descent control ON**.

12 Only possible on the S60 Cross Country with AWD.

With manual transmission, the function works only on first gear and reverse gear.

With automatic transmission, gear **1** must be selected in manual gearshift mode (+S-), or **R** must be selected. This is indicated by the number **1** or **R** in the combined instrument panel, see Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276).

> **NOTE**
>
> HDC cannot be activated on an automatic gearbox when the gear selector is in position **D**.

Operation

HDC allows the car to roll at a maximum of 10 km/h (6 mph) forwards with engine braking and 7 km/h (4 mph) backwards. However, any speed within the gear's speed register can be selected using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the car is braked quickly to 10 or 7 km/h (6 or 4 mph) respectively, irrespective of the hill's gradient and without the need for the foot brake.

The brake lights come on automatically when the function is operating. The driver can brake or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

HDC is deactivated:

- with the centre console's On/Off button
- if a gear other than **1** or **R** is selected on a manual gearbox
- if a gear other than **1** or **R** is selected in manual gearshift mode on an automatic gearbox.

The function can be disengaged at any time. If it takes place on a steep downhill gradient then the braking effect will not release directly, but slowly instead.

> **NOTE**
>
> With HDC activated you may experience a delay between acceleration pedal activation and engine response.

Related information

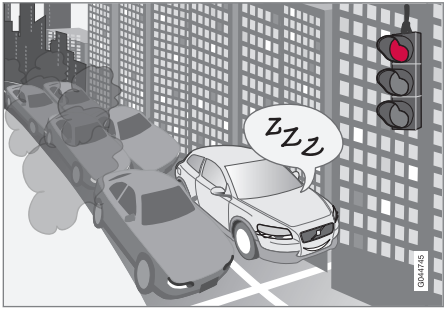
- All-wheel drive - (AWD)* (p. 280)
- Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276)
- Manual gearbox (p. 274)

Start/Stop*

Some engine and gearbox combinations come fitted with a Start/Stop function which engages in the event of e.g. stationary traffic or waiting at traffic lights - the engine is then switched off temporarily and restarts automatically when the journey is due to continue.

Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation's core values and it influences all of our operations. This target orientation has resulted in several separate energy-saving functions of which Start/Stop is one, all with the collective task of reducing fuel consumption, which in turn helps to reduce exhaust emissions.

General information on Start/Stop



The engine is switched off - it becomes quieter and cleaner.

The Start/Stop function gives the driver the opportunity for a more active environmentally

* Option/accessory.

conscious way of driving the car by means of being able to allow the engine to stop automatically, whenever appropriate.

The car's MY CAR menu system, under the **DRIVe** heading, contains information about Volvo's Start/Stop system, as well as recommendations for energy-saving driving techniques.

Manual gearbox or automatic gearbox
Note that there are differences in the Start/Stop function depending on whether the gearbox is manual or automatic.

Related information

- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)
- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - function and operation

The Start/Stop function is activated automatically when the engine is started with the key.

The Start/Stop function is activated automatically when the engine is started with the key. The driver is made aware of this by the function's symbol illuminating in the combined instrument panel and the On/Off button lamp illuminating.

All of the car's normal systems such as lighting, radio, etc. work as normal even with an engine that has stopped automatically, except that some equipment may have the function temporarily reduced, e.g. the climate control system's fan speed or extremely high volume on the audio system.

Auto-stopping the engine

The following is required for the engine to auto-stop:

Conditions	M/A[A]
Declutch, set the gear lever in neutral position and release the clutch pedal - the engine stops automatically.	M
Stop the car with the foot brake and then keep your foot on the pedal - the engine stops automatically.	A

[A] M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

If the ECO function is activated then the engine may auto-stop before the car is completely stationary.

For certain engine variants the engine may auto-stop before the car is stationary regardless of whether the ECO function is activated.

When the engine is auto-stopped, the combined instrument panel's symbol for the Start/Stop function illuminates.

Auto-starting the engine

Conditions	M/A[A]
With the gear lever in neutral position: 1. Depress the clutch pedal or press the accelerator pedal - the engine starts. 2. Engage a suitable gear and drive.	M
Release the foot pressure on the foot brake - the engine starts automatically and the journey can continue.	A
Maintain foot pressure on the foot brake and depress the accelerator pedal - the engine auto-starts.	A
The following option is also available on a downhill gradient: Release the foot brake and let the car move off - the engine starts automatically when the speed exceeds normal walking pace.	M + A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

Deactivating the Start/Stop function

In certain situations, it may advisable to temporarily switch off the automatic Start/Stop function - this is carried out with a push of this button.

Disengaged function is indicated by the combined instrument panel's Start/Stop symbol and the On/Off button's lamp extinguishing.

The Start/Stop function is disengaged until it is reactivated with the button or until the next time the engine is started with the key.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)
- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop

Although the Start/Stop function is activated, the engine does not always stop automatically.

The engine does not auto-stop if:

Conditions	M/A[A]
the car has not first achieved approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) after a key start or the last auto-stop.	M + A
the driver has opened the seatbelt's buckle.	M + A
the capacity of the starter battery is below the minimum permissible level.	M + A
the engine does not have normal operating temperature.	M + A
ambient temperature is around freezing point or above approx. 30 °C.	M + A
the windscreen's electric heating is activated.	M + A
the environment in the passenger compartment differs from the preset values - indicated by the ventilation fan running at a high speed.	M + A
the car is reversed.	M + A

* Option/accessory.

Conditions	M/A[A]
the starter battery temperature is below the freezing point or is too high.	M + A
the driver makes greater steering wheel movements.	M + A
the exhaust system's particulate filter is full - the temporarily disengaged Start/Stop function is reactivated as soon as an automatic cleaning cycle has been performed (see Diesel particle filter (DPF) (p. 306)).	M + A
the road is very steep.	M + A
a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.	M + A
the bonnet has been opened[B].	M + A
the gearbox does not have normal operating temperature.	A
the atmospheric air pressure is less than equivalent to 1500-2500 metres above sea level - the current air pressure varies with the prevailing weather conditions.	A

Conditions	M/A[A]
adaptive cruise control Queue Assist is activated.	A
the gear selector is in **R**, **S** position[C] or "**+/-**".	A

A M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.
B With certain engines only.
C Sport mode.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts

An auto-stopped engine may restart in certain cases without the driver having decided that the journey should continue.

In the following cases the engine also starts automatically if the driver has not depressed the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or takes his/her foot off the brake pedal (automatic gearbox):

Conditions	M/A[A]
Misting forms on the windows.	M + A
The environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the preset values.	M + A
There is a temporarily high current take-off or starter battery capacity drops below the lowest permissible level.	M + A
Repeated pumping of the brake pedal.	M + A
The bonnet is opened[B].	M + A
The car starts to roll, or there is a small increase in speed if the car auto-stopped without being completely stationary.	M + A

Conditions	M/A[A]
The driver's seatbelt buckle is opened with the gear selector in **D** or **N** position.	A
Steering wheel movements[B].	A
The gear selector is moved out of the **D** position to **S** position[C], **R** or "**+/-**".	A
The driver's door is opened with the gear selector in **D** position - a "ping" sound and text message inform that the Start/Stop function is active.	A

[A] M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.
[B] With certain engines only.
[C] Sport mode.

WARNING

Do not open the bonnet when the engine has stopped automatically - the engine may suddenly start automatically. First switch off the engine as normal using the **START/STOP ENGINE** button before opening the bonnet.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)
- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start

The engine does not always auto-start after having auto-stopped.

In the following cases the engine does not auto-start after having auto-stopped:

Conditions	M/A[A]
A gear is engaged without declutching - a display text prompts the driver to set the gear lever in neutral position in order to enable auto-start.	M
The driver is unrestrained.	M
The driver is unrestrained, the gear selector is in **P** position and the driver's door is open - a normal engine start must take place.	A

[A] M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)

* Option/accessory.

- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox

If a start-up fails and the engine stops, proceed in accordance with the below:

1. Check that the driver side's seatbelt is locked in the seatbelt buckle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal again - the engine starts automatically.
3. In certain cases the gear lever must be set in neutral position. The combined instrument panel then shows the text **Put gear in neutral**.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)
- Start/Stop* - symbols and messages (p. 288)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Start/Stop* - symbols and messages

The Start/Stop function can show text messages in the combined instrument panel.

Text message

In combination with this indicator lamp the Start/Stop function may show text messages in the combined instrument panel for certain situations. For some of them there is a recommended action that should be performed. The following table shows some examples.

Symbol	Message	Info/Action	M/A[A]
	Auto Start/Stop Service required	Start/Stop is not operational. Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.	M + A
	Autostart Engine running + acoustic signal	Activated if the driver's door is opened with auto-stopped engine and the gear selector in **D** position.	A
	Press start button	The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.	M + A
	Depress clutch pedal to start	The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the clutch pedal to be depressed.	M
	Depress brake and clutch pedals to start	The engine is ready to auto-start - waiting for the brake or clutch pedal to be depressed.	M
	Put gear in neutral to start	Gear is engaged without declutching - disengage and set the gear lever in neutral position.	M

* Option/accessory.

Symbol	Message	Info/Action	M/A[A]
	Select P or N to start	Start/Stop has been deactivated - move the gear selector to **N** or **P** position and start the engine as normal with the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.	A
	Press start button	The engine will not start automatically - start the engine as normal with the **START/STOP ENGINE** button and the gear selector in **P** or **N**.	A

[A] M = Manual gearbox, A = Automatic gearbox.

If a message does not go out following completion of the action then a workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Start/Stop* (p. 282)
- Start/Stop* - function and operation (p. 283)
- Starting the engine (p. 268)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not auto-start (p. 286)
- Start/Stop* - the engine auto-starts (p. 285)
- Start/Stop* - the engine does not stop (p. 284)
- Start/Stop* - involuntary stop manual gearbox (p. 287)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

Drive mode ECO*

ECO is an innovative Volvo function for automatic-gearbox cars, capable of reducing fuel consumption by up to 5 %, depending on the driver's driving style. The function gives the driver the option of a more active environmentally conscious way of driving.

General

The following are changed upon activation of the ECO function:

- Gearbox gearshift points.
- Engine management and response from the accelerator pedal.
- Start/Stop function - the engine can also auto-stop before the car has stopped down to being completely stationary.
- The Eco Coast function is activated - engine braking ceases.
- Climate control system settings - some electricity consumers are deactivated or operate at reduced power.

> **NOTE**
>
> When the ECO function is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only restored by deactivating the ECO function.

ECO - Operation

1 ECO On/Off

2 ECO symbol

The ECO function is deactivated when the engine is switched off, and must therefore be activated after each time the engine is started. There are exceptions for certain engines. However, it is easily verified by means of both the combined instrument panel **ECO** symbol and the ECO button lamp illuminating when the function is activated.

ECO function On or Off

Disengaged ECO function is indicated by the combined instrument panel **ECO** symbol and the ECO button lamp extinguishing. The function is then switched off until it is reactivated with the ECO button.

Eco Coast - Function

The Eco Coast subfunction means in practice that engine braking is deactivated, meaning in turn that the car's kinetic energy is used to coast for longer distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal the gearbox is automatically disengaged from the engine whose speed is reduced to idling speed with minimum consumption.

This function is intended for use in the event of an anticipated reduction in speed, e.g. to coast into a zone with a lower speed limit.

Eco Coast enables proactive driving where the driver can use the so-called "Pulse & Glide" technique and a minimum of braking.

A combination of Eco Coast and temporarily deactivated ECO function can also collectively contribute to reduced consumption. Accordingly:

* Option/accessory.

- Active Eco Coast: Long coasting **without** engine braking = Low consumption

and

- Deactivated ECO function: Short coasting **with** engine braking = Minimum consumption.

> **NOTE**
>
> However, to achieve optimal low fuel consumption, Eco Coast in combination with short coasting distances should generally be avoided.

Activating Eco Coast

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released, in combination with the following parameters:

- **ECO** button activated
- Gear selector in **D** position
- Speed within the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph)
- The road's downhill gradient is not steeper than approx. 6%.

Deactivate Eco Coast

In certain situations it may be desirable to deactivate the Eco Coast function. Examples of such situations include:

- on steep downhill gradients - to be able to use engine braking.
- before an imminent overtaking manoeuvre - in order to be able to complete it in the safest possible way.

Deactivating Eco Coast and returning to engine braking can be performed as follows:

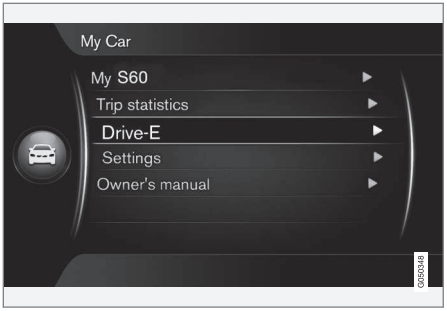
- Press the **ECO** button.
- Move the gear lever to manual "**S+/-**" position.
- Change gear with the steering wheel paddle shifters.
- Actuate the accelerator or brake pedal.

Eco Coast - Limitations

The function is not available if:

- cruise control is activated
- the road's downhill gradient is steeper than approx. 6%
- manual gear changing is performed with the steering wheel paddle shifters*
- engine and/or gearbox are not at normal operating temperature
- the gear selector is moved from **D**- to "**S+/-**" position
- speed is outside the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph)

More information and settings



The car's menu system **MY CAR** contains further information on the ECO concept - see the section MY CAR (p. 109).

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 120)

Foot brake

The foot brake is used to reduce the car's speed while driving.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits for safety reasons. If a brake circuit is damaged then the brake pedal will engage deeper and a higher pressure on the pedal is needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

WARNING

The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the foot brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

For cars with the Hill start assist (HSA)* (p. 280)* function, the pedal returns more slowly than usual to normal position if the car is parked on a gradient or on an uneven surface.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up.

For more general information on heavy loads on the car, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419).

Braking on wet roads

When driving for a long time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes. This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake harder. For this reason, maintain a greater distance to the traffic ahead.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads and after a car wash. The brake discs are then warmed up, dry more quickly and are protected against corrosion. Take the prevailing traffic situation into account when braking.

Braking on salted roads

When driving on salted roads a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings. This may extend braking distance. For this reason, keep an extra-large safety distance to the vehicle ahead. Also make sure of the following:

- Brake occasionally to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal when driving is finished and before the next journey starts.

Maintenance

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

New and replaced brake linings and brake discs do not provide optimal braking effect until they have been "worn in" a few hundred kilometres. Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Specification
	Constant glow – Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started - automatic function check.

WARNING

If and illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake system.

If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

Related information

- Parking brake (p. 295)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 294)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 294)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 293)

Foot brake - anti-lock braking system

The anti-lock braking system, ABS (Anti-lock Braking System), prevents the wheels from locking up during braking.

The function allows the steering ability to be maintained, and it is easier to swerve to avoid a hazard for example. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the engine has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the ABS system may be made at low speed. The test may be experienced as pulses in the brake pedal.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 292)
- Parking brake (p. 295)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 294)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 294)

Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking. The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

Emergency brake lights are activated at speeds above 50 km/h (31 mph) in the event of heavy braking. After the car's speed has been slowed down to below 10 km/h (6 mph) the brake light returns from flashing to the normal constant glow - while at the same time the car's hazard warning lights (p. 93) are activated. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the hazard warning lights.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 292)
- Parking brake (p. 295)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 294)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 293)

Foot brake - emergency brake assistance

Emergency brake assistance EBA (Emergency Brake Assist) helps to increase the braking force and so reduce the braking distance.

EBA detects the driver's braking style and increases the braking force when necessary. The brake force can be reinforced up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The EBA function is interrupted when the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

NOTE

When EBA is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary. If the brake pedal is released then all braking ceases.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 292)
- Parking brake (p. 295)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 294)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 293)

Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

Function

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-controlled parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is applied then it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is applied when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

Low battery voltage

If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can neither be released nor applied. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low, see Jump starting with another battery (p. 273).

Applying the parking brake

Parking brake control - apply.

1. Depress the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Press the parking brake control.
   > The combined instrument panel's symbol starts flashing - once there is a constant glow the parking brake is applied.
3. Release the foot brake pedal and make sure that the car is at a standstill position.

When parking the vehicle, always engage 1st gear (for manual gearbox) or put the gear selector in position **P** (for automatic gearbox).

Emergency brake

In an emergency the parking brake can be applied when the vehicle is in motion by pressing and holding the parking brake control. The braking procedure is stopped when the control is released.

NOTE

An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Parking on a hill

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear, or in **P** if it has automatic transmission, is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

Disengaging the parking brake

Parking brake control - release.

Cars with manual gearbox

Releasing manually

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch[13].
2. Depress the foot brake pedal firmly.
3. Apply the parking brake control.
   > The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

> **NOTE**
>
> The parking brake can also be released manually by depressing the clutch pedal instead of the brake pedal. Volvo recommends that the brake pedal is used.

Releasing automatically

1. Start the engine.
2. Engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
3. Ease up the clutch and depress the accelerator.
   > The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Cars with automatic gearbox

Releasing manually

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch[13].
2. Depress the foot brake pedal firmly.
3. Pull the control.
   > The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Releasing automatically

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Start the engine.
3. Depress the foot brake pedal firmly.
4. Move the gear selector to position **D** or **R** and depress the accelerator.
   > The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

> **NOTE**
>
> For safety reasons, the parking brake is only released automatically if the engine is running and the driver is wearing a seatbelt. The parking brake is released immediately on cars with automatic gearbox when the accelerator pedal is depressed and the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by depressing the control while driving off. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

[13] For cars with keyless start and lock system: Press **START/STOP ENGINE**.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electric parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols and messages

For information on how the combined instrument panel's text messages can be shown and deleted, see Messages - handling (p. 109).

Symbol	Message	Meaning/Action
(P)!	"Message"	• Read the combined instrument panel's message.
Ⓟ		A flashing symbol indicates that the parking brake is applied. If the symbol flashes in any other situation then this means that a fault has arisen. • Read the combined instrument panel's message.
	Handbrake not fully released	A fault is preventing the parking brake from being released: • Try to apply and release the brake. If the fault persists after a few attempts: • Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Note: A warning signal sounds if the journey is continued with this error message.

Symbol	Message	Meaning/Action
	Handbrake not applied	A fault is preventing the parking brake from being applied: ● Try to release and apply the brake. If the fault persists after a few attempts: ● Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The message is also illuminated on cars with manual gearbox when the car is driven at low speed with the door open in order to alert the driver that the parking brake may have been unintentionally disengaged.
	Handbrake Service required	A fault has arisen: ● Try to apply and release the brake. If the fault persists after a few attempts: ● Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If the car has to be parked before a possible fault has been rectified, then the wheels must be turned as if parking on a hill and 1st gear engaged (manual gearbox) or the gear selector must be in position **P** (automatic gearbox).

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 292)

Driving in water

Driving in water means that the car is driven through deep water on a water-covered roadway. Fording must be carried out with great caution.

The car can be driven through water at a maximum depth of 25 cm (30 cm with S60 Cross Country) at a maximum speed of walking pace. Extra caution must be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- If necessary, clean the contacts for the electric heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.

IMPORTANT

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In depths greater than 25 cm (30 cm with S60 Cross Country), water could enter the transmission. This reduces the lubricating ability of the oils and shortens the service life of these systems.

Damage to any component, engine, transmission, turbocharger, differential or its internal components caused by flooding, hydrostatic locking or oil shortage, is not covered by the warranty.

In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

Related information

- Recovery (p. 318)
- Towing (p. 316)

Overheating

Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

For information about overheating when driving with a trailer, see Driving with a trailer* (p. 309).

- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system is too high then a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel's information display and a text message **High engine temperature Stop safely** is shown there - stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes in order to cool down.
- If the text message **High engine temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant level low Stop safely** is shown then the engine must be switched off after stopping the car.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox a built-in protection function is activated which, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol in the combined instrument panel, and its display shows the text message **Transmission hot Reduce speed** or **Transmission hot Stop safely Wait for cooling** - follow the recommendation given and lower the speed and stop the car in a

safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for a few minutes in order to allow the gearbox to cool down.

- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Driving with open tailgate/boot lid

When driving with the boot lid open, toxic exhaust fumes can be sucked into the car through the cargo area.

WARNING

Do not drive with the boot lid open. Toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

Related information

- Loading (p. 148)

Overload - starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the starter battery (p. 380) to varying degrees. Avoid using the key position **II** (p. 77) when the car is switched off. Instead use position **I** - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the car is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low then the combined instrument panel's information display shows the text **Low battery charge Power save mode**. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

– In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the car and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

Before a long journey

Before a long journey, it makes good sense to go through the following points:

- Check that the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption (p. 428) is normal.
- Make sure that there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid).
- Check all bulbs and tyre tread depths.
- Carrying a warning triangle (p. 333) is a legal requirement in certain countries.

Related information

- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364)
- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 329)
- Lamp replacement - general (p. 369)

Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks in order to ensure that the car can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant (p. 366) must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost erosion down to approximately −35 °C. To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold. For more information on suitable oils, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419).

IMPORTANT

Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid (p. 379) to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

NOTE

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Slippery driving conditions

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

Related information

- Winter driving (p. 301)

Fuel filler flap - Opening/closing

The fuel filler flap can be opened/closed as follows:

Opening/closing the fuel filler flap

Open the fuel filler flap using the button on the lighting panel - the flap opens when the button is released.

In the combined instrument panel's display the arrow on the symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel cap is located.

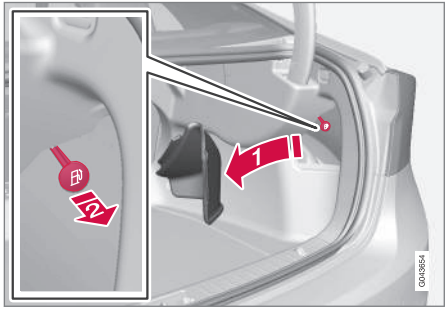
- Close the fuel filler flap by pressing it in until a click confirms that it is closed.

Related information

- Filling up with fuel (p. 302)

Fuel filler flap - manual opening

The fuel filler flap can be opened manually when electric opening from the passenger compartment is not possible.



1. Open/remove the side hatch in the cargo area (same side as fuel filler flap) and locate the green cord with handle.
2. Pull the cord gently straight back until the fuel filler flap folds out with a "click".

IMPORTANT

Pull the wire gently - minimal force is required to disengage the hatch lock.

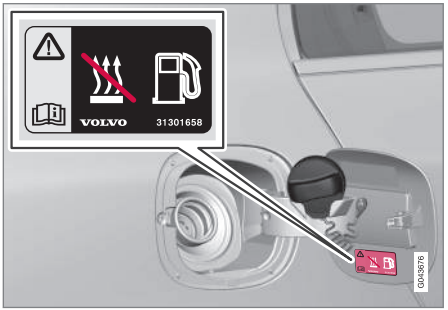
Related information

- Filling up with fuel (p. 302)

Filling up with fuel

Important things to consider when refuelling.

Opening/closing the fuel cap



The fuel filler cap can be attached onto the flap.

A certain overpressure may arise in the tank in the event of high outside temperatures. Open the cap slowly.

- After refuelling - refit the cap and turn it until one or more clicking sounds are heard.

Filling up with fuel

1. Choose fuel that is approved for use in the car in accordance with the identifier[14] on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

   See information on approved fuels in the respective section on petrol (p. 304) and diesel (p. 305).

2. Do not overfill the tank but stop refuelling when the pump nozzle cuts out the first time.

NOTE

Overfilled fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

Filling with a fuel can[15]

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

Make sure you insert the funnel's pipe firmly into the filler pipe. The filler pipe has an openable cover and the funnel's pipe must be slid past the cover before filling can begin.

Related information

- Fuel filler flap - manual opening (p. 302)
- Fuel - handling (p. 303)

Fuel - handling

Fuel of a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo must not be used as engine power and fuel consumption is negatively affected.

WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

IMPORTANT

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

Related information

- Fuel - diesel (p. 305)
- Diesel particle filter (DPF) (p. 306)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 425)

14 The identifier, in accordance with the CEN standard prEN16942, is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will soon (within two years) be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe.
15 Only applies to a car with diesel engine.

Fuel - petrol

Petrol is a type of engine fuel that is intended for cars with a petrol engine.

Only use petrol from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. The petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard.

Identifier for petrol

The identifier[16] is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will soon (within two years) be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe.

These are the identifiers that apply for current standard fuels in Europe. Petrol with the following identifiers may be used in cars with petrol engine:

E5 is a petrol with maximum 2.7 % oxygen and maximum 5 volume % ethanol.

E10 is a petrol with maximum 3.7 % oxygen and maximum 10 volume % ethanol.

IMPORTANT

- Fuel that contains up to 10 percent by volume ethanol is permitted.
- EN 228 E10 petrol (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is approved for use.
- Ethanol higher than E10 (max. 10 percent by volume ethanol) is not permitted, e.g. E85 is not permitted.

Octane rating

- 95 RON can be used for normal driving.
- 98 RON is recommended for optimum performance and minimum fuel consumption.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C, fuel with the highest possible octane rating is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

IMPORTANT

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Fuel containing metallic additives must not be used.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 303)
- Economical driving (p. 308)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 425)

16 In accordance with CEN standard prEN16942.

Fuel - diesel

Diesel is a type of engine fuel that is intended for cars with a diesel engine.

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. Diesel fuel must fulfil the EN 590 or SS 155435 standard. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur and metals.

Identifier

The identifier[17] is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will soon (within two years) be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe.

This is the identifier that applies for current standard fuel in Europe. Diesel with the following identifiers may be used in cars with diesel engine:

B7 is **diesel** with maximum 7 volume % fatty acid methyl ester (FAME).

At low temperatures (lower than 0 °C) a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to ignition problems. The fuel qualities that are sold must be adapted for season and climate zone, but in the event of extreme weather conditions, old fuel or moving between climate zones, paraffin precipitate may occur.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled. When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

IMPORTANT

Diesel fuel must:

- fulfil the EN 590 and/or SS 155435 standards
- have a sulphur content not exceeding 10 mg/kg
- have a maximum of 7 vol % FAME[18] (B7).

IMPORTANT

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:

- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME[19] and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

Empty tank

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check. Do this before starting the engine, once the fuel tank has been filled with diesel:

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and push it in to the end position. For more information, see Key positions (p. 77).
2. Press the **START** button **without** depressing the brake and/or clutch pedal.
3. Wait approx. one minute.
4. To start the engine: Depress the brake and/or clutch pedal and then press the **START** button again.

17 CEN standard prEN16942.
18 Fatty Acid Methyl Ester
19 Diesel fuel with maximum 7 vol % FAME (B7) is permitted.

NOTE

Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.

Draining condensation from the fuel filter[20]

The fuel filter separates condensation from the fuel. Condensation can disrupt engine operation.

For optimum performance, it is important to follow the service intervals for fuel filter change as well as to use genuine parts developed specifically for this purpose.

The fuel filter must be drained at the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet or if you suspect that the car has been filled with contaminated fuel. For more information, see Volvo service programme (p. 356).

IMPORTANT

Certain special additives remove the water separation in the fuel filter.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 303)
- Diesel particle filter (DPF) (p. 306)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)

Diesel particle filter (DPF)

Diesel cars are equipped with a particle filter, which results in more efficient emission control.

The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving. So-called "regeneration" is started in order to burn away the particles and empty the filter. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature.

Regeneration of the particle filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. It may take a little longer at a low average speed. Fuel consumption may increase slightly during regeneration.

Regeneration in cold weather

If the car is frequently driven short distances in cold weather then the engine does not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not emptied.

When the filter has become approx. 80% full of particles, a yellow warning triangle is shown in the combined instrument panel, and the message **Soot filter full See manual** is shown in its information display.

Start regeneration of the filter by driving the car until the engine reaches normal operating temperature, preferably on a main road or motorway.

20 Applicable to five-cylinder engines only.

The car should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.

NOTE

The following may arise during regeneration:

- a smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily
- fuel consumption may increase temporarily
- a smell of burning may arise.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Use the parking heater* in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.

IMPORTANT

If the filter is completely filled with particles, it may be difficult to start the engine and the filter is non-functional. Then there is a risk that the filter will need to be replaced.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 303)
- Fuel - diesel (p. 305)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 425)

Catalytic converters

The purpose of the catalytic converters is to purify exhaust gases. They are located close to the engine so that operating temperature is reached quickly.

The catalytic converters consist of a monolith (ceramic or metal) with channels. The channel walls are lined with a thin layer of platinum/rhodium/palladium. These metals act as catalysts, i.e. they participate in and accelerate a chemical reaction without being used up themselves.

Lambda-sond™ oxygen sensor

The Lambda-sond is part of a control system intended to reduce emissions and improve fuel economy. For more information, see Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428).

An oxygen sensor monitors the oxygen content of the exhaust gases leaving the engine. This value is fed into an electronic system that continuously controls the injectors. The ratio of fuel to air directed to the engine is continuously adjusted. These adjustments create optimal conditions for efficient combustion, and together with the three-way catalytic converter reduce harmful emissions (hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide and nitrous oxides).

Related information

- Fuel - petrol (p. 304)
- Fuel - diesel (p. 305)

Economical driving

Drive economically and eco-consciously by driving smoothly, thinking ahead, and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- Use the ECO Guide* which indicates how fuel-efficiently the car is being driven, see Eco guide & Power guide* (p. 66).
- For lower fuel consumption, activate Drive mode ECO[21].
- Use the Eco Coast[22] freewheel function - engine braking will cease and the car's kinetic energy can be used to freewheel for longer distances.
- Drive in the highest gear possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption. Use the gear indicator (p. 275)[23].
- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects to minimise braking.
- High speed results in increased fuel consumption - the wind resistance increases with speed.
- Do not run the engine to operating temperature at idling speed, but rather drive with a normal load right after starting - a cold engine consumes more fuel than a warm one.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436).
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a dealer.
- Do not use winter tyres when the winter season is over.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the fuel consumption.
- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and space box increase air resistance, leading to higher consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Avoid driving with open windows.

For information about Volvo Car Corporation's environmental philosophy, see Environmental philosophy (p. 22).

For more information about fuel consumption, see Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428).

WARNING

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 303)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 425)

21 Applies to automatic gearbox.
22 See "Drive mode ECO".
23 Applies to manual gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

Driving with a trailer*

When driving with a trailer there are a number of important points to think about regarding e.g. the towing bracket, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information, see Weights (p. 414).

If the towing bracket is mounted by Volvo, then the car is delivered with the necessary equipment for driving with a trailer.

- The car's towing bracket must be of an approved type.
- If the towbar is retrofitted, check with your Volvo dealer that the car is fully equipped for driving with a trailer.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towing bracket complies with the specified maximum towball load.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load. For information on the tyre pressure, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436).
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km.
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear and adjust your speed.
- For safety reasons, the maximum permitted speed for the car when coupled with a trailer should not be exceeded. Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

Trailer cable

An adapter is required if the car's towing bracket has 13 pin electrics and the trailer has 7 pin electrics. Use an adapter cable approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If any of the trailer's lamps for direction indicators are broken, then the combined instrument panel's symbol for direction indicators flashes faster than normal and the information display shows the text **Trailer indicator malfunction**.

If any of the trailer's lamps for the brake light are broken then the **Trailer brake light malfunction** text is shown.

Level control*

The rear shock absorbers maintain a constant height irrespective of the car's load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

Trailer weights

For information on Volvo's permitted trailer weights, see Towing capacity and towball load (p. 415).

NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer* - manual gearbox (p. 310)
- Driving with a trailer* - automatic gearbox (p. 310)
- Towing bracket/Towbar* (p. 311)
- Lamp replacement - general (p. 369)

Driving with a trailer* - manual gearbox

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

Overheating

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

- Do not run the engine at higher revolutions than 4500 rpm (diesel engines: 3500 rpm) - otherwise the oil temperature may become too high.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)

Driving with a trailer* - automatic gearbox

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

- An automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.
- In the event of overheating a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel with a message that is shown in the information display - follow the recommendation given.

Steep inclines

- Do not lock the automatic transmission in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine revolutions.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Move the gear selector to position **P**.
4. Release the foot brake.

- Move the gear selector to park position **P** when parking an automatic car with a hitched trailer. Always use the parking brake.
- Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

* Option/accessory.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
2. Move the gear selector to driving position **D**.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the foot brake and start driving off.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox - Geartronic* (p. 276)

Towing bracket/Towbar*

A towing bracket means that it is possible to e.g. tow a trailer behind the car.

If the car is equipped with a detachable/removable towbar, the installation instructions for the loose section must be followed carefully, see Detachable towbar* - attachment/removal (p. 313).

WARNING

If the car is fitted with a Volvo detachable towbar:

- Follow the installation instructions carefully.
- The detachable section must be locked with the key before setting off.
- Check that the indicator window shows green.

Important checks

- The towbar's towball must be cleaned and greased regularly.

NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

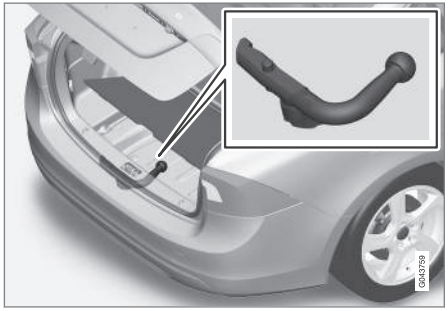
This also applies when fitting a bicycle rack that is clamped in around the towball.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)

Detachable towbar* - storage

Store the detachable towbar in the cargo area.



Towbar storage space.

IMPORTANT

Always remove the towbar after use and store it in the appointed location in the car.

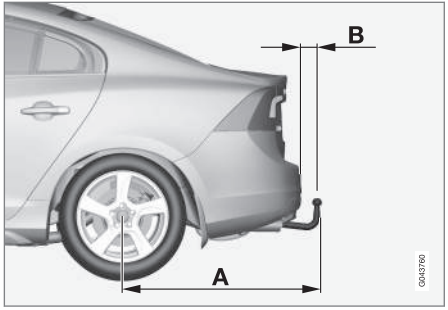
Related information

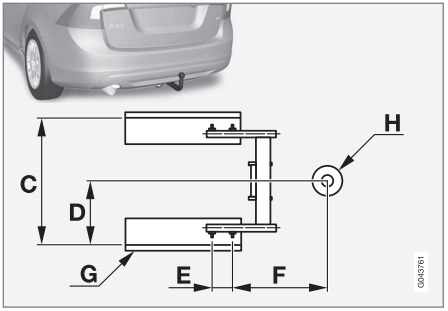
- Detachable towbar* - specifications (p. 312)
- Detachable towbar* - attachment/removal (p. 313)
- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)

Detachable towbar* - specifications

Specifications for detachable towbar.

Specifications





Dimensions, mounting points (mm)	
A	998
B	81
C	854
D	427
E	109
F	282
G	Side member
H	Ball centre

* Option/accessory.

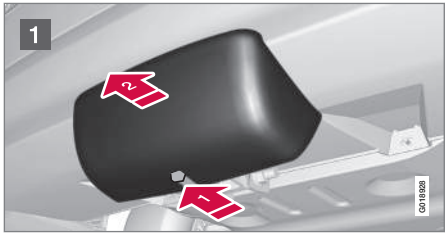
Related information

- Detachable towbar* - attachment/removal (p. 313)
- Detachable towbar* - storage (p. 312)
- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)

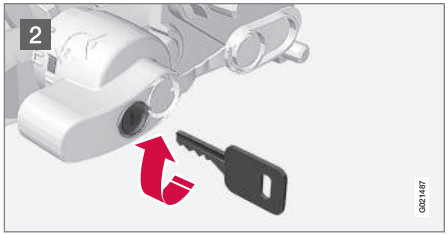
Detachable towbar* - attachment/removal

The attachment/removal of the detachable towbar is performed in the following way:

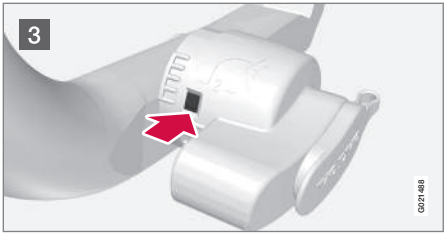
Attaching



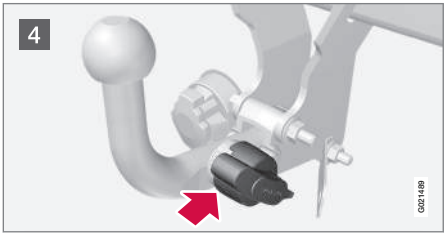
1 Remove the protective cover by first pressing in the catch 1 and then pulling the cover straight back 2.



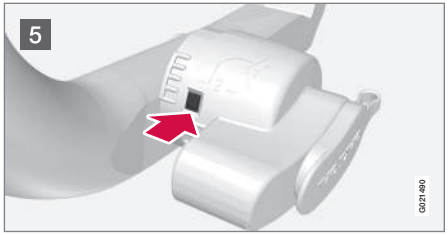
2 Ensure that the mechanism is in the unlocked position by turning the key clockwise.



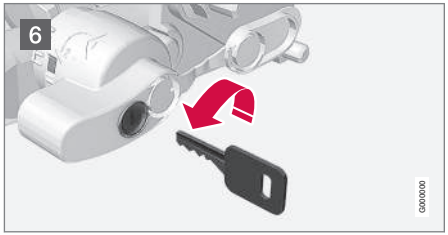
3 The indicator window must show red.



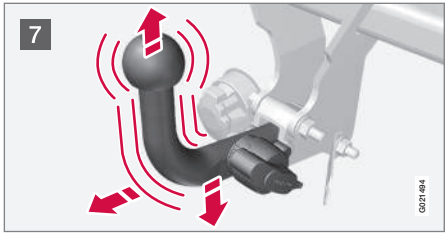
4 Insert the towbar until you hear a click.



5 The indicator window must show green.



6 Turn the key anticlockwise to locked position. Remove the key from the lock.



7 Check that the towbar is secure by pulling it up, down and back.

WARNING

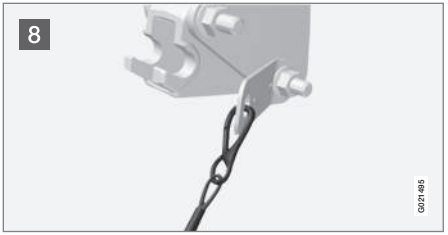
If the towbar is not fitted correctly then it must be detached and reattached in accordance with the previous instructions.

IMPORTANT

Only grease in the ball for the towing hitch, the remainder of the towbar should be clean and dry.

NOTE

When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

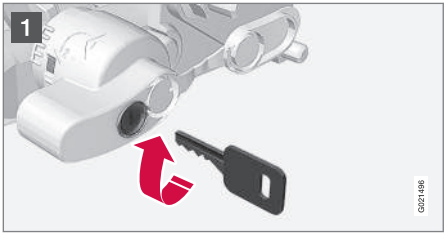


8 Safety cable.

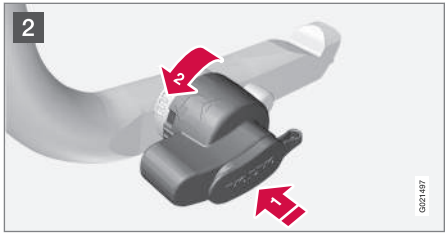
WARNING

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

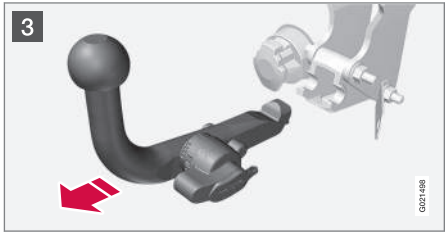
Removing the towbar



1 Insert the key and turn it clockwise to the unlocked position.



2 Push in the locking wheel 1 and turn it anticlockwise 2 until you hear a click.



3 Turn the locking wheel down fully, until it comes to a stop. Hold it in this position while pulling the towbar rearward and upward.

WARNING

Secure the towbar safely if it is stored in the car, see Detachable towbar* - storage (p. 312).

4 Push the protective cover until it snaps tight.

Related information

- Detachable towbar* - storage (p. 312)
- Detachable towbar* - specifications (p. 312)
- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)

Trailer Stability Assist - TSA[24]

The trailer stability assist TSA (Trailer Stability Assist) function is designed to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake.

TSA- the function is included in the stability system (p. 183) ESC[25].

Function

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

Operation

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example, end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors car movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front

wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time the TSA system comes into action, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car. For more information, see Electronic stability control (ESC) - operation (p. 184).

Miscellaneous

Engagement of TSA may take place at higher speeds.

NOTE

TSA function is switched off if the driver selects **Sport** mode, see Electronic stability control (ESC) - general (p. 183).

TSA may fail to engage if the driver uses sudden steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because, in such a situation, the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver that is causing the snaking.

The **ESC**[25] symbol in the combined instrument panel flashes when the TSA system is working.

Related information

- Electronic stability control (ESC) - general (p. 183)

Towing

During towing, one vehicle is towed by another vehicle using a tow rope.

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

1. Activate the car's hazard warning flashers.
2. Attach the tow rope in the towing eye.
3. Unlock the steering lock by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch and giving a long press on the **START/STOP ENGINE** button - key position **II** is activated, see Key positions (p. 77) for more information about key positions.
4. The remote control key must remain in the ignition switch while the car is being towed.
5. Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.
6. Be prepared to brake to stop.

24 Included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.
25 (Electronic Stability Control) - Electronic stability control.

WARNING

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- The remote control key must be in key position **II** - in position **I** all airbags are deactivated.
- Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when the car is being towed.

WARNING

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

Manual gearbox

Prior to towing:

– Move gear lever into neutral and release the parking brake.

Automatic gearbox Geartronic

Prior to towing:

– Move the gear selector to position **N** and release the parking brake.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h (50 mph) or for distances in excess of 80 km.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to bump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start, see Jump starting with another battery (p. 273).

IMPORTANT

The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

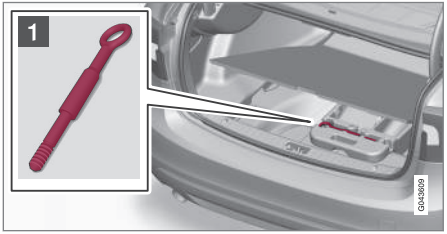
Related information

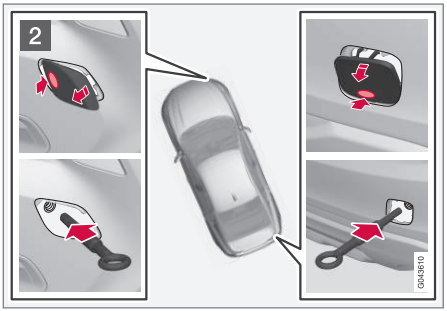
- Hazard warning flashers (p. 93)
- Towing eye (p. 317)
- Recovery (p. 318)

Towing eye

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

Attaching the towing eye





Remove the front and rear covers.

1 Take out the towing eye that is located under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

2 The cover for the towing eye's attachment point is available in two variants which must be opened in different ways:

- Open the variant with a recess using a coin or similar inserted in the recess, turning it outwards. Then turn out the cover completely and remove it.
- The second variant has a marking along one side or in a corner: Press the marking with a finger and fold out the opposite side/corner at the same time using a coin or similar - the cover turns around its axis and can then be removed.

Screw the towing eye right in up to its flange. Turn in the towing eye firmly e.g. using the wheel wrench.

After use, unscrew the towing eye and return it to its place.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye. Raise the car using the recovery vehicle's lifting device if necessary.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

Related information

- Towing (p. 316)
- Recovery (p. 318)

Recovery

Recovery means that the vehicle is transported away by means of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye. Raise the car using the recovery vehicle's lifting device if necessary.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

Related information

- Towing (p. 316)

WHEELS AND TYRES

Tyres - maintenance

Amongst other things, the function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

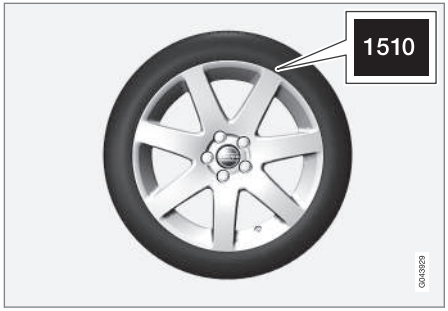
Driving characteristics

Tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discoloration.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 1510. The tyre in the figure was manufactured in week 15 of 2010.

Summer and winter wheels

When summer and winter wheels are changed the wheels should be marked with which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Wear and maintenance

Correct tyre pressure (p. 324) results in more even wear. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly your tyres age and wear.

To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns arising, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km and then at 10000 km intervals.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, then the least worn tyres must always be fitted on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

⚠ WARNING

A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Storage

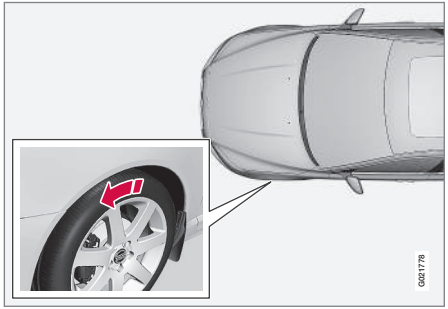
Wheels with tyres fitted must be stored lying down or hanging up - never standing up.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 323)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 324)

Tyres - direction of rotation

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan. Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa. If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected. Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

NOTE

Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

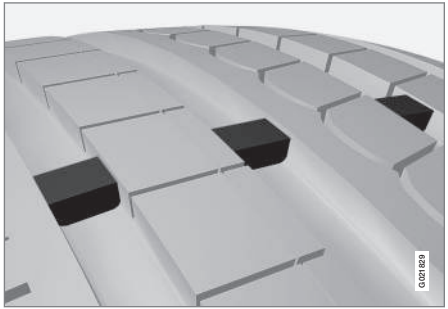
Follow the recommended tyre pressures specified in the tyre pressure table (p. 436).

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 322)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 324)

Tyres - tread wear indicators

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



Tread wear indicators.

A tread wear indicators is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm, the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 323)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 322)

Tyres - air pressure

Tyres can have different air pressures which are measured in bar.

Check the air pressure in the tyres

The tyre pressures must be checked every month.

- Tyre pressure for the car's recommended tyre dimension.
- ECO pressure[1].

Check the tyre pressure on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature. After several few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

Inadequate tyre pressure increases fuel consumption, shortens tyre lifespan and impairs the car's driving characteristics. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

NOTE

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature.

Tyre pressure label

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions. This is also specified in the tyre pressure table, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436).

Fuel economy, ECO pressure

When carrying a light load (max. 3 people) and at speeds of up to 160 km/h (100 mph), the ECO pressure can be selected to give the best possible fuel economy. If the best possible noise and travelling comfort conditions are sought, the lower comfort pressures are recommended instead.

(See approved tyre pressures(p. 436).)

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 322)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 324)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436)

[1] ECO pressure results in improved fuel economy.

Wheel and wheel rim dimensions

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle. This means that certain combinations of wheel (wheel rim) and tyre are approved.

Wheels (rims) have a designation of dimensions, for example: 7Jx16x50.

7	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
16	Rim diameter in inches
50	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436)
- Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions (p. 432)

Tyres - dimensions

The car's tyres have a certain dimension, see the examples in the table below.

The dimensions are stated on all car tyres.
Example of designation: 215/55R16 97W.

215	Tyre width (mm)
55	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
16	Rim diameter in inches (")
97	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
W	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 270 km/h (168 mph).)

WARNING

19-inch wheels must **never** be used on cars that are **not** equipped with the R-Design or Sport chassis options. The use of 19-inch wheels on cars with **standard chassis** constitutes a safety risk, with a risk of vehicle damage, and it impairs the car's driving characteristics.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Related information

- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 323)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 322)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436)
- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 326)
- Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions (p. 432)
- Load index and speed rating (p. 434)

Tyres - load index

Load index indicates a tyre's ability to carry a certain load.

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres. Lowest permissible index is specified in the tyre load index table, see section "Specifications" in the printed owner's manual.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 322)
- Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions (p. 432)

Tyres - speed ratings

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed and therefore belongs to a particular speed rating (SS - Speed Symbol).

Tyre speed class must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below indicates the maximum permitted speed that applies for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is the winter tyre (p. 328)[2], where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h (100 mph)). Traffic regulations determine how fast a car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

NOTE

The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (only used on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

WARNING

The car must be fitted with tyres which have the same or a higher load index (p. 327) (LI) and speed rating (SS) than specified. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 323)

[2] Both those with metal studs and those without.

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to fasten the wheels at the hubs and are available in different versions.

IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. Overtightening or loose tightening may damage the nuts and the bolts.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

Locking wheel bolts*

Locking wheel bolts* can be used on both aluminium and steel rims. Under the cargo area floor there is space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts.

Related information

- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 326)

Winter tyres

Winter tyres are tyres that are adapted for winter road conditions.

Winter tyres

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that you consult a Volvo dealer about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm.

Using snow chains

Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars). Never drive faster than 50 km/h (31 mph) with snow chains. Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.

WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. In the event of uncertainty Volvo recommends that you consult an authorised Volvo workshop. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to your car and lead to an accident.

Related information

- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 329)

* Option/accessory.

Changing wheels - removing wheels

The car's wheels can be changed for e.g. winter wheels/winter tyres.

Spare wheel*

Two different versions of the spare wheel can be supplied, in a bag or beneath the cargo floor.

The following instructions only apply if a spare wheel has been purchased as an accessory for the car. If the car is not equipped with a spare wheel - see information about Emergency puncture repair (TMK) (p. 348).

The spare wheel (Temporary spare) is only intended for use temporarily and must be replaced by an ordinary wheel as soon as possible. The car's handling may be altered by the use of the spare wheel. The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel. The car's ground clearance is affected accordingly. Pay attention to high kerbs and do not machine wash the car. If the spare wheel is fitted on the front axle, you cannot use snow chains at the same time. On all-wheel drive cars the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected. The spare wheel must not be repaired.

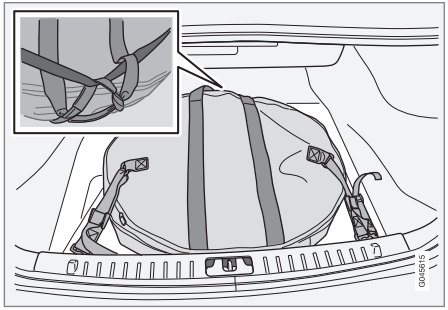
The correct tyre pressure for the spare wheel is stated in the tyre pressure table (p. 436).

IMPORTANT

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.

The spare wheel is located in the spare wheel well with the outside down. The same bolt runs through to secure the spare wheel and the foam block. The foam block contains all the tools needed to change the wheels.

The spare wheel is supplied in a bag and must be secured on the cargo area floor using straps.



Cars with two load retaining eyelets.

Turn the handle on the spare wheel bag in towards the rear seat. Attach the sewn-in tensioning strap hooks in the load retaining eyelets. Attach the long strap into one of the load retaining eyelets, run the strap around the spare wheel and through the lower handle. Tighten the short tensioning strap onto the long one. Attach the second load retaining eyelet and tighten.

Taking out the spare wheel under the cargo area floor

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Undo the retaining screw.
3. Lift out the foam block with its tools.
4. Lift out the spare wheel.

Taking out the spare wheel in the bag

1. Loosen the straps, lift out the spare wheel from the cargo area and remove it from the spare wheel bag.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor.
3. Lift the tools and jack out from the foam block.

Removing

Set up warning triangle (p. 333) if a wheel is replaced in trafficked location. The car and jack* must be on a firm horizontal surface.

1. Apply the parking brake, (p. 295) and engage reverse gear, or position **P** if the car has an automatic gearbox.

WARNING

Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.

NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack* that belongs to the car model in question, which is indicated on the jack's label.

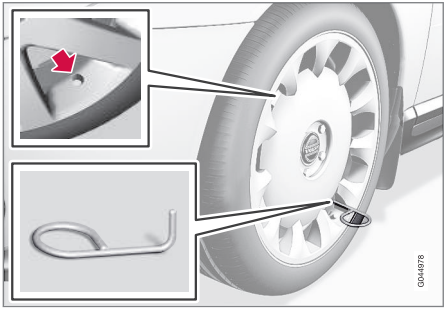
The label also indicates the jack's maximum lift capacity at a specified minimum lifting height.

2. Take out the jack*, wheel wrench*, removal tool for wheel covers* and the plastic wheel bolt cap removal tool. They will be found in the foam block. If another jack is selected, see Raising the car (p. 359).

Tool for removing the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.

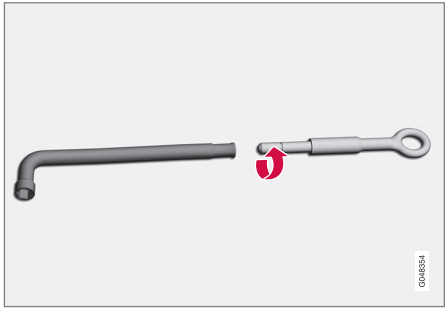
3. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels which will remain on the ground to prevent them from rolling. Use heavy wooden blocks or large stones for example.

4. Cars with steel rims have removable wheel covers. Use the removal tool to hook in and pull off any full-wheel wheel covers. Alternatively, the wheel covers can be pulled away by hand.



* Option/accessory.

5. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench* to the stop position.



IMPORTANT

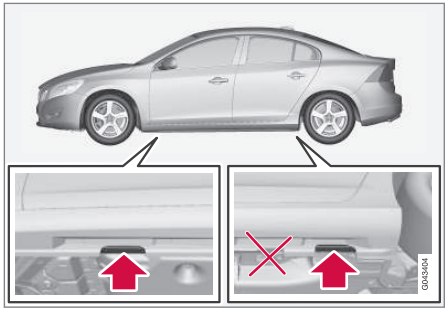
The towing eye must be screwed all the way into the wheel bolt wrench.

6. Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.
7. Loosen the wheel bolts ½-1 turn anticlockwise with the wheel wrench*.

WARNING

Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.

8. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. Wind up the jack* so that the flange in the bodywork ends up in the notch in the head of the jack.



IMPORTANT

The ground must be firm, smooth and level.

9. Lift the car so that the wheel is free. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack. If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.

NOTE

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture, changing to winter/summer wheels, etc. Only the jack for the specific car model may be used to raise the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

Related information

- Changing wheels - fitting (p. 332)
- Jack* (p. 334)
- Warning triangle (p. 333)
- Wheel bolts (p. 328)

Changing wheels - fitting

It is important that the procedure for fitting the wheel is carried out correctly.

Installation

WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack. If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

   Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.

4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm. Check the torque with a torque wrench.
5. Refit the plastic caps on the wheel bolts.
6. Refit any full wheel covers.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The wheel cover outlet for the valve must be positioned over the valve on the wheel rim during fitting.

When changing to another tyre dimension

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop for updating the software at each change of tyre dimension. A software download may be necessary both when changing to larger and smaller dimensions, and also when switching between summer and winter wheels.

Related information

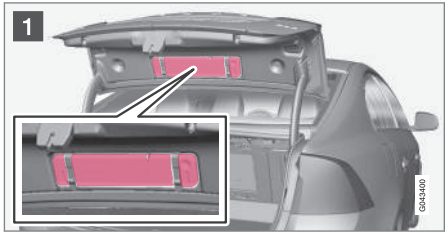
- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 329)
- Jack* (p. 334)
- Warning triangle (p. 333)
- Wheel bolts (p. 328)

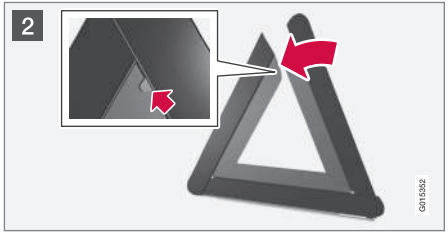
* Option/accessory.

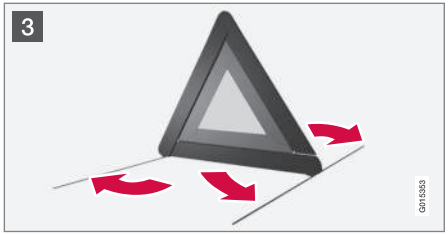
Warning triangle

The warning triangle is used to warn other road users of a stationary vehicle.

Storage and folding up







The warning triangle is fitted on the inside of the boot lid with two clips.

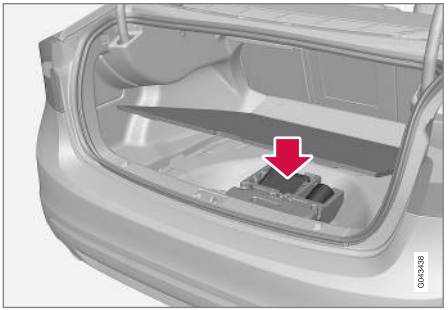
1. Detach the warning triangle case by pulling both of the snap latches outwards.
2. Take the warning triangle from the case, fold out and assemble the two loose sides.
3. Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Ensure the warning triangle and its case are properly secured in the cargo area after use.

Tools

Amongst other things, the car contains towing eye, jack* and wheel wrench*.



Located under the cargo area floor are the car's towing eye, jack* and wheel wrench*. There is also space here for the sleeve for the locking wheel bolts and tools for the plastic wheel bolt caps.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)
- Towing eye (p. 317)
- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 329)
- Wheel bolts (p. 328)
- Jack* (p. 334)

Jack*

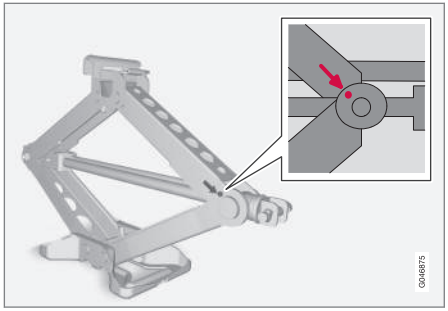
Use the jack to raise the car when changing a wheel.

The original jack should only be used for changing to the spare wheel. The jack's thread must always be well greased.

NOTE

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture, changing to winter/summer wheels, etc. Only the jack for the specific car model may be used to raise the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

Tools - returning into place



The tools and jack* must be returned to their correct places after use. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

IMPORTANT

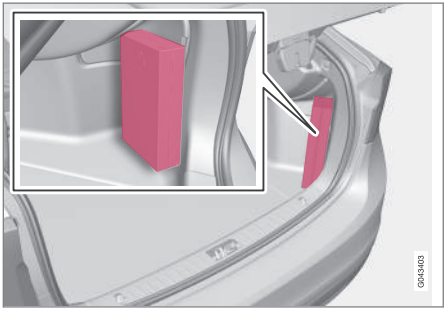
The tools and jack* must be stored in the intended location in the car's cargo area when not in use.

Related information

- Warning triangle (p. 333)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)

First aid kit*

The first aid box contains first aid equipment.



A case with first aid equipment is located in the cargo area.

* Option/accessory.

Tyre pressure monitoring*[3]

The tyre pressure monitoring system warns with an indicator symbol in the combined instrument panel when the pressure is too low in one or more of the car's tyres.

There are two systems for tyre pressure monitoring, TM (Tyre Monitor) and TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)[4]. In the event of uncertainty about which system the car has, open the menu system **MY CAR** and search for the car's settings:

- The **Tyre monitor** menu is used if it is TM.
- The **Tyre pressure** menu is used if it is TPMS.

For certain markets the tyre pressure monitoring is standard in accordance with legal requirements. The system does not replace normal tyre maintenance.

Indicator symbol for tyre pressure monitoring.

Related information

- Tyre monitoring (TM)* (p. 335)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - general information (p. 337)

Tyre monitoring (TM)*[5]

The TM (Tyre Monitor) system senses tyre rotation speed in order to determine whether the tyres have the correct tyre pressure.

System description

If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre's diameter is changed and, as a result, so is its rotation speed. By comparing the tyres with each other the system can determine whether one or more tyres have pressure that is too low.

The system does not replace normal tyre maintenance.

Messages

If the tyre pressure is too low then an indicator symbol (⚠) illuminates in the combined instrument panel and one of the following messages is shown:

- **Tyre pressure low Check, adjust and calibrate**
- **Tyre pressure system Service required**
- **Tyre pressure system Currently unavailable**

IMPORTANT

If a fault occurs in the TM system the indicator symbol ⚠ in the combined instrument panel will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. A message is also shown in the combined instrument panel.

[3] Standard in certain markets.
[4] Applicable only to the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.
[5] Standard in certain markets.

Deleting the messages

1. Check the tyre pressure in all tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
2. Inflate the tyre/tyres to the correct pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors).
3. Recalibrate the TM system in **MY CAR**.

NOTE

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

TM calibration

In order for TM system to work correctly, a reference value for the tyre pressure must be determined. This must be done each time the tyres are changed or the tyre pressure is adjusted by recalibrating the system in **MY CAR**.

For example, the tyre pressure should be adjusted when driving with a heavy load or for high-speed driving (above 160 km/h (100 mph)). Following which, the system must be recalibrated.

Recalibration

Settings are made using the centre console's controls, see MY CAR (p. 109).

1. Stop the engine.
2. Inflate all tyres to the desired pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors).

   Or see the tyre pressure table.
3. Start the engine and let the car stand still.
4. Open the menu system **MY CAR** and select the menu **Tyre monitor**.
5. Select **Start calibration** and press OK.
6. Press OK after all tyres have been checked and adjusted in order to start calibration.
7. Drive the car.

   > Recalibration is carried out automatically while the car is being driven and can be interrupted at any time. If the engine is switched off while recalibration is in progress then it is resumed when the car is driven again. The system provides no confirmation when the calibration is complete.

The new reference value applies until steps 1-7 are repeated.

NOTE

Remember that the TM system must be recalibrated at each tyre change or if the tyre pressure is adjusted. If new reference values are not stored then the system cannot function properly.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

System and tyre status

The current status of the system and the tyres can be checked in the centre console's screen.

1. Open the menu system **MY CAR**.
2. Select the **Tyre monitor** menu.
   > Status for tyre pressures is shown with a colour code.

The status is colour-coded for each tyre in accordance with the following:

- All-green: the system is operating normally and the tyre pressure in all tyres is slightly above the recommended level.
- Yellow wheel: corresponding tyre's pressure is too low.
- All wheels yellow: two or more tyres have pressure that is too low.
- All wheels grey and the message **Tyre pressure system Currently unavailable**: the tyre pressure system is temporarily deactivated. It may be necessary to drive the car for a short time above 30 km/h (20 mph) before the system becomes active again.
- All wheels grey and the message **Tyre pressure system Service required**: an error has occurred in the system. Contact a Volvo dealer or workshop.

Related information

- Tyres - air pressure (p. 324)

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*6 - general information

Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS) (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) warns the driver when the pressure is too low in one or more of the car's tyres.

System description

The TPMS system uses sensors located inside the air valve in each wheel. When the car is driven at approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) the system detects the tyre pressure.

Both factory-fitted and optional wheels can be equipped with TPMS sensors in the valves.

The system does not replace normal tyre maintenance.

Messages

If the pressure is too low then an indicator symbol (!) illuminates in the combined instrument panel and one of the following messages is shown:

- **Tyre pressure low Check front right tyre**
- **Tyre pressure low Check front left tyre**
- **Tyre pressure low Check rear right tyre**
- **Tyre pressure low Check rear left tyre**
- **Tyre needs air now Check front right tyre**
- **Tyre needs air now Check front left tyre**
- **Tyre needs air now Check rear right tyre**
- **Tyre needs air now Check rear left tyre**
- **Tyre pressure system Service required**

If wheels without TPMS sensors are used or if a sensor has failed then **Tyre pressure system Service required** will be shown.

For information on the correct tyre pressure, see Tyres - air pressure (p. 324).

IMPORTANT

If a fault occurs in the TPMS system the indicator symbol (!) in the combined instrument panel will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. A message is also shown in the combined instrument panel.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)* - adjust (recalibration) (p. 338)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - rectifying low tyre pressure (p. 340)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - activate/deactivate (p. 339)
- Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)* - recommendations (p. 339)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - driveable punctured tyres* (p. 341)

Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)*[7] - adjust (recalibration)

TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) uses a reference value on which the warning for low tyre pressure is based.

Change the reference value by recalibrating the system, such as for driving with a heavy load, for example.

Always adjust the tyre pressure according to Volvo's recommended tyre pressure values before recalibration.

NOTE

The car must be stationary when calibration is started.

Settings are made using the centre console's controls, see MY CAR (p. 109).

1. Inflate the tyres to the desired pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors).
2. Start the engine.
3. Open the menu system **MY CAR**.
4. Select the **Tyre pressure** menu.
5. Select **Calibrate tyre pressure** and press **OK**.
6. Drive for at least 10 minutes at a speed of at least 30 km/h (20 mph).
   > Calibration is performed automatically following initialisation by the driver. The system provides no confirmation when the calibration is complete.

The new reference values apply until steps 1-6 are carried out again.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)
- Tyres - air pressure (p. 324)

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*[8] - tyre status

Using the tyre pressure monitoring system TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) it is possible to check the tyre status in the centre console's screen.

System and tyre status

The current status of the system and the tyres can be checked, see MY CAR (p. 109).

1. Open the menu system **MY CAR**.
2. Select the **Tyre pressure** menu.
   > Status for tyre pressures is shown with a colour code.

The status is colour-coded for each tyre in accordance with the following:

- All-green: the system is operating normally and the tyre pressure in all tyres is slightly above the recommended level.
- Yellow wheel: corresponding tyre's pressure is too low.
- Red wheel: corresponding tyre's pressure is very low.
- All wheels grey: the system is temporarily unavailable. It may be necessary to drive the car for a few minutes at a speed above

[6] Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.
[7] Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.
[8] Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.

30 km/h (20 mph) before the system becomes active again.

- All wheels grey and the message **Tyre pressure system Service required**: an error has occurred in the system. Contact a Volvo dealer or workshop.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* - rectifying low tyre pressure (p. 340)

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*[9] - activate/deactivate[10]

In certain markets it is possible to activate/deactivate the tyre pressure monitoring system TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System).

> **NOTE**
>
> The car must be stationary when the tyre pressure monitoring is activated/deactivated.

Settings are made using the centre console's controls, see MY CAR (p. 109).

1. Start the engine.
2. Open the menu system **MY CAR**.
3. Select the **Tyre pressure** menu.
4. Select **Tyre monitoring** and press **OK**.
   > An **X** is shown in the information display if the system is activated, the option disappears if the system is deactivated.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

Tyre pressure monitoring (TPMS)*[11] - recommendations

Recommendations for the tyre pressure monitoring system TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System).

- Volvo recommends that TPMS sensors are fitted to all wheels on the car, including winter wheels.
- Volvo recommends that sensors are not moved between different wheels.
- The spare wheel is not equipped a with TPMS sensor.
- If the spare wheel or a wheel without a TPMS sensor is used, the error message **Tyre pressure system Service required** will be shown in the combined instrument panel.
- Always check the system after changing a wheel in order to ensure that replacement wheels work with the system.
- If a wheel has been changed, or if the TPMS sensor has been moved to another wheel then the seal, nut and valve core must be replaced.
- When TPMS sensors are installed, the car should be switched off for at least 15

9 Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.
10 Only in certain markets.
11 Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.

minutes otherwise an error message will be shown in the combined instrument panel.

WARNING

When inflating a tyre equipped with TPMS, hold the nozzle of the pump directly against the valve to avoid damaging the valve.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

If you want to change the tyre dimension then the TPMS system must be reconfigured. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*[12] - rectifying low tyre pressure

When the tyre pressure monitoring system TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) gives a warning, the tyre pressure is too low in one or more of the car's tyres.

If a tyre pressure message has been shown and the TPMS indicator lamp has been illuminated:

1. Check the tyre pressure on the indicated tyre/tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
2. Inflate the tyre/tyres to the correct pressure in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors).
3. In some cases it may be necessary to drive the car for a few minutes at a speed above 30 km/h (20 mph) in order to clear the message. At which point, the TPMS indicator lamp is extinguished as well.

NOTE

- The TPMS system uses a so-called compensated pressure value, based on both tyre temperature and ambient temperature. This means that the tyre pressure may differ slightly from the recommended pressures listed on the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between front and rear doors). For this reason, it may be necessary to inflate the tyres to a slightly higher pressure in order to clear a low tyre pressure message.
- To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

WARNING

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

12 Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.

* Option/accessory.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*[13] - driveable punctured tyres*

If SST (Self Supporting run flat Tires)* is selected, the car is also equipped with TPMS (p. 335).

This type of tyre has a specially reinforced side wall that makes continued driving possible to a limited extent despite the tyre losing all or some of its pressure. These tyres are fitted on a special rim. (Normal tyres can also be fitted to this rim.)

If an SST tyre loses tyre pressure then the yellow TPMS lamp in the combined instrument panel illuminates and a message is shown in the information display. If this occurs, reduce speed to max. 80 km/h (50 mph). The tyre must be changed as soon as possible.

Drive carefully, in some cases it can be difficult to see which tyre is faulty. In order to establish which tyre needs attention, check all four tyres.

WARNING

Only people with knowledge of SST tyres should fit them.

SST tyres must only be fitted together with TPMS.

After a message about low tyre pressure has been shown, do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).

Maximum mileage before tyre replacement is 80 km.

Avoid hard driving such as sudden braking or turning.

SST tyres must be replaced if they are damaged or punctured.

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

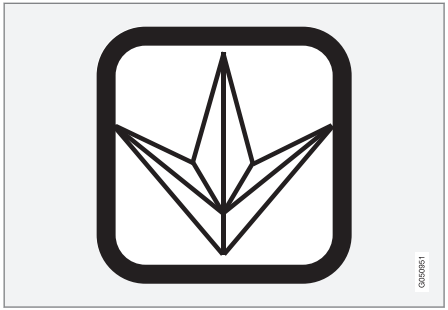
13 Only possible on the factory-built S60/V60 Polestar with 20-inch wheels and Brembo brakes at the front.

Type approval - tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*[14]

Type approval of the sensors in tyre pressure monitoring - TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) can be read in the table.

14 Only possible on the S60/V60 Polestar with 350 hp.

* Option/accessory.

Country/Area	
Brazil	
Ukraine	

Country/Area	
Israel	שם הדגם (Hebrew:Model name) S180052050 שם היצרן וכתובתו (Hebrew:Manufacturer and address) Continental AG Siemensstraße 12 93055 Regensburg G001354

Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity)

Country/ Area	
Countries in the EU:	CE Exporting country: Germany Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH Type of equipment: TPMS unit

Continental

Josef Lohr
I BS PQ3 CFRF WM
Phone +49 (941) 790-8942
Fax +49 (941) 790-998942
josef.lohr@continental-corporation.com

Date: April 16, 2012
Your message dated: TG1C Volvo
Our Reference:
Your reference:

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: S180052060

Intended use: Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): *Applied standard(s):* EN 60 950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010 + A12:2011 EN 62 479:2010

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02) EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2012-04-16

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

Norbert Moller
Director Product Group 1
Body & Security

G051353

Country/ Area	
Czech Republic:	**Continental tímto prohlašuje, že tento Radio Transmitter je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.**
Denmark:	**Undertegnede Continental erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr Radio Transmitter overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.**
Germany:	**Hiermit erklärt Continental, dass sich das Gerät Radio Transmitter in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.**
Estonia:	**Käesolevaga kinnitab Continental seadme Radio Transmitter vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.**
UK	Hereby, Continental declares that this Radio Transmitter is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Spain:	**Por medio de la presente Continental declara que el Radio Transmitter cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.**
Greece:	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ **Continental** ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **Radio Transmitter** ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ **1999/5/**ΕΚ.
France:	**Par la présente Continental déclare que l'appareil Radio Transmitter est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.**
Italy:	**Con la presente Continental dichiara che questo Radio Transmitter è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.**
Latvia:	**Ar šo Continental deklarē, ka Radio Transmitter atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.**
Lithuania:	**Šiuo Continental deklaruoja, kad šis Radio Transmitter atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.**
Nether-lands:	**Hierbij verklaart Continental dat het toestel Radio Transmitter in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.**

Country/ Area	
Malta:	**Hawnhekk, Continental, jiddikjara li dan Radio Transmitter jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.**
Hungary:	Alulírott, Continental nyilatkozom, hogy a Radio Transmitter megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Poland:	**Niniejszym Continental oświadcza, że Radio Transmitter jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.**
Portugal:	**Continental declara que este Radio Transmitter está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.**
Slovenia:	Continental izjavlja, da je ta Radio Transmitter v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovakia:	Continental týmto vyhlasuje, že Radio Transmitter spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Finland:	**Continental vakuuttaa täten että Radio Transmitter tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.**
Sweden:	**Härmed intygar Continental att denna Radio Transmitter står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.**
Iceland:	Hér með lýsir Continental yfir því að Radio Transmitter er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norway:	**Continental erklærer herved at utstyret Radio Transmitter er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.**

Related information

- Tyre pressure monitoring* (p. 335)

Emergency puncture repair

The emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK), is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 436).

The emergency puncture repair kit (p. 349) consists of a compressor and a bottle of sealant. The sealing works as a temporary repair. The sealing fluid effectively seals tyres punctured in the tread.

The emergency puncture repair kit has limited capacity to seal tyres which have punctures in the wall. Do not seal tyres with the emergency puncture repair kit if they have larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

NOTE

The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

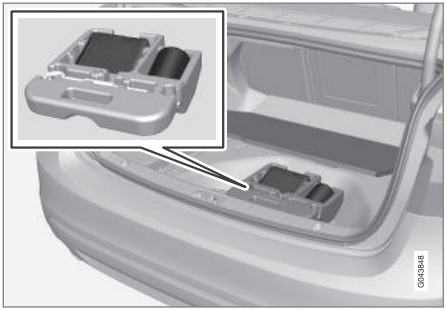
Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit - location (p. 348)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349)
- Emergency puncture repair - operation (p. 350)
- Tools (p. 333)

Emergency puncture repair kit - location

The emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK), is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure.

Location of the emergency puncture repair kit



The emergency puncture repair kit is located under the floor in the cargo area.

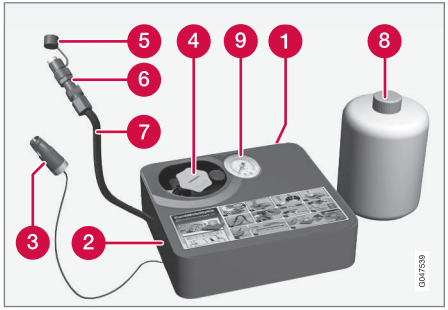
Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)

Emergency puncture repair kit - overview

Overview of the component parts of the emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK).

The parts are stored under the floor in the cargo area.



1. Label, maximum permitted speed
2. Switch
3. Electrical cable
4. Bottle holder (orange cap)
5. Protective cap
6. Pressure reducing valve
7. Air hose
8. Sealing fluid bottle
9. Pressure gauge

Sealing fluid bottle

Replace the bottle with sealing fluid before the expiration date has passed and after use. Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

WARNING

The bottle contains 1.2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex.

Harmful if ingested. Could result in allergic reaction in the event of skin contact.

Avoid contact with the skin and eyes.

Store out of the reach of children.

WARNING

- In the event of skin contact with the sealing fluid, it must be washed off immediately with soap and plenty of water.
- Sealing fluid that makes contact with an eye must be rinsed away immediately with eye wash fluid or with plenty of water. If the discomfort persists then the eye should be examined by a doctor.

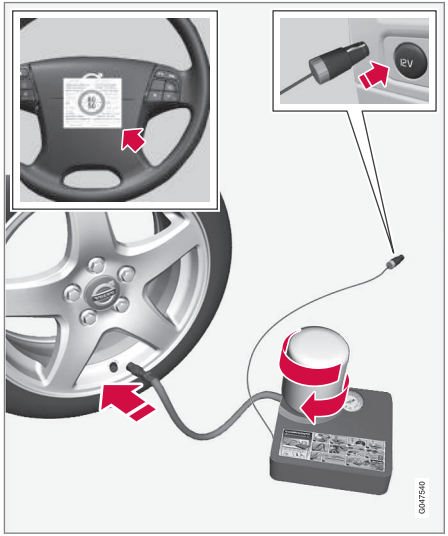
Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit - location (p. 348)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)

Emergency puncture repair - operation

Sealing a puncture with the emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK).

Emergency puncture repair



For information on the function of the parts, see Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349).

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

   If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar, allow this to remain in the tyre. It helps to seal the hole.

2. Detach the label for maximum permitted speed (which is fitted on one side of the compressor) and affix it to the steering wheel. You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used.

3. Check that the switch is in position **0**, and take out the electrical cable and the air hose.

4. Unscrew the orange-coloured cap from the compressor, and unscrew the cork from the bottle.

NOTE

Do not break the bottle's seal before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed in.

5. Screw in the bottle to the bottom of the bottle holder.

   > The bottle and the bottle holder are equipped with a reverse catch to prevent sealant leakage. When the bottle is screwed in it cannot be unscrewed from the bottle holder again. Bottle removal must be performed at a workshop, Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

- In the event of skin contact with the sealing fluid, it must be washed off immediately with soap and plenty of water.
- Sealing fluid that makes contact with an eye must be rinsed away immediately with eye wash fluid or with plenty of water. If the discomfort persists then the eye should be examined by a doctor.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

6. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap.

   Check that the pressure reducing valve on the air hose is fully screwed on, and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

7. Plug the electrical cable into the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

NOTE

Make sure that none of the other 12 V sockets is in use when the compressor is operating.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

8. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I**.

WARNING

Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

NOTE

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar but the pressure drops after approximately 30 seconds.

9. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

IMPORTANT

The compressor must not be operated for longer than 10 minutes - risk of overheating.

10. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar and maximum 3.5 bar. (Release air with the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

WARNING

If the pressure is below 1.8 bar then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

11. Switch off the compressor and unplug the electrical cable.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre's air valve and refit the dust cap on the tyre.
13. Fit the protective cap on the air hose in order to avoid leakage of the remaining sealing fluid.
14. As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre.

NOTE

Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre.

WARNING

Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least two metres.

15. Follow-up inspection:

    Connect the air hose on the tyre's air valve again and check the tyre pressure with the pressure gauge, see Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 352).

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)
- Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 352)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349)

Emergency puncture repair - rechecking

When a tyre has been sealed with the emergency puncture repair kit, Temporary Mobility Kit (TMK), a subsequent check must be made after approx. 3 kilometres of driving.

Check tyre pressure

Take out the tyre sealing equipment. The compressor must be switched off.

1. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap.

   Take out the air hose and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

2. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
   - If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar[15] then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact a tyre centre.
   - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar[15], the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436).
   - Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

3. If the tyre needs to be inflated:
   1. Plug the electrical cable into the closest 12 V socket and start the car.
   2. Start the compressor and inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table.
   3. Switch off the compressor.

4. Remove the tyre sealing equipment, fit the protective cap on the air hose and fold the hose in the box.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

5. Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends a visit to an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

15 1 bar = 100 kPa.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)
- Emergency puncture repair - operation (p. 350)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349)

Emergency puncture repair kit - inflating the tyres

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 349).

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **0** and take out the electrical cable and air hose.
2. Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.
3. Plug the electrical cable into the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

4. Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position **I**.

IMPORTANT

The compressor must not be operated for longer than 10 minutes - risk of overheating.

5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.
6. Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and the electrical cable.
7. Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 348)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 349)
- Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 352)

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Related information

- Climate control system - fault tracing and repair (p. 369)

Book service and repair*[1]

Manage service, repair and booking information directly in your Internet-connected car.

This service[1] provides a convenient way to book a service and workshop visit directly in the car. Car information is sent to your dealer, who can prepare the workshop visit. The dealer will contact you to schedule an appointment time. For certain markets, the system reminds you of a scheduled appointment time as it approaches and the navigation system[2] can also guide you to the workshop when the time comes.

Before the service can be used

Volvo ID and my profile

- Register a Volvo ID. For more information and how to create a Volvo ID, see Volvo ID (p. 21).
- Log in to the owner portal My Volvo, go to your profile and carry out the following:

1. Check that the car is connected to your profile.
2. Check that your contact information is correct.
3. Select the Volvo dealer you want to contact for service and repair.
4. Choose preferred communication channel (phone). Booking information is always sent to the car and to you via email.

Prerequisite for booking from car

- To send and receive booking information from and to the car, the car must be connected to the Internet, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement for information about how to connect the car to the Internet.
- Since the booking information is sent over your private phone subscription, you will be asked whether you want to send the information. The question is asked once and then applies to the selected connection for a limited time.
- For the service to work and for the system to communicate via the car's screen, notifications/pop-up messages must be accepted. In the normal view for the **MY CAR** source, press **OK/MENU** and then **Service & repair** ➔ **Display notifications**.

Using the service

All menus and settings are accessed from the normal view in **MY CAR** by pressing **OK/MENU** and then **Service & repair**.

When it is time for service, and in some cases when the car is in need of repair, this is notified

[1] Applies to certain markets.
[2] Applies to Sensus Navigation.

* Option/accessory.

in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) and via a pop-up menu in the screen.

Service message in the screen.

Meaning of the answer options in the screen's pop-up menu:

- **Yes** - A booking enquiry is sent to your dealer who then comes back with a booking proposal. The service lamp and service message in the combined instrument panel are extinguished.
- **No** - No more pop-up messages will be shown in the screen. The message in the combined instrument panel remains. After this option has been selected, it is possible to start the manual booking in the car, see below.
- **Postpone** - The pop-up menu is shown the next time the car is started.

Book a service or repair manually[1]

1. Press the **MY CAR** button in the centre console and select **Service & repair ➔ Dealer information ➔ Request service or repair**.
   > Vehicle data is sent automatically to your dealer.
2. The dealer sends a booking proposal to the car.
3. Accept or request a new booking proposal.

After the booking has been accepted the booking information is stored in the car, see My bookings. The car will automatically communicate with you via the screen by means of reminders about the booking and guide you to the workshop visit.

You can also book a workshop visit via My Volvo. Go to "My bookings" and select "Update" in order to gain access to bookings from My Volvo.

My bookings[1]

Show booking information in the car's screen. Accept or request a new booking proposal.

– Select **Service & repair ➔ My bookings**.

Call the dealer[1]

With a Bluetooth® phone connected to the car, you can call your dealer. For connecting the phone, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

– Select **Service & repair ➔ Dealer information ➔ Call dealer**.

Using the navigation system[1, 2]

Enter your workshop as destination or waypoint in the navigation system.

– Select **Service & repair ➔ Dealer information ➔ Set single destination**.

– Select **Service & repair ➔ Dealer information ➔ Add as waypoint**.

Sending vehicle data[1]

Vehicle data are sent to a central Volvo database (not your dealer) from which Volvo dealers can retrieve vehicle information using the car's identification number (VIN[3]). The number is printed in the car's service and warranty booklet, alternatively inside the windscreen's bottom left-hand corner.

– Select **Service & repair ➔ Send car data**.

1 Applies to certain markets.
2 Applies to Sensus Navigation.
3 Vehicle Identification Number

Booking information and vehicle data

When you decide to book a service from your car, the booking information and vehicle data will be sent. Vehicle data information consists of information within the following areas:

- service requirement
- function status
- fluid levels
- Meter reading
- the car's vehicle identification number (VIN[3])
- The car's software version.

Related information

- Volvo ID (p. 21)

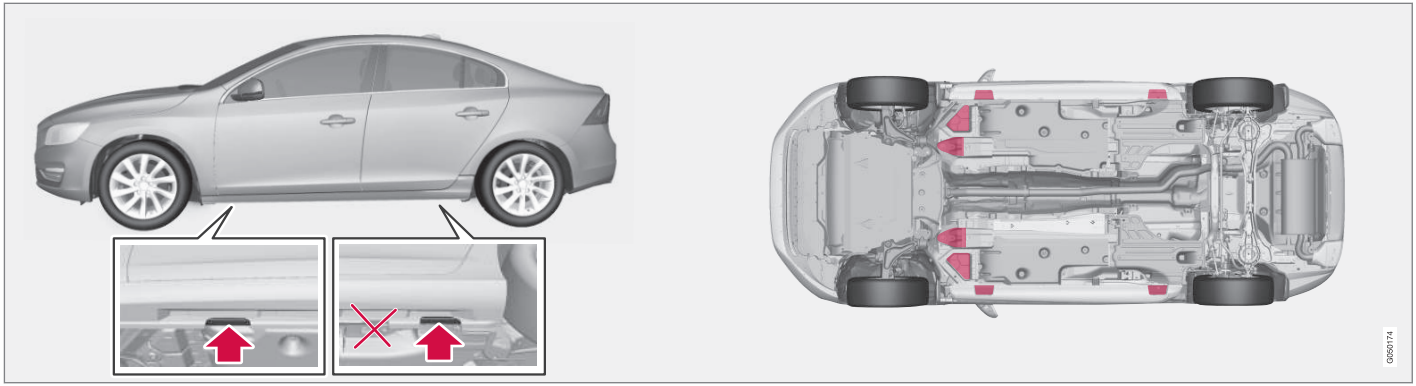
3 Vehicle Identification Number

Raising the car

When raising the car it is important that the jack or lifting arms are fitted in the intended points on the car's underbody.

NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.



Jacking points (arrows) for the jack that belongs to the car and lifting points (marked in red).

If the car is raised with a front workshop jack then this must be positioned under one of the four lifting points furthest in under the car. If the car is raised with a rear workshop jack then it must be positioned under one of the lifting points. Ensure that the workshop jack is positioned so that the car cannot slide off the jack. Always use axle stands or similar.

If the car is raised with a two-pillar workshop lift then the front and rear lifting arms can be positioned under the outer lifting points (jacking points). Alternatively, the inner lifting points can be used at the front.

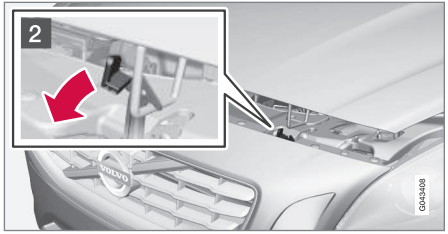
Related information

- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 329)

Bonnet - opening and closing

The bonnet can be opened when the handle in the passenger compartment has been turned clockwise and the lock by the radiator grille has been moved to the left.

The handle for bonnet opening is always on the left-hand side.



1. Turn the handle about 20-25 degrees clockwise. You will hear when the catch releases.
2. Move the catch to the left and open the bonnet. (The catch hook is located between the headlamp and radiator grille, see illustration.)

WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed.

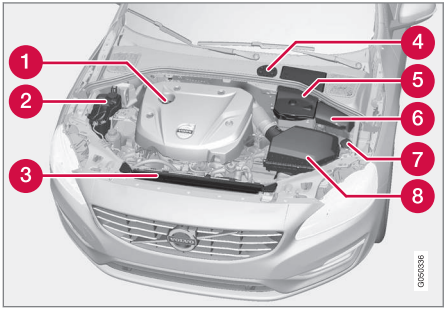
Related information

- Engine compartment - checking (p. 362)
- Engine compartment - overview (p. 361)

Engine compartment - overview

The overview shows some service-related components.

Engine compartment 4-cyl.



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

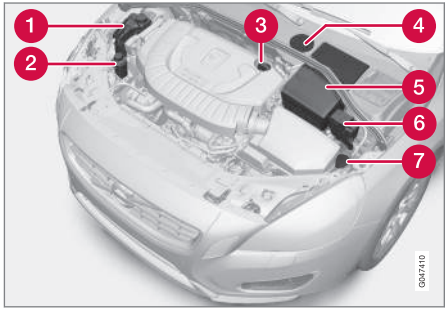
1. Engine oil filler pipe
2. Coolant expansion tank
3. Radiator
4. Reservoir for brake and clutch fluid (located on the driver's side)
5. Starter battery
6. Relay and fuse box
7. Washer fluid filler pipe
8. Air filter

WARNING

The ignition system has very high voltage and output. The voltage in the ignition system is highly dangerous. The car's electrical system must always be in key position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or when the engine is hot.

Engine compartment 5-cyl. diesel



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

1. Coolant expansion tank
2. Power steering fluid reservoir
3. Engine oil filler pipe
4. Reservoir for brake and clutch fluid (located on the driver's side)
5. Starter battery
6. Relay and fuse box
7. Washer fluid filler pipe

WARNING

The car's electrical system must always be in key position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

Related information

- Bonnet - opening and closing (p. 361)
- Engine compartment - checking (p. 362)

Engine compartment - checking

Some oils and fluids should be checked at regular intervals.

Regular checking

Check the following oils and fluids at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling:

- Coolant
- Engine oil
- Power steering fluid (not cars with 4-cyl. engine)
- Washer fluid

WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start automatically some after the engine has been switched off.

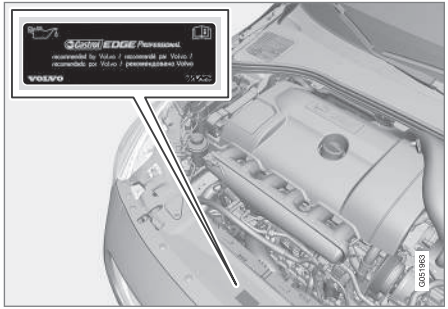
Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

Related information

- Bonnet - opening and closing (p. 361)
- Engine compartment - overview (p. 361)
- Coolant - level (p. 366)
- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364)
- Power steering fluid - level (p. 368)
- Washer fluid - filling (p. 379)

Engine oil - general

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied.



Volvo recommends:

Castrol EDGE PROFESSIONAL

G050450

When driving under adverse conditions, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419).

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low oil pressure. Certain engine variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel's warning symbol for low oil pressure is used . Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument's warning symbol and display texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade than the one specified, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419).

For filling capacities, see Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 420).

Related information

- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364)

Engine oil - checking and filling

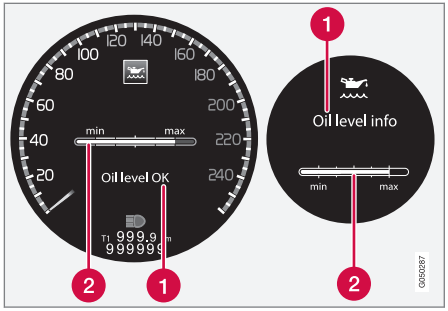
The oil level is detected with the electronic oil level sensor.

4-cyl.

Filler pipe[4].

In some cases, oil may need to be topped up between service intervals.

No action needs to be taken on engine oil level until a message is shown in the combined instrument panel's display, see the following illustration.



Message and graphic in the display. The left-hand display is shown in the digital combined instrument panel and the right-hand in the analogue.

1. Message
2. Engine oil level

The oil level is checked using the electronic oil level gauge with the thumbwheel when the engine is switched off, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106).

WARNING

If the message **Oil service required** is shown, visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

IMPORTANT

If notified of low oil level, only fill with the volume specified, for example, 0.5 litres.

NOTE

The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must have been driven approx. 30 km and have been stationary for 5 minutes with the engine switched off and on level ground before the oil level indication is correct.

WARNING

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

4 Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

Measuring the oil level, 4-cyl.

If the oil level needs to be checked then it should be carried out in accordance with the following sequence.

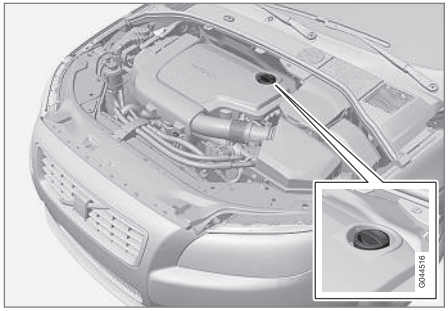
1. Activate key position **II**; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).
2. Rotate the thumbwheel on the left-hand stalk switch to position **Oil level**.
   > You will then see information displayed about the engine oil level.

   For more information on menu navigation, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106).

NOTE

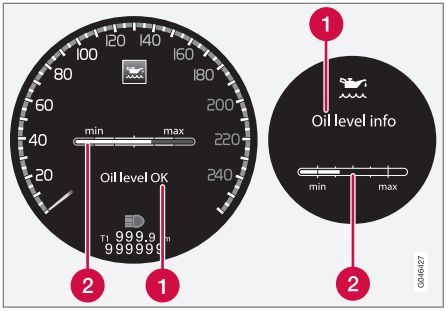
If the right conditions for measuring the oil level (time after engine shutdown, the car's inclination, outside temperature, etc.) are not met, the message **Not available** will be shown. This does **not** mean that there is something wrong in the car's systems.

5-cyl. diesel



Filler pipe[5].

No action needs to be taken on engine oil level until a message is shown in the combined instrument panel's display, see the following illustration.



Message and graphic in the display. The left-hand display is shown in the digital combined instrument panel and the right-hand in the analogue.

1 Message

2 Engine oil level

The oil level is checked using the electronic oil level gauge with the thumbwheel when the engine is switched off, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106).

WARNING

If the message **Oil service required** is shown, visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

5 Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

IMPORTANT

In the event of the message **Oil level low Refill 0.5 litre**, only fill with 0.5 litres.

NOTE

The oil level is only detected by the system during driving. The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. The car must be driven about 30 km before the oil level display is correct.

WARNING

Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) appears as shown in the illustration below. The level must never be above **MAX** or below **MIN**, as this could lead to engine damage.

WARNING

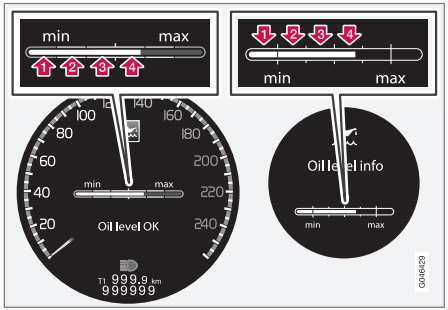
Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

Measuring the oil level, 5-cyl. diesel

If the oil level must be checked then it should be carried out in accordance with the following sequence.

1. Activate key position **II**; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).
2. Rotate the thumbwheel on the left-hand stalk switch to position **Oil level**.
   > Information is then displayed on the engine's oil level; see the following illustration, which shows the message and graphic in the display. The left-hand display is shown in the digital combined instrument panel and the right-hand in the analogue.

   For more information on menu navigation, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 106).



The figures 1-4 represent filling level. Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) is shown. Recommended filling level is 4.

Related information

- Engine oil - general (p. 363)

Coolant - level

The coolant cools the internal combustion engine to the correct operating temperature. The heat that is transferred from the engine to the coolant can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

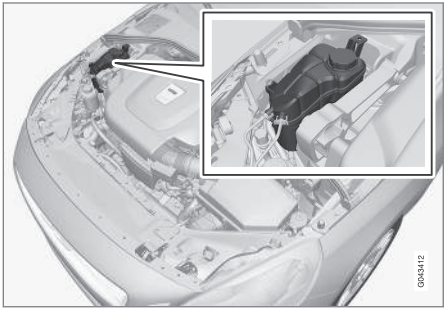
Checking the level

The coolant level must lie between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the expansion tank. If the cooling system is not filled sufficiently, excessively high temperatures could occur, causing a risk of damage to the engine.

NOTE

Check the coolant level regularly when the engine is cold.

Filling



When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

If there is coolant under the car, if there is coolant smoke, or if more than 2 litres have been filled, always call for recovery to avoid the risk of engine damage when starting due to a defective cooling system.

WARNING

Coolant can be very hot. If the coolant requires topping up when the engine is at operating temperature, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to gently release the overpressure.

IMPORTANT

- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Ensure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Mix the coolant with approved quality tap water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- When changing coolant/replacing cooling system components, flush the cooling system clean with approved quality tap water or flush with ready-mixed coolant.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.

For capacities and for standards regarding water quality; see Coolant - grade and volume (p. 422).

Brake and clutch fluid - level

Brake and clutch fluid level should be between the reservoir **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

Checking the level

Brake and clutch fluid have a common reservoir. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks that are visible inside the reservoir. Check the level regularly.

Change the brake fluid every other year or at every other regular service.

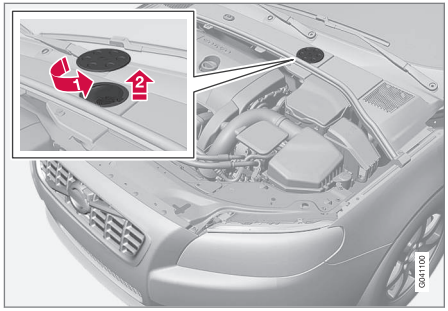
The fluid should be changed annually on cars driven in conditions requiring hard, frequent braking, such as driving in mountains or tropical climates with high humidity.

For capacities and recommended brake fluid grade, see Brake fluid - grade and volume (p. 424).

WARNING

If the brake fluid is under the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. Volvo recommends that the reason for the loss of brake fluid is investigated by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Filling



The fluid reservoir is located on the driver's side.

The fluid reservoir is protected under the cover over the cold zone in the engine compartment. The round cover must be removed first before the reservoir cap can be reached.

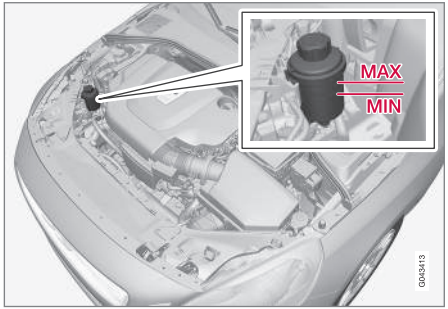
1. Turn and open the cover located on the covering.
2. Unscrew the reservoir cap and fill the fluid. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks, which are located on the inside of the reservoir.

IMPORTANT

Do not forget to refit the cap.

Power steering fluid - level

Cars with 4-cyl. engine do not have power steering fluid. For cars with another engine, the level of the power steering fluid must be between the reservoir's **MIN** and **MAX** marks. The fluid does not need to be changed.



IMPORTANT

Keep the area around the power steering fluid reservoir clean when checking. The cover must not be opened.

Check the level frequently. The fluid does not require changing. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

For recommended fluid grade, see Power steering fluid - grade (p. 424).

WARNING

If there is a fault in the power steering system or if the engine is switched off and the car has to be towed, the steering is much heavier than normal. Read about what applies for towing (p. 316).

Climate control system - fault tracing and repair

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Fault tracing and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light must be used during leak detection.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Cars with R134a refrigerant

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Related information

- Volvo service programme (p. 356)

Lamp replacement - general

Several of the car's bulbs can be replaced by the driver. For replacement of LED lamps and xenon lamps, please contact a workshop.

The bulbs are specified (p. 377). The following list contains locations of bulbs and other light sources that are specialised, such as LED[6]

6 LED (Light Emitting Diode)

lamps, or are unsuitable for changing for some other reason, except at a workshop[7]:

- active xenon headlamps - ABL (xenon lamps)
- daytime running lights/position lamps, front
- Cornering lights
- side direction indicators, door mirrors
- approach lighting, door mirrors
- Interior lighting apart from Courtesy lighting front
- Position lamps, rear
- Side marker lamps.

WARNING

On cars with xenon headlamps, the replacement of xenon lamps must be carried out at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Working with xenon lamps demands extreme caution because the headlamp is equipped with a high voltage unit.

WARNING

The car's electrical system must be in key position **0** for bulb replacement; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

NOTE

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 371)
- Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps (p. 375)
- Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting (p. 376)
- Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area (p. 376)
- Lamp replacement - number plate lighting (p. 376)

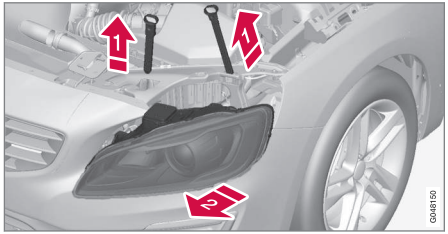
[7] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamp replacement - headlamps

All of the headlamp bulbs are replaced via the engine compartment. First loosen and remove the whole headlamp.

Removing the headlamp

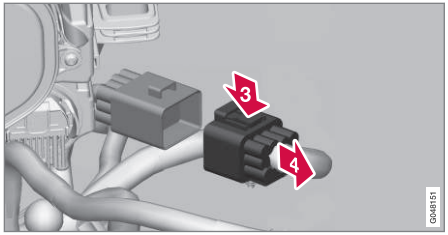
Set the car's electrical system in key position **0**, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).



1. Pull out the headlamp's locking pins.
2. Release the headlamp by alternately tilting and pulling it out.

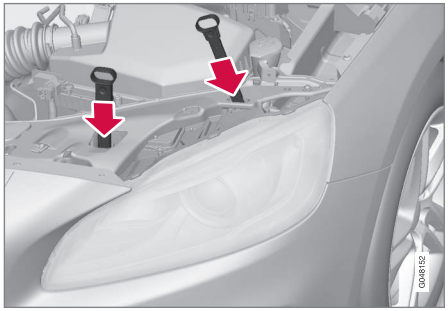
IMPORTANT

Do not pull the electrical cable, only the connector.



3. Detach the headlamp connector by pressing down the clip with your thumb.
4. At the same time, guide out the connector with your other hand.
5. Lift out the headlamp and place it on a soft surface to avoid scratching the lens.
6. Replace the bulb in question.

Securing the headlamp



1. Plug in the connector, a clicking sound should be heard.
2. Reinstall the headlamp and locking pins. The short pin is fitted closest to the radiator grille. Check that they are firmly inserted.
3. Check the lighting.

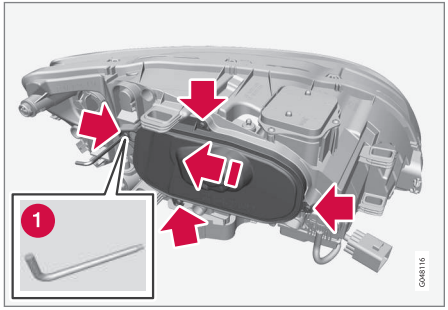
The headlamp must be mounted and the connector firmly connected before the lighting is switched on or the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - general (p. 369)
- Lamp replacement - cover for main/dipped beam bulbs (p. 372)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - cover for main/ dipped beam bulbs

Main/dipped beam bulbs are accessed by releasing the headlamp's larger cover.



Before starting to replace a bulb, see Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 371).

1. Unscrew the cover's four screws using a Torx tool, size T20 (1). They should not be loosened completely. (3 - 4 turns are sufficient.)
2. Slide the cover to one side.
3. Remove the cover.

Reinstall the cover in reverse order.

Related information

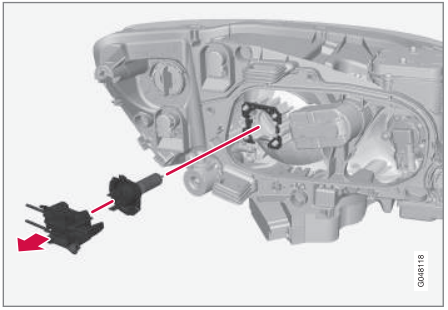
- Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 371)
- Lamp replacement - dipped beam (p. 372)
- Lamp replacement - main beam (p. 373)
- Lamp replacement - extra main beam (p. 374)

Lamp replacement - dipped beam

The dipped beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

NOTE

Applies to cars with halogen headlamps.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 371).
2. Remove the cover (p. 372).
3. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
4. Detach the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. The guide pin on the lamp should be straight up when it is fitted and a clicking sound should be heard when it clicks into place.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

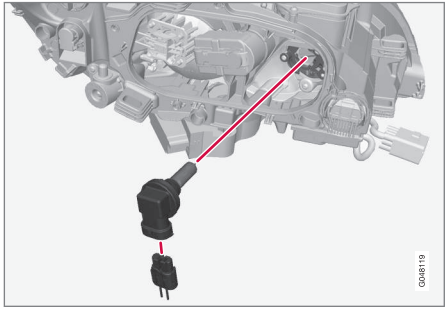
- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - main beam

The main beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

NOTE

Applies to cars with halogen headlamps.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 371).
2. Remove the cover (p. 372).
3. Detach the bulb by turning anticlockwise and then pulling straight out.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb and align it in the socket and turn clockwise in order to secure it. It can only be secured in one position.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

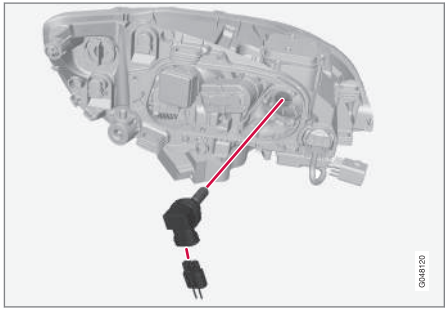
- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - extra main beam

The extra main beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

NOTE

Applies to cars with Xenon headlamps*.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 371).
2. Remove the cover (p. 372).
3. Detach the bulb by turning anticlockwise and then pulling straight out.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb and align it in the socket and turn clockwise in order to secure it. It can only be secured in one position.

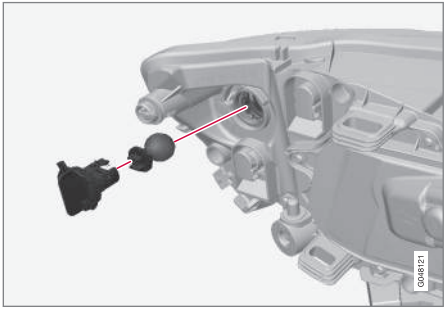
Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - direction indicators front

The direction indicator lamp is fitted inside the headlamp's smaller cover.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 371).
2. Detach the cover by pulling it straight out.
3. Pull the bulb holder in order to extract the bulb.
4. Press and simultaneously turn the bulb anti-clockwise in order to detach it.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

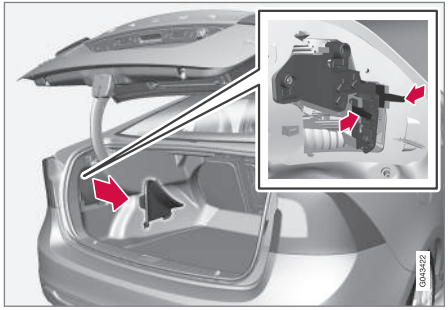
* Option/accessory.

Lamp replacement - rear lamp

Lamps in the rear lamp cluster are replaced from inside the cargo area.

The bulb for the reversing lamp is located behind the panel in the boot lid.

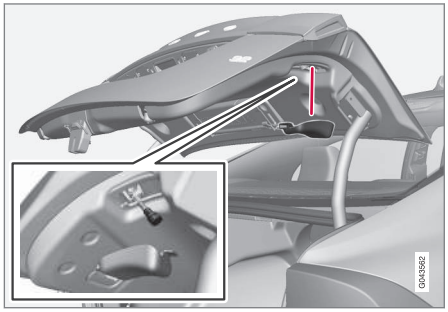
Lamp housing, rear



The bulbs in the rear light cluster are replaced from inside the cargo area (not the LED lamps).

1. Remove the covers in the left/right-hand panel to access the bulbs. The bulbs are located in a bulb holder.
2. Press the catches together and pull out the bulb holder.
3. Remove the blown bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
4. Fit a new bulb, press down and turn clockwise.
5. Press the bulb holder into place and refit the cover.

Reversing lamp



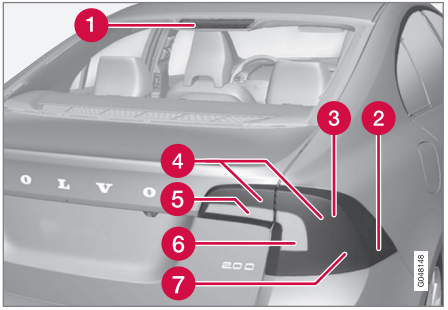
1. Open the panel in the boot lid.
2. Detach the bulb holder by turning it anti-clockwise.
3. Remove the blown bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
4. Fit a new bulb, press down and turn clockwise.
5. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps (p. 375)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps

The overview shows the location of the lamps at the rear.



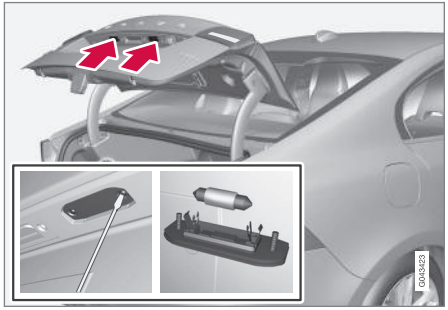
1. Brake light (LED)
2. Side marker lamps (LED)
3. Brake light (p. 375)
4. Position lamps (LED)
5. Reversing lamp (p. 375)
6. Indicator (p. 375)
7. Fog lamp (p. 375)

Related information

- Lamp replacement - general (p. 369)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - number plate lighting

The number plate lighting is located under the boot lid handle.



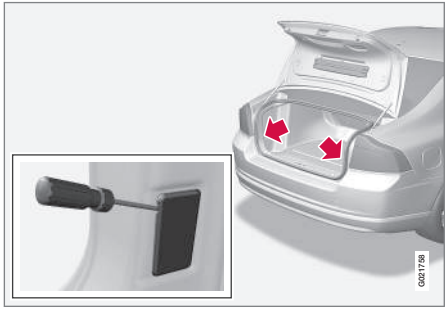
1. Remove the screws with a screwdriver.
2. Carefully detach the whole bulb housing and withdraw it.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Refit the whole bulb housing and screw it into place.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area

The cargo area lighting is positioned on both sides of the boot lid opening.



1. Insert a screwdriver and gently prize so that the lamp housing comes loose.
2. Replace the bulb.
3. Check that the bulb illuminates and press back the lamp housing.

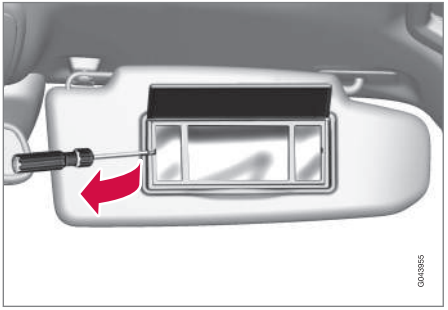
Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting

The vanity mirror's lamps are fitted inside the lamp lenses.

Removal of lamp lens



1. Insert a screwdriver under the lamp lens and gently prize up the lug on the edge.
2. Carefully detach and lift aside the lamp lens.
3. Use needle-nose pliers to pull the bulb straight out to the side and replace with a new one. Note! - Do not squeeze the bulb too hard with the pliers. Otherwise, the bulb glass could then break.

Attaching the lamp lens

1. Refit the lamp lens.
2. Press it into place.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 377)

Lamps - specifications

The specifications apply to bulbs. For replacement of LED lamps and xenon lamps, please contact a workshop.

Lighting	W[A]	Type
Dipped beam, halogen	55	H7 LL
Main beam, halogen	65	H9
Extra main beam, ABL	65	H9
Front direction indicators	24	PY24W
Courtesy lighting front	3	T10 Socket W2.1x9.5d
Glovebox lighting	5	Socket SV8.5 Length 43 mm
Vanity mirror lighting	1.2	T5 Socket W2x4.6d
Cargo area lighting	10	Socket SV8.5 Length 38 mm
Number plate lighting	5	C5W LL
Direction indicators, rear	21	PY21W LL
Brake light	21	P21W LL
Reversing lamp	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[A] Watt

Related information

- Lamp replacement - general (p. 369)

Wiper blades

The windscreen wiper blades must be in service position when they are to be replaced.

Service position

Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (for scraping off ice from the windscreen, for example) they must be in service position.

IMPORTANT

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

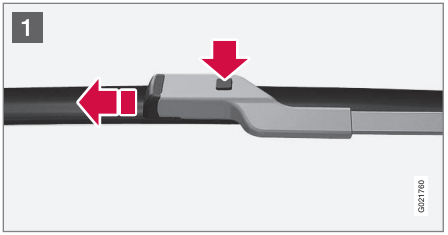
1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch[8] and briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I**. For detailed information on key positions, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 77).
2. Briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button again to set the car's electrical system in key position **0**.
3. Within 3 seconds, move the right stalk switch up and hold it in position for approx. 1 second.
   > The wipers then move to standing straight up.

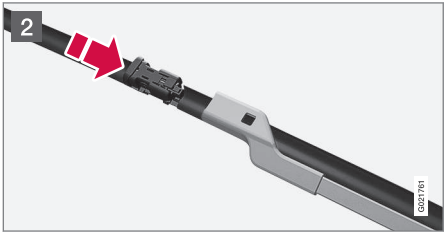
The wipers return to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I** (or when the car is started).

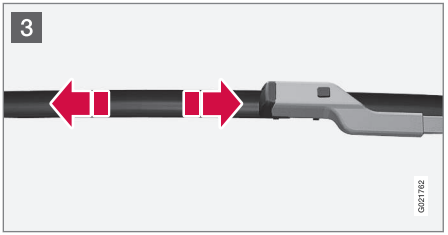
IMPORTANT

If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the wipers are activated. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

Replacing the wiper blades



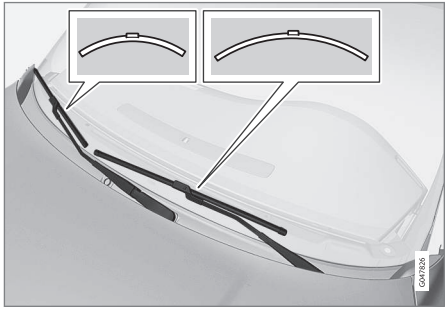




8 Not required in cars with keyless start and lock system.

1. Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
2. Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
3. Check that the blade is firmly installed.
4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

The wipers return from service position to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I** (or when the car is started).



NOTE

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

Cleaning

For cleaning wiper blades and windscreen, see Car wash (p. 401).

IMPORTANT

Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

Related information

- Washer fluid - filling (p. 379)

Washer fluid - filling

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps and windows. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is below freezing point.

Topping up the washer fluid takes place by opening the blue cap.

The windscreen and headlamp washers share a common reservoir.

NOTE

When there is approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remaining in the reservoir, a message to top up the washer fluid will be shown in the combined instrument panel, together with the symbol .

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo - with frost protection during cold weather and below freezing point.

IMPORTANT

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

IMPORTANT

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid freezing in the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.4 litres.
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 4.0 litres.

Related information

- Wiper blades (p. 378)
- Wipers and washers (p. 97)
- Bonnet - opening and closing (p. 361)

Starter battery - general

The starter battery is used to drive the starter motor and other electrical equipment in the car.

The starter battery is a traditional 12 V battery.

The service life and function of the starter battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions, etc.

- Never disconnect the starter battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the starter battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity[A] - CCA[B] (A)	720
Size, L×W×H (mm)	278×175×190
Capacity (Ah)	70

[A] In accordance with EN standard.
[B] Cold Cranking Amperes.

IMPORTANT

When replacing the starter battery in cars with the Start/Stop function, a battery of EFB[9] type must be fitted.

IMPORTANT

When replacing the support battery, a battery of AGM[10] type must be fitted.

IMPORTANT

If the starter battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

NOTE

The starter battery's container size should be consistent with the original battery's dimensions.

9 Enhanced Flooded Battery.
10 Absorbed Glass Mat.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

IMPORTANT

When charging the starter battery or the support battery (p. 384), only use a modern battery charger with controlled charging voltage. Fast charging function must not be used since it may damage the battery.

IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for infotainment system may be temporarily disengaged, and/or the message in the combined instrument panel's information display about the starter battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external starter battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external starter battery or battery charger - only the **car chassis** may be used as the grounding point.

See Jump starting with another battery (p. 273) for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

NOTE

The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.

The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

Related information

- Battery - symbols (p. 382)
- Starter battery - replacement (p. 382)

Battery - symbols

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

Symbols on the batteries

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.
	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

NOTE

An expended starter battery or support battery must be recycled in an environmentally safe manner since it contains lead.

Related information

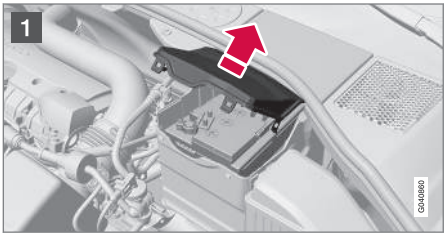
- Starter battery - general (p. 380)
- Battery - Start/Stop (p. 384)

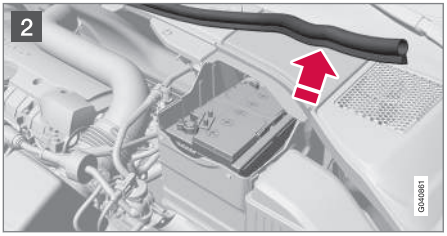
Starter battery - replacement

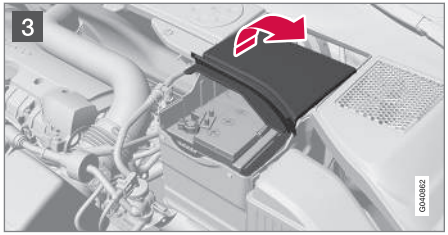
The starter battery in the car can be replaced without the help of a workshop.

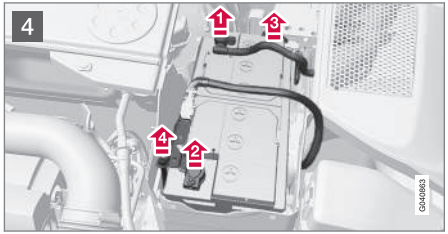
Removal

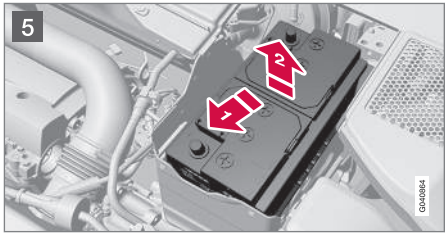
First of all: Take the remote control key from the ignition switch and wait at least 5 minutes before any electrical connections are touched - this is because the car's electrical system needs to store the necessary information to control modules.











1 Open the clips on the front cover and remove the cover.

2 Release the rubber moulding so that the rear cover is free.

3 Remove the rear cover by screwing one quarter turn and lifting it away.

WARNING

Connect and remove the positive and negative cables in the correct order.

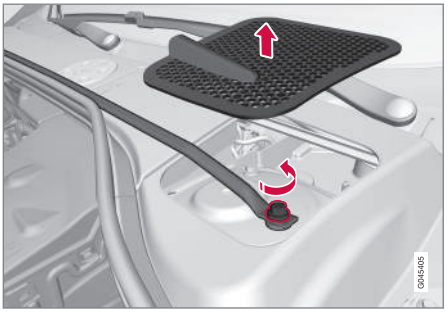
4

1. Detach the black negative cable.
2. Detach the red positive cable.
3. Detach the ventilation hose from the battery.
4. Loosen the screw holding the battery clamp.

5

1. Move the battery aside.
2. Lift it up.

Cross-stay on the R-Design*



Cross-stay and plenum chamber cover.

Cars with R-Design have a cross-stay that must be removed before the starter battery can be replaced.

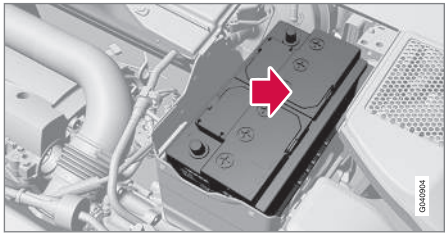
1. Remove the plenum chamber covers on the right and left-hand sides. Prize carefully with a plastic knife or similar.
2. Loosen and remove the screws (one on the right and one on the left-hand side) that hold the cross-stay.
3. Remove the cross-stay.
   > Now the starter battery can be removed in accordance with the previous section.

- Fitting the cross-stay takes place in the reverse order.

NOTE

Tighten the screws to 30 Nm. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

Fitting



1. Lower the battery into the battery box.
2. Move the battery inward and to the side until it reaches the rear edge of the box.
3. Tighten the clamp that holds the battery.
4. Connect the ventilation hose.
   > Check that it is correctly connected to both battery and outlet in the body.
5. Connect the red positive cable.
6. Connect the black negative cable.
7. Press in the rear cover. (See earlier section "Removal".)
8. Fit the rubber moulding. (See "Removal".)
9. Align the front cover and secure it with the clips. (See "Removal".)

For more information on the car's starter battery, see Starter battery - general (p. 380) and Jump starting with another battery (p. 273).

Battery - Start/Stop

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with a support battery in addition to the starter battery.

Cars with the Start/Stop function are equipped with two 12 V batteries - one extra powerful battery for starting and one support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's starting sequence.

For more information on the Start/Stop function, see Start/Stop* (p. 282).

For more information on the car's starter battery, see Jump starting with another battery (p. 273).

The following table shows specifications for the starter battery and support battery respectively in cars with Start/Stop function.

* Option/accessory.

	Battery	
	Start, 12 V	Support, 12 V
Cold start capacity[A] - CCA[B] (A)	720[C] 760[D]	Left-hand drive car: 120[E] 170[F] Right-hand drive car: 120
Size, L×W×H (mm)	278×175×190	Left-hand drive car: 150×90×106[E] 150×90×130[F] Right-hand drive car: 150×90×106

	Battery	
	Start, 12 V	Support, 12 V
Capacity (Ah)	70	Left-hand drive car: 8[E] 10[F] Right-hand drive car: 8

A In accordance with EN standard.
B Cold Cranking Amperes.
C Manual gearbox.
D Automatic gearbox.
E Manual gearbox in combination with Start/Stop function that only auto-stops when the car is completely stationary.
F Others.

IMPORTANT

When replacing the starter battery in cars with the Start/Stop function, a battery of EFB[11] type or stronger must be installed.

When replacing the support battery, a battery of AGM[12] type must be fitted.

NOTE

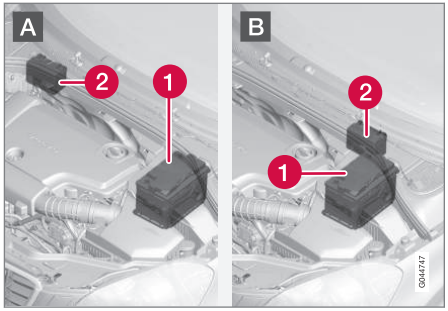
- The higher the current take-off in the car, the more the alternator must be working and the batteries charging = Increased fuel consumption.
- When the capacity of the starter battery has fallen below the lowest permissible level then the Start/Stop function is disengaged.

Temporarily reduced Start/Stop function due to high current take-off means:

- The engine starts automatically[13] without the driver depressing the clutch pedal (manual gearbox).
- The engine starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot off the foot brake pedal (automatic gearbox).

11 Enhanced Flooded Battery.
12 Absorbed Glass Mat.
13 Automatic starting can only take place if the gear lever is in neutral position.

Location of the batteries



A: Left-hand drive car. B: Right-hand drive car.

1 Starter battery[14]

2 Support battery

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal battery that is used for starting. A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the Start/Stop function may temporarily cease to work after the connection of an external battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the **car chassis** may be used as the grounding point.

See Jump starting with another battery (p. 273) for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

NOTE

If the starter battery has been discharged so much that the car has no normal electrical functions and the engine is then jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/Stop function will continue to be activated. If the Start/Stop function then auto-stops the engine shortly after, there is a great risk that engine auto-start will fail due to insufficient battery capacity, because the battery has not had the opportunity to recharge.

If the car has been jump-started, or if there is insufficient time to charge the battery with a battery charger, the recommendation is to temporarily deactivate the Start/Stop function until the battery has been recharged by the car. In an outside temperature of +15 °C, the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3-4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery using an external battery charger.

For more information on charging the starter battery, see Starter battery - general (p. 380).

Related information

- Battery - symbols (p. 382)

14 See Starter battery - general (p. 380) for detailed description of the starter battery.

Electrical system

The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator.

The size, type and performance of the starter battery depend on the car's equipment and function.

IMPORTANT

If the starter battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

Related information

- Starter battery - replacement (p. 382)
- Starter battery - general (p. 380)

Fuses - general

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

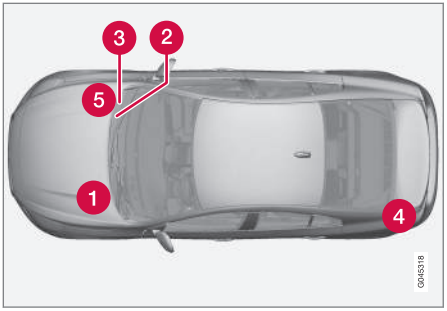
Changing

1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.
3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

Location of central electrical units



Central electrical unit locations in a left-hand drive car. In a right-hand drive car the central electrical units under the glovebox change sides.

1. Engine compartment
2. Under the glovebox
3. Under the glovebox
4. Cargo area
5. Engine compartment cold zone (only Start/Stop)

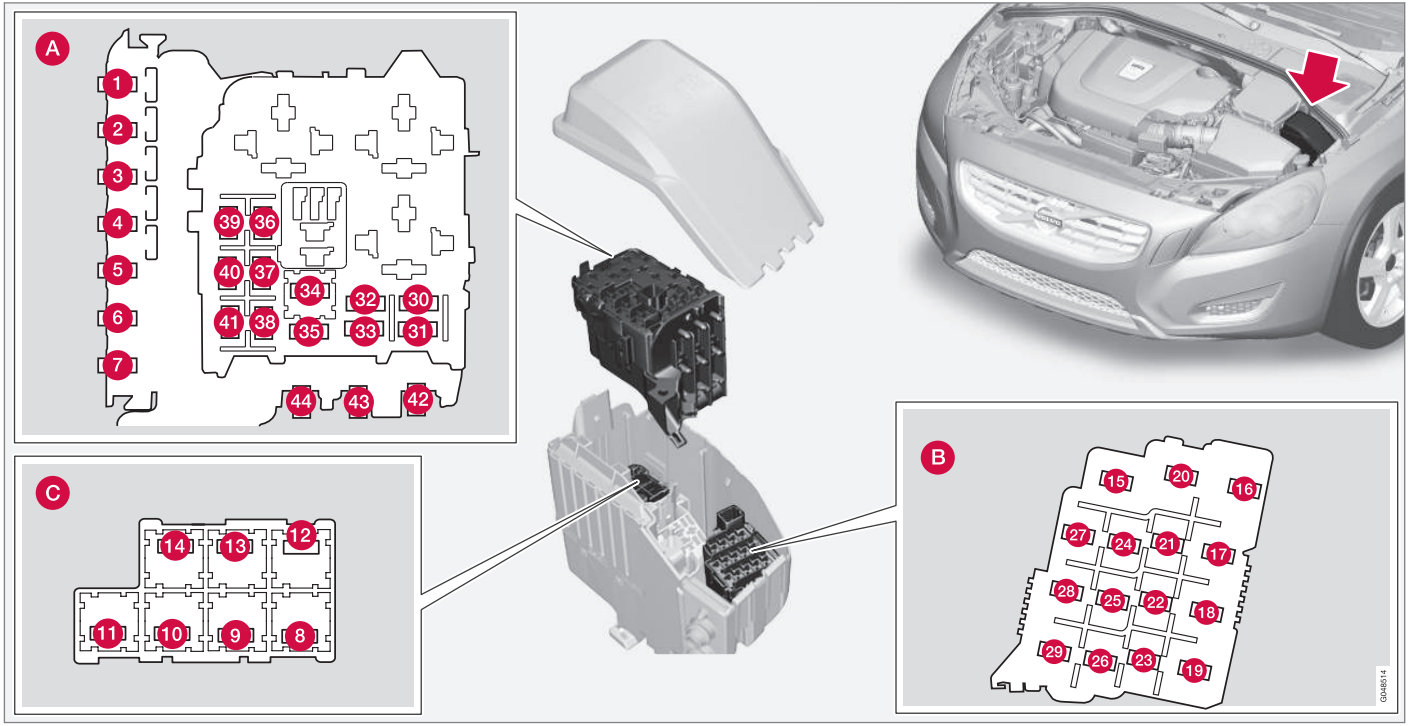
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 389)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 393)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 395)

- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 397)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399)

Fuses - in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



General fuses, engine compartment

On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

Positions (see preceding illustration)

A Engine compartment, upper

B Engine compartment, front

C Engine compartment, lower

These fuses are all located in the engine compartment box. The fuses in (C) are located under (A).

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

- Fuses 1-7 and 42-44 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop[15].
- Fuses 8-15 and 34 are of the "JCASE" type and should be replaced by a workshop[15].
- Fuses 16-33 and 35-41 are of the "Mini Fuse" type.

	Function	A[A]
1	Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox[B]	50
2	Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox	50
3	Primary fuse for central electrical unit in cargo area[B]	60
4	Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox	60
5	Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox[B]	60
6	-	-
7	Electric additional heater*[B]	100
8	Heated windscreen*[B] , left-hand side	40
9	Windscreen wipers	30
10	Parking heater*	25
11	Ventilation fan[C]	40

	Function	A[A]
12	Heated windscreen*[B] , right-hand side	40
13	ABS pump	40
14	ABS valves	20
15	Headlamp washers*	20
16	Headlamp levelling*; Active Xenon headlamps - ABL*	10
17	Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox	20
18	ABS	5
19	Adjustable steering force*	5
20	Engine control module; Transmission control module; Airbags	10
21	Heated washer nozzles*	10
22	-	-
23	Headlamp control	5
24	-	-

15 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

	Function	A[A]
25	-	-
26	-	-
27	Relay coils	5
28	Auxiliary lamps*	20
29	Horn	15
30	Relay coil in main relay for engine management system (4-cyl.); Engine control module (4-cyl.)	5
	Relay coil in main relay for engine management system (5-cyl. diesel); Engine control module (5-cyl. diesel)	10
31	Transmission control module	15
32	Supporting coolant pump (4-cyl. diesel)	15
33	Relay coils in central electrical unit in engine compartment cold zone Start/Stop	5
34	-	-

	Function	A[A]
35	Glow control module (5-cyl. diesel)	10
	Engine control module (4-cyl.)	20
36	Engine control module (5-cyl. diesel)	15
	Engine control module (4-cyl.)	20
37	Mass air flow sensor (4-cyl.); Thermostat(4-cyl. petrol); EVAP valve (4-cyl. petrol); Cooling pump for EGR (4-cyl. diesel)	10
	Mass airflow meter (5-cyl. diesel); Control valves (5-cyl. diesel)	15
38	Solenoid clutch A/C (5-cyl. diesel); Valves (5-cyl. diesel); Oil level sensor	10
	Valves (4-cyl.); Oil pump (4-cyl. petrol); Lambda-sond, centre (4-cyl. petrol); Lambda-sond, rear (4-cyl. diesel)	15

	Function	A[A]
39	Lambda-sond, front (4-cyl.); Lambda-sond, rear (4-cyl. petrol) Lambda-sonds (5-cyl. diesel); Control module, radiator roller cover (5-cyl. diesel)	15
40	Ignition coils (4-cyl. petrol)	15
	Diesel filter heater (diesel)	20
41	Solenoid clutch A/C (4-cyl.); Glow control module (4-cyl. diesel); Oil pump (4-cyl. diesel)	7.5
	Crankcase ventilation heater (5-cyl. diesel); Oil pump automatic gearbox (5-cyl. diesel Start/Stop)	10
42	Coolant pump (4-cyl. petrol)	50
	Glow plugs (diesel)	70

	Function	A[A]
43	Cooling fan (petrol)	60/80[D]
	Cooling fan (diesel)	80
44	Power steering	100

A Ampere
B For cars with the Start/Stop function this fuse location is empty - see instead Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399).
C For cars with the Start/Stop function this fuse location is empty - see instead Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399).
D Depending on cooling fan variant.

Related information

- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 393)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 395)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 397)

Fuses - under glovebox

Fuses under the glovebox protect the infotainment system and seat functions, amongst other things.

Positions

	Function	A[A]
1	Primary fuse for audio control module*; Primary fuse for fuses 16-20: Infotainment	40
2	Windscreen washers	25
3	-	-
4	-	-
5	-	-
6	Door handles, keyless system*	5
7	-	-
8	Control panel, driver's door	20
9	Control panel, front passenger door	20
10	Control panel, rear passenger door, right	20
11	Control panel, rear passenger door, left	20
12	Keyless system*	7.5
13	Power seat, driver's side*	20

	Function	A[A]
14	Power seat, passenger side*	20
15	-	-
16	Infotainment Control Module or Screen[B]	5
17	Audio control unit (amplifier)*; TV*; Digital radio*	10
18	Audio control module or Control module Sensus[B]	15
19	Telematics*; Bluetooth*	5
20	-	-
21	Sunroof*; Interior lighting roof; Climate sensor*	5
22	12 V socket, tunnel console	15
23	Seat heating, rear right*	15
24	Seat heating, rear left*	15
25	Electric additional heater*	5
26	Seat heating, front passenger side	15
27	Seat heating, front driver's side	15

	Function	A[A]
28	Parking assistance*; Parking camera*; BLIS*	5
29	AWD control module*	15
30	Active chassis Four-C*	10

A Ampere
B Certain model variants.

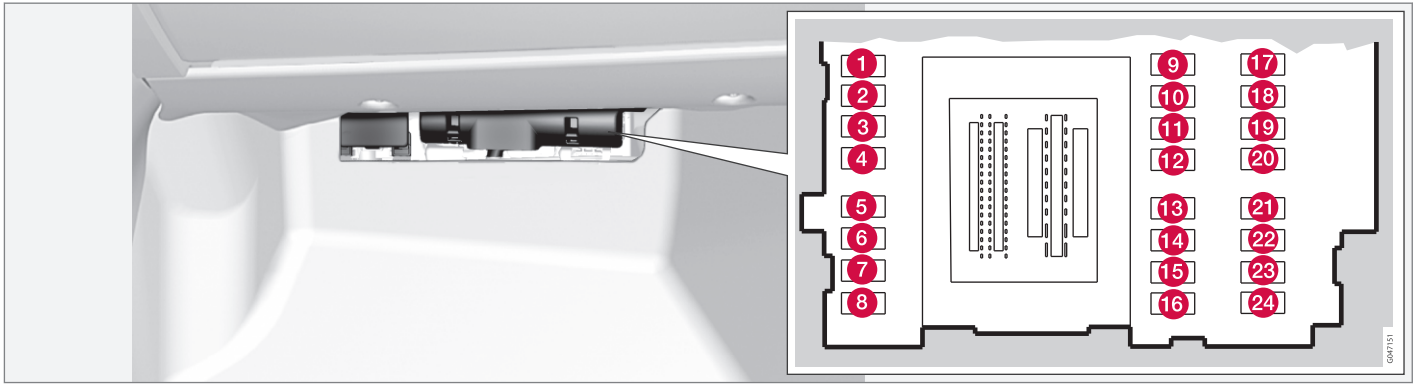
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 389)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 395)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 397)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399)

* Option/accessory.

Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox

Fuses in the control module under the glovebox protect airbag and collision warning system functions, amongst other things.



Positions

	Function	AA
1	-	-
2	-	-
3	Interior lighting; Driver's door control panel, power windows; Power seats*	7.5
4	Combined instrument panel	5
5	Adaptive cruise control, ACC*; collision warning system*	10
6	Interior lighting; Rain sensor*	7.5
7	Steering wheel module	7.5
8	Central locking system, fuel filler flap	10
9	Heated steering wheel*	15
10	Heated windscreen*	15
11	Unlocking, boot lid	10

	Function	A[A]
12	Folding head restraint*	10
13	Fuel pump	20
14	Movement detector for alarm*; Climate panel	5
15	Steering lock	15
16	Siren*; Data link connector OBDII	5
17	-	-
18	Airbags	10
19	Collision warning system*	5
20	Accelerator pedal sensor; Dimming interior rearview mirror*; Seat heating, rear*	7.5
21	Infotainment control module (Performance); Audio (Performance)	15
22	Brake light	5
23	Sunroof*	20
24	Immobiliser	5

A Ampere

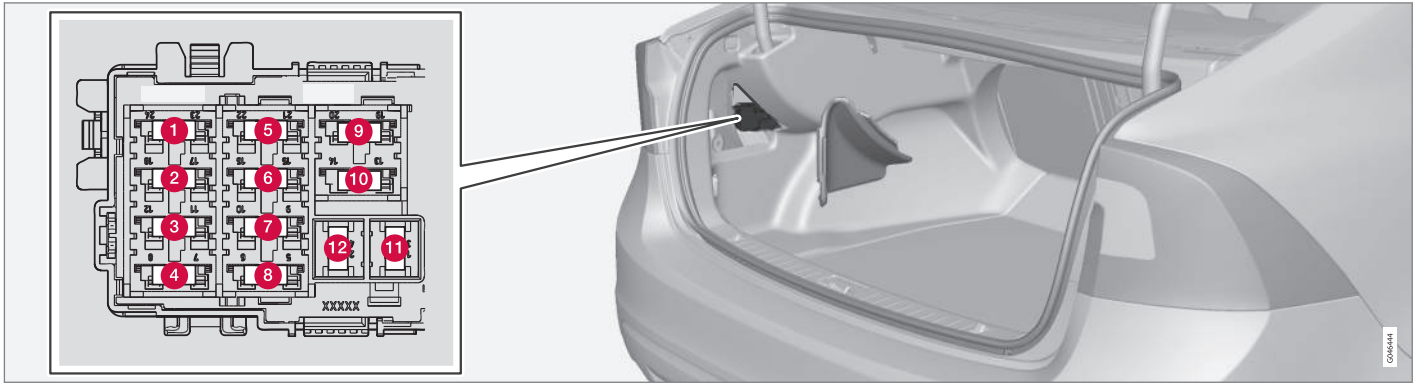
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 389)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 393)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 397)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399)

* Option/accessory.

Fuses - in cargo area

Fuses in the cargo area protect the electric parking brake, amongst other things.



Positions

	Function	A[A]
1	Electric parking brake, left	30
2	Electric parking brake, right	30
3	Rear window defroster	30
4	Trailer socket 2*	15
5	-	-
6	12 V socket, cargo area	15
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	-	-
10	-	-
11	Trailer socket 1*	40
12	-	-

A Ampere

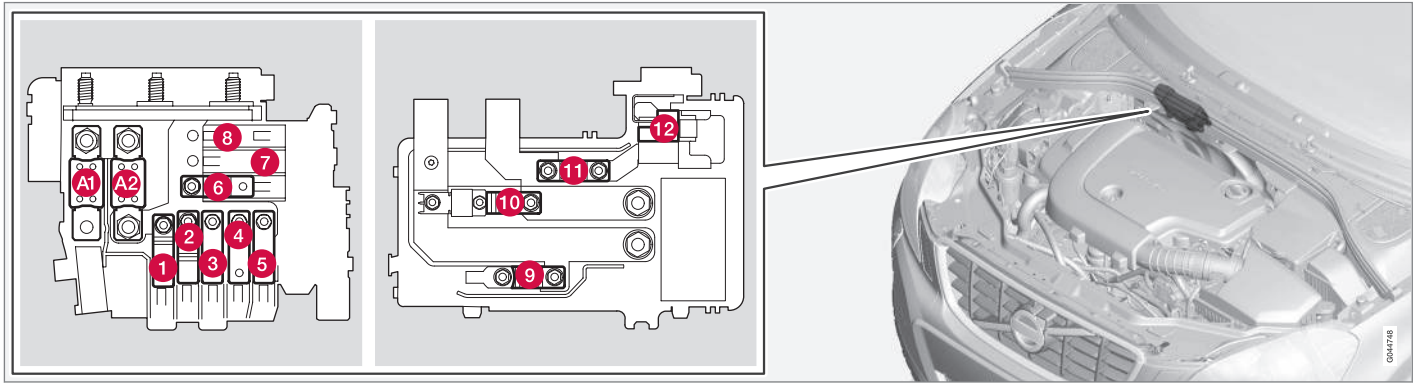
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 389)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 393)

- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 395)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 399)

Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone

Fuses in the engine compartment's cold zone are fitted in cars with the Start/Stop function.



- Fuses A1 and A2 are of the "MEGA Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop[16].
- Fuses 1-11 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop[16].
- Fuse 12 is of the "Mini Fuse" type.

For more information on Start/Stop - see Start/Stop* (p. 282).

Positions

	Function	A[A]
A1	Main fuse for central electrical unit in the engine compartment	175
A2	Main fuse for central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox, relay/fuse box under the glovebox, central electrical unit in cargo area	175
1	Electric additional heater*	100

16 An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	A[A]
2	Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox	50
3	Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox	60
4	Heated windscreen*	60
5	Primary fuse for central electrical unit in cargo area	60
6	Ventilation fan	40
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	Start relay	30
10	-	-
11	Support battery	70
12	Central electronic module (CEM) - reference voltage support battery	5

[A] Ampere

Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 389)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 393)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 395)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 397)

* Option/accessory.

Car wash

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean as the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Handwashing

- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain substances that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody.
- Rinse the whole car until the loose dirt has been removed in order to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that the surfaces must not then be warmed up by the sun!
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing water droplets to dry in strong sunlight then the risk of water stains that may need to be polished away is reduced.

WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, when refuelling for example.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Automatic car washes

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Washing the car by hand is recommended to achieve a good result, or to supplement automatic car washes with washing by hand.

NOTE

The car must only be washed by hand over the first few months. This is because the paint is more delicate when it is new.

High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm to the surface of the car. Do not spray directly onto the locks.

Testing the brakes

WARNING

Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Lightly depress the brake pedal now and then when driving long distances in rain or slush. The heat from the friction causes the brake linings to warm up and dry. Do the same thing after starting in very damp or cold weather.

Wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

For cleaning:

- Set the wiper blades to the service position, see Wiper blades (p. 378).

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, such as glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

The frames around the side windows, the car's roof rails and the door frames at the windows* are produced in anodised aluminium. This means that they should only be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5. This is in order to avoid discolouration.

Parts that should be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Avoid washing the car with cleaning agent with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. This may result in discolouration of anodised aluminium parts such as roof rack and around the side windows.

Never use metal polishing agent on anodised aluminium parts, this can result in discolouration and destroy the surface treatment.

Rims

Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

After washing, discolouration at the base of the spokes may remain due to metal dust from the brake discs attaching in the wheel rim's paint. Paint cleaner works in many cases, with very fine polishing using a soft cloth.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

Related information

- Polishing and waxing (p. 403)
- Cleaning the interior (p. 404)
- Water and dirt-repellent coating (p. 403)

* Option/accessory.

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection.

The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight.

Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.

Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

IMPORTANT

Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Car wash (p. 401)

Water and dirt-repellent coating

The windows are treated with a surface coating that improves visibility in difficult weather conditions.

Water and dirt-repellent coating*

There is natural wear of the water-repellent coating.

Maintenance:

- Never use products such as car wax, degreaser or similar on glass surfaces as this could ruin their water-repellent properties.
- Take care when cleaning so as not to damage the glass surface.
- To avoid damaging glass surfaces when removing ice – only use plastic ice scrapers.
- Treatment with a special finishing agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended in order to maintain the water-repellent properties on the side windows. This should be used first after three years and then each year.

IMPORTANT

Do not use a metal ice scraper to remove ice from the windows. Use the heating to remove ice from the door mirrors, see Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating (p. 102).

Related information
- Car wash (p. 401)

Rustproofing
The car received a thorough and complete rustproofing at the factory. Parts of the body are made of galvanised sheet metal. The underbody is protected by a wear-resistant anti-corrosion compound. A thin, penetrating rustproofing fluid was sprayed into the exposed members, cavities, closed sections and side doors.

Inspection and maintenance
The car's anti-corrosion protection does not normally need to be maintained, but keeping the car clean always helps to further reduce the risk of corrosion. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must always be avoided on the glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

Related information
- Paint damage (p. 406)

Cleaning the interior
Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and treat stains at once for best results. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

IMPORTANT
- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

Fabric upholstery and ceiling upholstery
Volvo offers a comprehensive fabric care product for fabric upholstery and ceiling upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the properties of the upholstery. The

fabric care product is available for purchase from a Volvo dealer.

Leather upholstery

Volvo's leather upholstery is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes, for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather's protective coating.

To achieve best results, Volvo recommends the cleaning and application of the protective cream once to four times per year (or more if required). The Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available for purchase from a Volvo dealer.

Leather steering wheel

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is recommended for cleaning the leather steering wheel.

Interior plastic, metal and wood parts

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

Seatbelts

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from a Volvo dealer. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

Inlay mats and floor mat

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

WARNING

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats must be cleaned with agents recommended by a Volvo dealer.

Related information

- Car wash (p. 401)

Paint damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rustproofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

Touching up minor paintwork damage

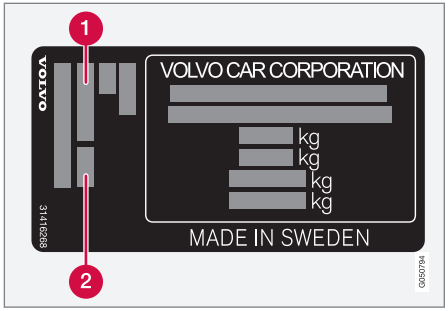
To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

Materials that may be needed

- Primer[17] - for e.g. bumpers, there are special adhesive primers available in spray cans.
- Base coat and clear coat - are available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks[18].
- Masking tape.
- Fine sand paper[17].

Colour code

The label for colour code is located on the car's door pillar and is visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

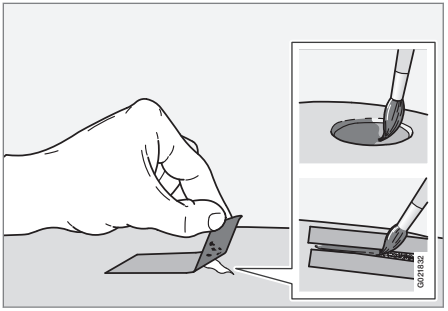


1 Exterior colour code

2 Any secondary exterior colour code

It is important that the correct colour is used. For product label location, see Type designations (p. 410).

Repairing minor paint damage such as stone chips and scratches



Before work is started, the car must be clean and dry as well as at a temperature above 15 °C.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

   If the damage has reached down to a metal surface (sheet steel), it is preferable to use a primer. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used for better results - spray into the spray can's cap and brush thinly.

17 If required.
18 Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). Clean the surface thoroughly and allow to dry.
3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, matchstick or similar. Finish with base coat and clear coat once the primer has dried.
4. For scratches, proceed as above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

Related information

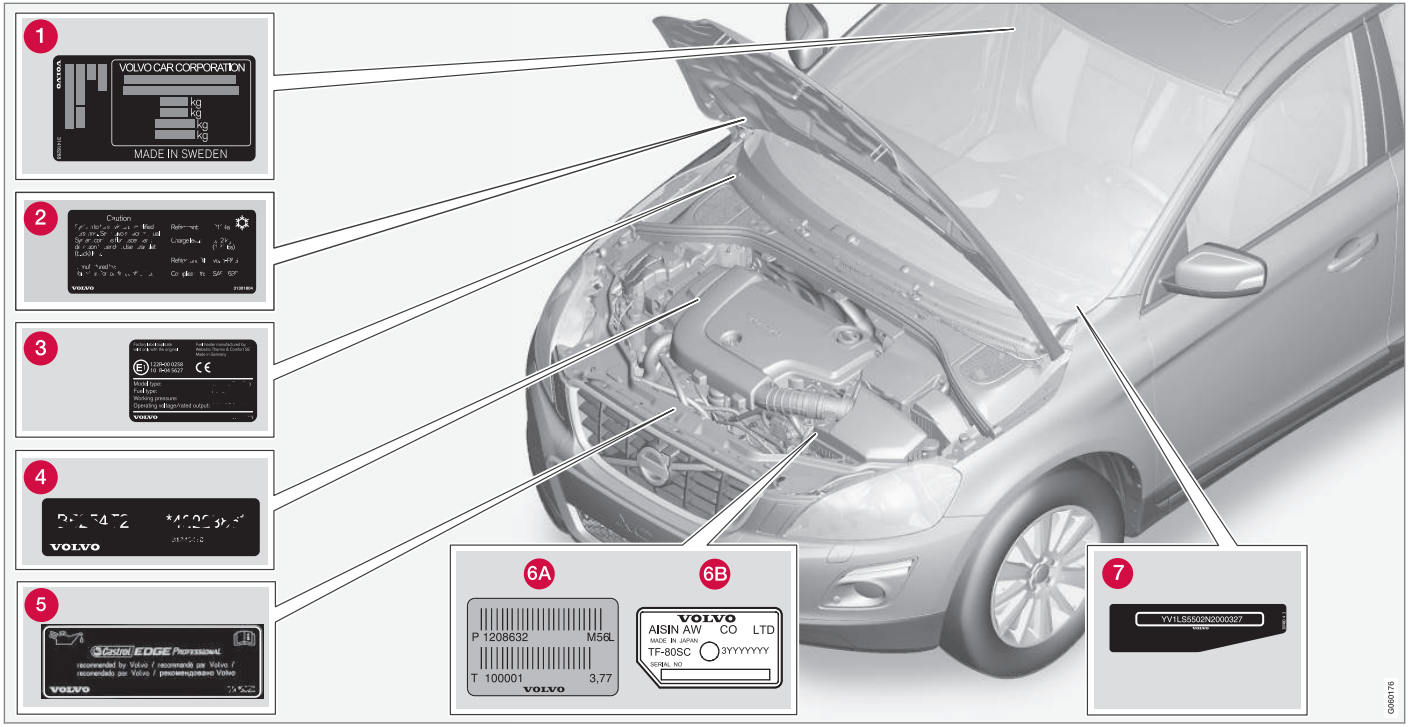
- Rustproofing (p. 404)

SPECIFICATIONS

Type designations

Type designation, vehicle identification number, etc., i.e. information unique to the car, can be read on a label in the car.

Label location



The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on market and model.

Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all

contact with an authorised Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.

1. Decal for type designation, vehicle identification number, permissible maximum weights and code designation for exterior colour and type approval number. The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.
2. Label for A/C system.
3. Label for parking heater.
4. Decal for engine code and the engine's serial number.
5. Label for engine oil.
6. Decal for gearbox type designation and serial number.
   - A Manual gearbox
   - B Automatic gearbox
7. Decal for the car's identification number - VIN (Vehicle Identification Number).

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

NOTE

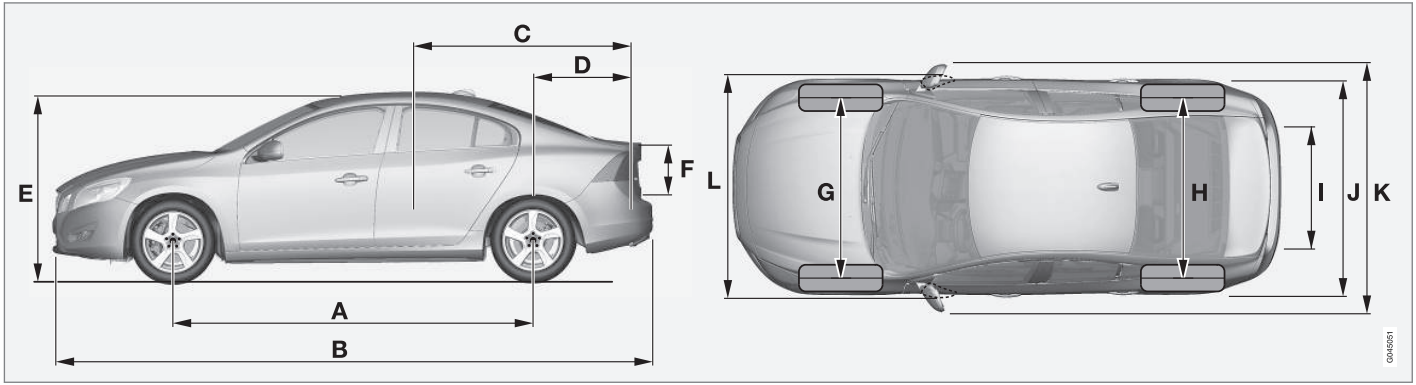
It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Related information

- Weights (p. 414)
- Engine specifications (p. 417)
- Specifications for air conditioning (p. 426)

Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



S60	Dimensions	mm
A	Wheelbase	2776
B	Length	4635
C	Load length, floor, folded rear seat	1749
D	Load length, floor	965
E	Height	1484
F	Load height	492

S60	Dimensions	mm
G	Front track	1588[A]/ 1578[B]
H	Rear track	1585[A]/ 1575[B]
I	Load width, floor	919
J	Width	1866

S60	Dimensions	mm
K	Width including door mirrors	2097
L	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1899

A with 16" wheel
B with 17" wheel

Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (p. 415) (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE

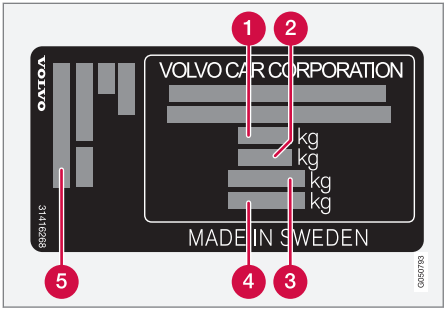
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce load capacity are the different equipment levels (e.g. Kinetic, Momentum, Summum), as well as other accessories such as towbar, load carrier, space box, audio system, auxiliary lamps, GPS, fuel-driven heater, safety grille, carpets, cargo cover, power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



For information on label location, see Type designations (p. 410).

1. Max. gross vehicle weight
2. Max. train weight (car+trailer)
3. Max. front axle load
4. Max. rear axle load
5. Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

Related information

- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 415)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 428)

Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

S60 Engine	Engine code[A]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T2	B4154T5	Automatic, TF-71SC	1500	75
T3	B4204T37	Manual, M66	1600	75
T3	B4154T4	Automatic, TF-71SC	1500	75
T3	B4154T6	Automatic, TF-71SC	1500	75
T4	B4204T19	Manual, M66	1600	75
T4	B4204T19	Automatic, TF-71SC	1600	75
T5	B4204T11	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90
T5	B4204T41	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90
T6	B4204T9	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90
T6 AWD	B4204T9	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90
D2	D4204T8	Manual, M66	1600	75
D2	D4204T20	Automatic, TF-71SC	1600	75
D3	D4204T9	Manual, M66	1600	75
D3	D4204T9	Automatic, TF-71SC	1600	75

S60 Engine	Engine code[A]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
D4	D4204T14	Manual, M66	1800	90
D4	D4204T14	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90
D4 AWD	D5244T21	Automatic, TF-80SD	1800	90
D5	D4204T11	Automatic, TG-81SC	1800	90

[A] Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 410).

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
750	50

Related information

- Weights (p. 414)
- Driving with a trailer* (p. 309)
- Trailer Stability Assist - TSA (p. 315)

* Option/accessory.

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (output etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

S60 Engine	Engine code[A]	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders	Bore (mm)	Stroke (mm)	Swept volume (litres)	Compression ratio
T2	B4154T5	90/5000	122/5000	220/1600-3500	4	82.0	70,9	1,498	10.5:1
T3	B4154T4	112/5000	152/5000	250/1700-4000	4	82.0	70,9	1,498	10.5:1
T3	B4204T37	112/5000	152/5000	250/1300-4000	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	11.3:1
T3	B4154T6	112/5000	152/5000	250/1700-4000	4	82.0	70,9	1,498	8,8:1
T4	B4204T19	140/4700	190/4700	300/1300-4000	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	11.3:1
T5	B4204T11	180/5500	245/5500	350/1500–4800	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	10.8:1
T5	B4204T41	180/5500	245/5500	350/1500–4800	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	8,6:1
T6 / T6 AWD	B4204T9	225/5700	306/5700	400/2100-4800	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	10.3:1
Polestar	B4204T43	270/6000	367/6000	470/3100-5000	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	8,6:1
D2	D4204T8	88/3750	120/3750	280/1500-2250	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	16.0:1
D2	D4204T20	88/3750	120/3750	280/1500-2250	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	16.0:1
D3	D4204T9	110/3750	150/3750	320/1750-3000	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	16.0:1
D4	D4204T14	140/4250	190/4250	400/1750-2500	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	15.8:1
D4 AWD	D5244T21	140/4000	190/4000	440/1500-2750	5	81.0	93.2	2.400	16.5:1
D5	D4204T11	165/4250	225/4250	470/1750-2500	4	82.0	93.2	1,969	15.8:1

[A] Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 410).

Related information

- Coolant - grade and volume (p. 422)
- Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 420)

Engine oil - adverse driving conditions

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level (p. 364) more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C or hotter than +40 °C.

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:

IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 420)
- Engine oil - general (p. 363)

Engine oil - grade and volume

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

S60 Engine	Engine code[A]	Oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)
T2	B4154T5	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	approx. 5.9
T3	B4154T4		approx. 5.9
T3	B4154T6		approx. 5.9

S60 Engine	Engine code[A]	Oil grade	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres)
T3	B4204T37	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	approx. 5.9
T4	B4204T19		approx. 5.9
T5	B4204T11		approx. 5.9
T5	B4204T41		approx. 5.9
T6 / T6 AWD	B4204T9		approx. 5.9
Polestar	B4204T43		approx. 5.4
D2	D4204T8	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20	approx 5.2
D2	D4204T20		approx 5.2
D3	D4204T9		approx 5.2
D4	D4204T14		approx 5.2
D5	D4204T11		approx 5.2
D4 AWD	D5244T21	**Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5** **Viscosity: SAE 0W–30**	approx. 5.9

A Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 410).

Related information

- Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419)
- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 364)

Coolant - grade and volume

Approved coolant volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Prescribed grade: Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water[1], see the packaging.

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

Engine[A]		Volume (litres)
T2	B4154T5	8,3 (8,7[B])
T3	B4154T4	
T3	B4154T6	
T3	B4204T37	
T4	B4204T19	
T5	B4204T11	
T5	B4204T41	
T6 / T6 AWD	B4204T9	
Polestar	B4204T43	

Engine[A]		Volume (litres)
D2	D4204T8	8,9 (9,2[B])
D2	D4204T20	
D3	D4204T9	
D4	D4204T14	
D5	D4204T11	
D4 AWD	D5244T21	8.9

A Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 410).
B Applies to cars with fuel-driven heater.

Related information

- Coolant - level (p. 366)

1 Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.

Transmission fluid - grade and volume

The prescribed transmission fluid and volume for each respective gearbox alternative can be read in the table.

Manual gearbox

Manual gearbox	Volume (litres)	Prescribed transmission fluid
M66	approx. 1.45	BOT 350M3

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox	Volume (litres)	Prescribed transmission fluid
TF-71SC	approx 6.8	AW1
TF-80SD	approx 7.0	AW1
TG-81SC	approx. 6.6[A] approx. 7.5[B]	AW1

A Petrol engines
B Diesel engines

NOTE

The transmission fluid does not need to be changed under normal driving conditions. However, it may be necessary under adverse driving conditions.

Related information

- Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 419)
- Type designations (p. 410)

Brake fluid - grade and volume

Brake fluid is the term for the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from the master brake cylinder to the mechanical brakes.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original Dot 4 class 6 or equivalent.

Volume: 0.6 litres

Related information

- Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 367)

Power steering fluid - grade

Power steering fluid is the denomination of the medium used in the car's power steering system.

Prescribed grade: Power steering fluid recommended by Volvo.

Related information

- Power steering fluid - level (p. 368)

Fuel tank - volume

Fuel tank volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Engine	Volume (litres)	Prescribed grade
Petrol engine	approx 67	Fuel - petrol (p. 304)
Diesel engine	approx 67	Fuel - diesel (p. 305)

Related information

- Filling up with fuel (p. 302)
- Engine specifications (p. 417)

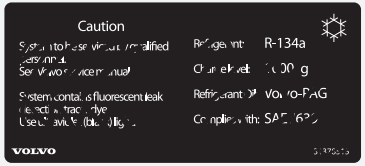
Specifications for air conditioning

The climate control system in the car uses a refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a, depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses can be seen on a decal, located on the inside of the bonnet.

Prescribed grades and volumes of fluids and lubricants in the air conditioning system can be read in the tables below.

A/C decal

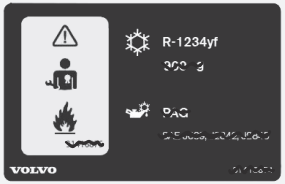
Decal for R134a



G052066

The label is fitted on the inside of the bonnet.

Decal for R1234yf



G060045

The label is fitted on the inside of the bonnet.

Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type
	A trained and certified technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

Cars with refrigerant R134a

Engine	Weight	Prescribed grade
5-cylinder diesel	720 g	R134a
other	800 g	

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Cars with refrigerant R1234yf

Weight	Prescribed grade
750 g	R1234yf

WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Engine	Volume	Prescribed grade
4-cylinder	60 ml	PAG SP-A2
5-cylinder	110 ml	PAG SP-A2

Evaporator

IMPORTANT

The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

Related information

- Climate control system - fault tracing and repair (p. 369)
- Type designations (p. 410)

Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions

Fuel consumption in a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and CO2 emissions in grams CO2 per km.

Explanation

CO_2	gram CO_2/km
ø	litre/100 km

	Urban driving
	Extra-urban driving
	Combined driving
man	manual gearbox
aut	Automatic gearbox

NOTE

If the consumption and emission data is missing then it is included in the enclosed supplement.

NOTE

Not all engines are available in all markets.

S60							
		CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø
T2 (B4154T5)	aut	171	7.4	113	4.8	134	5.8
T3 (B4204T37)	man	172	7.4	107	4.6	131	5.6
T3 (B4154T4)	aut	171	7.4	113	4.8	134	5.8
T4 (B4204T19)	man	172	7.4	107	4.6	131	5.6
T4 (B4204T19)	aut	171	7.4	113	4.8	134	5.8
T5 (B4204T11)	aut	198	8.6	114	4.9	145	6.2

S60							
		CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø
T6 (B4204T9)	aut	199	8.6	120	5.1	149	6.4
T6 AWD (B4204T9)	aut	214	9.2	130	5.6	161	6.9
Polestar (B4204T43)	aut	240	10.5	144	6.3	179	7.8
D2[A] (D4204T8)	man	112	4.3	92	3.5	99	3.8
D2[B] (D4204T8)	man	110	4.2	88	3,4	96	3.7
D2[A] (D4204T20)	aut	124	4.8	102	3.9	110	4.2
D2[B] (D4204T20)	aut	120	4.6	99	3.8	107	4.1
D3[A] (D4204T9)	man	114	4.4	95	3.6	102	3.9
D3[B] (D4204T9)	man	112	4.3	92	3.5	99	3.8
D3[A] (D4204T9)	aut	124	4.8	102	3.9	110	4.2
D3[B] (D4204T9)	aut	120	4.6	99	3.8	107	4.1
D4[A] (D4204T14)	man	115	4.5	95	3.6	102	3.9

S60							
		CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø
D4[B] (D4204T14)	man	114	4.4	91	3.5	99	3.8
D4[A] (D4204T14)	aut	139	5.3	98	3.7	113	4.3
D4[B] (D4204T14)	aut	134	5.0	95	3.6	109	4.1
D4 AWD (D5244T21)	aut	176	6.7	124	4.7	143	5.4
D5 (D4204T11)	aut	142	5.4	106	4.0	119	4.5

[A] Does **not** apply to the low-emissions variant.
[B] This **only** applies to the low-emissions variant.

Fuel consumption and emission values in the table above are based on specific EU driving cycles (see below), that apply to cars with kerb weight in the basic version and without extra equipment. The car's weight may increase depending on equipment. This, as well as how heavily the car is loaded, increases fuel consumption and carbon dioxide emissions.

There are several reasons for increased fuel consumption compared with the table's values. Examples of this are:

- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects the car's weight.
- The driver's driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those fitted as standard on the model's basic version then rolling resistance may increase.
- High speed results in increased wind resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the above-mentioned examples can result in significantly increased consumption.

Large deviations in fuel consumption may arise in a comparison with the EU driving cycles (see below) which are used in the certification of the car and on which the consumption figures in the table are based. For further information, please refer to the regulations referred to.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel quality are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

EU driving cycles

Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Regulation no 692/2008 and 715/2007 (Euro 5 / Euro 6) and UN ECE Regulation no 101. Since the driving cycles are also used for quality control, there are significant requirements for repeatability of the tests. For this reason the tests are carried out under close scrutiny and only with the car's basic functions (e.g. air conditioning, radio, etc. switched off). As a consequence of this the results from the official figures are not obviously representative of what the customer sees during actual usage.

The regulations cover the driving cycles for "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving":

- **Urban driving** - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated.
- **Extra-urban driving** - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0-120 km/h (0-75 mph). The driving is simulated.

Cars with manual gearbox are started in 2nd gear.

The official value for combined driving, which is reported in the table, is a combination of the results from the "Urban driving" and "Extra-urban driving" driving cycles, in accordance with legal requirements.

The exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2 emissions) during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO_2 emissions.

Related information

- Economical driving (p. 308)
- Weights (p. 414)

Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions

In certain countries not all approved dimensions are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Information on engine, front-wheel drive (FWD) or all-wheel drive (AWD) and the type of transmission is needed to read the table. For information with respect to these details, see Type designations (p. 410).

For information on the minimum permitted load index (LI) and the minimum permitted speed rating (SS), see Load index and speed rating (p. 434).

✓ = Approved

S60 Engine	man/ aut	205/60R16 7Jx16x50	215/55R16 7Jx16x50	215/50R17 7Jx17x50	235/45R17 7.5Jx17x55 8Jx17x55	235/40R18 8Jx18x55	235/40R19[A] 8Jx19x55	245/35R20 8Jx20x55
T2 (B4154T5)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T3 (B4154T4)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T3 (B4154T6)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T3 (B4204T37)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T4 (B4204T19)	man/aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T5 (B4204T11)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T5 (B4204T41)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T6 (B4204T9)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
T6 AWD (B4204T9)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
Polestar (B4204T43)	aut	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
D2[B] (D4204T8)	man	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
D2[C] (D4204T8)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
D2[B] (D4204T20)	aut	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-

S60 Engine	man/ aut	205/60R16 7Jx16x50	215/55R16 7Jx16x50	215/50R17 7Jx17x50	235/45R17 7.5Jx17x55 8Jx17x55	235/40R18 8Jx18x55	235/40R19[A] 8Jx19x55	245/35R20 8Jx20x55
D2[C] (D4204T20)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
D3[B] (D4204T9)	man/aut	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
D3[C] (D4204T9)	man/aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
D4[B] (D4204T14)	man/aut	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
D4[C] (D4204T14)	man/aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
D4 AWD (D5244T21)	aut	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
D5 (D4204T11)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-

[A] Only applies to cars with sport chassis, R-design or Polestar.
[B] This **only** applies to the low-emissions variant.
[C] Does **not** apply to the low-emissions variant.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 326)

Load index and speed rating

The table below shows the minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS). Information on engine, front-wheel drive (FWD) or all-wheel drive (AWD) and the type of transmission is needed to read the table. For information with respect to these details, see Type designations (p. 410).

S60 Engine		man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[A]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[B]
T2	B4154T5	aut	93	H
T3	B4154T4	aut	93	H
T3	B4154T6	aut	93	H
T3	B4204T37	man	92	V
T4	B4204T19	man	92	H[C]
		aut	93	H[C]
T5	B4204T11	aut	93	H[C]
T5	B4204T41	aut	93	H[C]
T6	B4204T9	aut	93	H[C]
T6 AWD	B4204T9	aut	95	H[D]
Polestar	B4204T43	aut	95	W
D2	D4204T8	man	92	H
D2	D4204T20	aut	93	H
D3[E]	D4204T9	man	92	H
		aut	93	H

S60 Engine		man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[A]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[B]
D3[F]	D4204T9	man	92	H[C]
		aut	93	H
D4[E]	D4204T14	man	92	H
		aut	93	H
D4[F]	D4204T14	man	92	H[C]
		aut	93	H[C]
D4 AWD	D5244T21	aut	94	H[C]
D5	D4204T11	aut	93	H[C]

A The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.
B The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.
C Cars without top-speed inhibitor 210 km/h (130 mph) require the lowest speed rating V.
D Cars without top-speed inhibitor 210 km/h (130 mph) require the lowest speed rating W.
E This **only** applies to the low-emissions variant.
F Does **not** apply to the low-emissions variant.

Related information

- Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions (p. 432)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 436)
- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - load index (p. 327)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 327)

Tyres - approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

NOTE

All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

S60 Engine	Tyre size	Speed (km/h)	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[A]
			Front (kPa)[B]	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
T2 (B4154T5) T3 (B4154T4) T3 (B4154T6) T3 (B4204T37) T4 (B4204T19) D2 (D4204T8) D2 (D4204T20) D3 (D4204T9)	205/60 R 16 215/55 R 16 215/50 R 17 235/45 R 17 235/40 R 18 235/40 R 19	0 - 160[C]	230	230	260	260	260
		160+[D]	260	240	280	260	-
T5 (B4204T11) T5 (B4204T41) D4 (D4204T14) D4 AWD (D5244T21)	215/55 R 16 235/45 R 17	0 – 160[C]	230	230	260	260	260
		160+[D]	260	240	280	260	-
	205/60 R 16 215/50 R 17 235/40 R 18 235/40 R 19	0 – 160[C]	240	240	260	260	260
		160+[D]	280	240	300	260	-

S60 Engine	Tyre size	Speed (km/h)	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[A]
			Front (kPa)[B]	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
T6 (B4204T9) T6 AWD (B4204T9) D5 (D4204T11)	215/55 R 16 235/45 R 17	0 – 160[C]	230	230	260	260	260
		160+[D]	280	240	300	260	-
	205/60 R 16 215/50 R 17 235/40 R 18 235/40 R 19	0 – 160[C]	240	240	260	260	260
		160+[D]	300	240	320	280	-

S60 Engine	Tyre size	Speed (km/h)	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[A]
			Front (kPa)[B]	Rear (kPa)	Front (kPa)	Rear (kPa)	Front/rear (kPa)
Polestar (B4204T43)	235/40 R 19	0 – 160[C]	240	240	260	260	260
		160+[D]	300	240	320	280	-
	245/35 R 20	0 – 160[C]	250	250	260	260	260
		160+[D]	270	270	290	290	-
Temporary Spare Tyre		max. 80[E]	420	420	420	420	-

A Economical driving.
B In certain countries there is the "bar" unit beside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.
C 0 - 100 mph
D 100+ mph
E max 50 mph

WARNING

19-inch wheels must **never** be used on cars that are **not** equipped with the R-Design, Sport chassis or Polestar options. The use of 19-inch wheels on cars with **standard chassis** constitutes a safety risk, with a risk of vehicle damage, and it impairs the car's driving characteristics.

Related information

- Wheels and tyres - approved dimensions (p. 432)
- Tyres - dimensions (p. 326)
- Tyres - air pressure (p. 324)
- Type designations (p. 410)

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A

ACC – Adaptive cruise control 196

Active bending lights 91

Active chassis - FOUR-C 182

Active main beam 89

Active Park Assist 260
- function 261
- Limitations 264
- operation 262
- Symbols and messages 265

Active xenon headlamps 91

Active Yaw Control 183

Adaptation of headlamp beam 92

Adapting driving characteristics 182

Adaptive Cruise Control 196
- change cruise control functionality 205
- deactivate 203
- fault tracing 206
- function 197
- managing speed 199
- overtaking 202
- overview 198
- radar sensor 209
- setting the time interval 201
- standby mode 201
- temporary deactivation 201

Additional heater
- electric 140, 141
- fuel-driven 140

Adjusting the steering wheel 83

Airbag
- activating/deactivating, PACOS 36
- driver's side 34
- passenger side 34, 36

AIRBAG 34

Airbag system 33
- warning symbol 32

Air cleaning
- material 123
- passenger compartment 121, 122, 123

Air conditioning 130

Air conditioning, fluid
- volume and grade 426

Air conditioning system
- repair 369

Air distribution 123
- Recirculation 131
- table 132

Air quality system IAQS 122

Alarm 177, 179
- alarm indicator 178
- alarm signals 179
- automatic re-arming 179
- checking the alarm 160
- reduced alarm level 180
- remote control key not working 179

Allergy and asthma inducing substances. 122

All Wheel Drive, (AWD) 280

All Wheel Drive (AWD) 280

Approach lighting 96, 158

Automatic car washes 401

Automatic gearbox 276
- manual gear positions (Geartronic) 276
- towing and recovery 317
- trailer 310

Automatic relocking 170

AWD, All Wheel Drive 280

B

Backrest 79
- front seat, lowering 79
- rear seat, folding 81

Bag holder 151

Battery 273, 300, 380
- jump starting 273
- maintenance 380
- overload 300
- remote control key/PCC 164
- start 380

support 384
symbols on the battery 382
warning symbols 382
BLIS 232, 233
Bonnet, opening 361
Book service and repair 356
Boot lid 173
Locking/unlocking 173
Brake and clutch fluid 367
Brake fluid
grade and volume 424
Brake light 93
Brakes 292, 294
Anti-lock braking system, ABS 293
brake light 93
brake system 292, 293, 294
Emergency Brake Assistance, EBA 294
filling brake fluid 368
handbrake 295
symbols in the combined instrument panel 293
bulbs, specifications 377

C

Camera sensor 216, 228
Car care 401
Leather upholstery 405
Cargo area
lighting 95
loading 148
load retaining eyelets 150
Car key memory 155
Car upholstery 404
Car washing 401
Catalytic converter 307
Recovery 317
Chassis settings 182
Checking the engine oil level 364
Children
child safety locks 44
child seat and airbag 49
child seats and side airbags 38
location in car 49
safety 44
Child safety locks 176, 177
Child seat
ISOFIX fixture system for child seats 50
Child seats 44
recommended 45
size classes for child seats with ISOFIX fixture system 51
types 52
upper mounting points for child seats 54
City Safety™ 214
Cleaning
automatic car wash 401
car washing 401
rims 402
seatbelts 405
upholstery 404
Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) 122
Climate control
actual temperature 121
auto-regulation 129
general 120
personal preferences 123
sensors 121
temperature control 129
Clock, adjustment 72
CO_2 emissions 428
Collision 42
Collision warning 221, 222
Collision warning system
function 222
general limitations 227
operation 225

Pedestrian detection 224
Radar sensor 209, 215
Collision Warning System with Auto Brake 221
Colour code, paint 406
Combined instrument panel 62, 63
Compass 103
calibration 103
Condensation in headlamps 401
Controls lighting 86
Control symbols 63, 65
Coolant
volume and grade 422
Coolant, checking and filling 366
Cooling system 299
overheating 299
Cornering lights 92
Corner Traction Control 183
Crash, see Collision 42
Cruise control 190
deactivate 192
managing speed 191
resume set speed 192
temporary deactivation 191
CTA 234
Cyclist detection 223
CZIP (Clear Zone Interior Package) 122

D

Daytime running lights 87
Deadlock 175
deactivation 175
temporary deactivation 175
Defroster 130
Detachable towbar
storage 312
Diesel 305
run out of fuel 305
Diesel particle filter 306
Dimensions 413
Dipstick, electronic 364, 365
Direction indicator 94
Direction indicators 94
direction of rotation 323
Disengaging the gear selector inhibitor 279
Display lighting 86
Distance Warning 193
Limitations 194
Symbols and messages 195
Door mirrors 100
automatic dimming 101
resetting 101
Driveable punctured tyres 341
Drive mode ECO 290
Driver Alert Control 241
operation 241
Driver Alert System 240
Driving 301
cooling system 299
with boot lid open 300
Driving in water 299
Driving with a trailer 309
towball load 415
towing capacity 415

E

ECC, electronic climate control 126
Eco Cruise 290
EcoGuide 66
Ecolabelling, FSC, owner's manual 25
ECO mode 290
Economical driving 308
ECO pressure 436

Electrical socket 147
cargo area 151
Electrical system 387
Electric parking brake
low battery voltage 295
Electronic climate control - ECC 126
Emergency equipment
first aid kit 334
warning triangle 333
Emergency puncture repair 348
action 350
inflating the tyres 353
rechecking 352
Emergency puncture repair kit
location 348
overview 349
Emissions of carbon dioxide 428
Engine
deactivate 269
overheating 299
start 268
Start/Stop 282
Engine and passenger compartment heater
messages 138
timer 136
Engine block heater 134
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater
direct start 135
immediate stop 136
Engine braking, automatic 281
Engine compartment
Brake and clutch fluid 367
Check 362
coolant 366
Engine oil 363
overview 361
power steering fluid 368
Engine drag control 183
Engine oil 363, 419
adverse driving conditions 419
filter 363
grade and volume 420
Engine oil, filling 364
Engine specifications 417
Error messages
Adaptive Cruise Control 207
Driver Alert Control 243
Lane Departure Warning 247
LKA 252
see Messages and symbols 207, 297
Error messages in BLIS 236
ERS - Remote Start 269
Ethanol content
maximum 10 percent by volume 304
exhaust gases, toxic, sucked in 300
External dimensions 413

F

Fan
ECC 128
Fault tracing for the camera sensor 217
First aid 334
First aid kit 334
Fluids, capacities 379, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426
Fluids and oils 422, 423, 424, 426
Fog lamp
rear 92
Foot brake 292, 293, 294
FOUR-C - Active chassis 182
FSC, ecolabelling 25
Fuel 303, 304, 305
fuel consumption 428
fuel economy 324, 325
fuel filter 306
identifier 304, 305

Fuel-driven heater
timer 136
Fuelling
filling 302
fuel cap 302
fuel filler flap 302
fuel filler flap, manual opening 302
Fuel tank
volume 425
Fuse box 387
Fuses
changing 387
General 387
in cargo area 397
in engine compartment 389
In the control module under the glovebox 395
in the engine compartment's cold zone 399
under glovebox 393

G

Gearbox 274
automatic 276
manual 274
Gear selector inhibitor 279
Gear selector inhibitor, mechanical disengagement 279
Gear shift indicator 275
Geartronic 276
Glass
laminated/reinforced 25
Glovebox 146
locking 173
Gross vehicle weight 414
GSI - Gear selector assistance 275

H

Handbrake 295
Hazard warning flashers 93
HDC 281
Headlamp beam
adaptation 92
height adjustment 86
Headlamp control 85
Headlamp levelling of headlamps 86
Headlamp pattern, adjusting 92
Headlamp pattern adjustment 92
Headlamps 371
head restraint
centre seat, rear 81
lowering 82
Heated washer nozzles 98
Heating
rearview and door mirrors 102
rear window 102
seats 127, 128
steering wheel 84
windscreen 102
Heat-reflecting windscreen 20
High engine temperature 299
High-pressure headlamp washing 98
Hill Descent Control 281
Hill Start Assist 280
Home safe light duration 96
Horn 84

I

IAQS - Interior Air Quality System 122
Immobiliser 157
Indicator symbols 67
Inflatable curtain 39
Information button, PCC 159, 160
Information display 62, 63

Inlaid mats 147
Instrument lighting 86
Instrument overview
left-hand drive car 56
right-hand drive car 59
Instruments and controls 56, 59
Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)
Air cleaning 122
Interior lighting 95
Interior rearview mirror 102
automatic dimming 103
Intermittent wiping 97
Internet-connected car
book service and repair 356

J

Jack 334
Journey statistics 118
Jump starting 273

K

Kerb weight 414
Key 154, 156
Key blade 161, 162
Keyless drive 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 268
Keyless - locking 167
Keyless start (keyless drive) 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 268
Keyless - unlocking 168
Keypad in the steering wheel 83
Key positions 77

L

Labels 410
Laminated glass 25
Lamps 369
Lane assistance
operation 246, 250
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 244, 245, 246
Lane Keeping Aid - LKA 248, 249
Lane keeping assistant
operation 251
Laser sensor 218
Leather upholstery, washing instructions 405
Light indications, PCC 160
Lighting
active bending lights 91
active xenon headlamps 91
approach lighting 96, 158
automatic lighting, passenger compartment 95
Automatic main beam 89
bulbs, specifications 377
controls 85, 95
controls lighting 86
cornering lights 92
daytime running lights 87
display lighting 86
headlamp levelling 86
home safe lighting 96
instrument lighting 86
in the passenger compartment 95
main/dipped beam 88
position lamps 86
rear fog lamp 92
tunnel detection 88
Lighting, bulb replacement 369
bulb holder, rear 375
cargo area 376
dipped beam (cars with halogen headlamps) 372
direction indicators, front 374
main beam (cars with active xenon headlamps) 374

main beam (cars with halogen head-lamps) 373
number plate lighting 376
vanity mirror 376
LKA - Lane Keeping Aid 248, 249
Loading
General 148
load retaining eyelets 150
long load 149
roof load 150
Lock
locking 170
manual locking 170
unlocking 170, 171
Lockable wheel bolts 328
Lock confirmation 156
Lock indicator 156
Locking/unlocking
glovebox 173
inside 171

M

Main/dipped beam 88
Main beam, automatic activation 89
maintenance
Rustproofing 404
Manual gearbox 274
GSI - Gear selector assistance 275
Towing and recovery 317
trailer 310
Manual gear positions (Geartronic) 276
Max. roof load 414
Memory function in seat 80
Menus
Combined instrument panel 106
menu overview 107
Messages 109
Messages and symbols
Adaptive Cruise Control 207
Collision Warning with Auto Brake 220, 230
Driver Alert Control 243
Engine block heater and passenger compartment heater 138
Lane Departure Warning 247
LKA 252
Messages in BLIS 236
Messages in the information display 108
Meters
fuel gauge 62, 64
speedometer 62, 64
tachometer 62, 64
Mileage 110
misting
attending to the windows 120
Misting
condensation in headlamps 401
Mood lighting 96
MY CAR 109

O

Oil, see also Engine oil 419, 420
Oil level low 364
Option/accessory 16
Output 417
outside temperature gauge 71
Overheating 299, 309
Owner's manual, ecolabelling 25

P

PACOS 36
Paddle on the steering wheel 83
Paintwork
colour code 406
damage and touch-up 406
Panic function 158

PAP - Active Park Assist 260
Park Assist 253, 255
backward 254
fault indicator 256
function 253
parking assistance sensors 256
Park assist camera 257
settings 259
Parking brake 295
Passenger compartment filter 122
Passenger compartment heater 134
Passenger compartment lighting
automatic 95
PCC – Personal Car Communicator
functions 158
range 160, 166
Pedestrian detection 221
Personal Car Communicator 160
Petrol grade 304
Pinch protection, sunroof 106
Pocket park assist - PAP 260
Polishing 403
Position lamp 86
Power guide 66
Power seat 80
Power steering fluid
Checking the level 368
grade 424
Power sunroof 104
Power windows 98
resetting 100
Privacy locking 163
Puncture 348

Q

Queue Assist 203
Queue assistance 203

R

Radar sensor 197
Limitations 209
Rain sensor 97
Raising the car 359
Rear bulbs
location 375
Rear seat
Heating 128
Rearview and door mirrors
compass 103
door 100
electrically retractable 101
heating 102
interior 102
rear window
sun blind 100
Rear window
heating 102
Recommendations during driving 301
Recommended child seats
table 45
Recovery 318
Refrigerant 369
Regeneration 306
Remote control immobiliser 157
Remote control key 154, 155, 156
battery replacement 164
detachable key blade 161, 162
functions 158
loss 154
range 159, 166
Remote control key system, type approval 180
Remote Start - ERS 269
Resetting, trip meter 113, 116
Resetting the door mirrors 101

Resetting the power windows 100
Retractable power door mirrors 101
Reverse gear inhibitor 275
Road sign information 236
Limitations 240
operation 237
Roll-over protection
ROPS (Roll Over Protection System) 41
Roof load, max. weight 414
ROPS (Roll Over Protection System) 41
Rustproofing 404

S

Safety lock
children 44
Safety mode 42
moving the car 43
start attempt 43
Seat, see Seats 79
Seatbelt 28
loosen 30
pregnancy 30
putting on 29
rear seat 31
seatbelt reminder 31
seatbelt tensioner 31
Seatbelt reminder 31
Seatbelt tensioner 31
Seats 79
head restraints, rear 81
heating 128
Heating 127
lowering the front backrest 79
lowering the rear backrest 81
power 80
Self Supporting run flat Tyres (SST) 341
Sensus 76
Service position 378
Service programme 356
Set time interval 193
Side airbag SIPS 38
SIPS airbag 38
Skidding 301
slippery driving conditions 301
Soot filter 306
SOOT FILTER FULL 306
spare wheel 329
installation 332
Speed limiter 187
alarm for speed exceeded 189
deactivation 189
getting started 187, 188
temporary deactivation 188
Speed ratings, tyres 327
Spin control 183
Stability and traction control system 183, 185
operation 184
Stability system 183
Stains 404
Start/Stop 282
function and operation 283
the engine does not stop 284
Starter battery
changing 382
Steering force, speed related 182
Steering force level, see Steering force 182
Steering lock 269
Steering wheel 83
heating 84
keypad 83
paddle 83
steering wheel adjustment 83
Stone chips and scratches 406
Storage spaces
glovebox 146
tunnel console 146
Storage spaces in the passenger compartment 144

Sun blind
rear window 100
Sunroof
opening and closing 104
pinch protection 106
sunscreen 106
ventilation position 105
Sunscreen, sunroof 106
Support 15
Support battery 384
Switching off the engine 269
Symbols
indicator symbols 63, 65, 67
warning symbols 63, 65
Symbols and messages
Adaptive Cruise Control 207
Collision Warning with Auto Brake 220, 230
Driver Alert Control 243
Lane Departure Warning 247
LKA 252

T

Temperature
actual temperature 121
Temperature control 129
Through-load hatch 149
TM - Tyre Monitor 335
Tools 333
Total airing function 120, 172
Towbar
detachable, attachment 313
detachable, removal 314
Towbar, see Towing equipment 311
Towbar - detachable attachment/removal 313, 314
Towing 316
towing eye 317
Towing bracket 311, 312
specifications 312
Towing capacity and towball load 415
Towing eye 317
TPMS - Tyre Pressure Monitoring 335, 337, 338
Traction control 183
Trailer 309
cable 309
driving with a trailer 309
snaking 315
Trailer stability assist 184
Trailer Stability Assist 315
Transmission 274
Transmission oil
volume and grade 423
Transponder 20
Tread depth 328
Tread wear indicators 324
Trip computer 110, 112, 115, 118
Trip meter 71, 110
Trip meter, resetting 113, 116
Troubleshooting
Adaptive Cruise Control 206
TSA - trailer stability assist 184, 315
Tunnel console 146
12 V socket 147
cigarette lighter and ashtray 146
Tunnel detection 88
Type approval
radar system 211
remote control key system 180
tyre pressure monitoring 342
Type designations 410
Tyre dimension 326
Tyre load index 327
Tyre monitoring 335
Tyre pressure label 324
Tyre pressure monitoring 335, 337, 338
Adjust 338

arming 339
deactivate 339
driveable punctured tyres (SST) 341
low tyre pressure 340
recommendations 339

Tyres
dimensions 432
direction of rotation 323
maintenance 322
pressure 324, 436
puncture repair 348
specifications 432, 434, 436
tread depth 328
tread wear indicators 324
tyre pressure monitoring 335, 337, 338
winter tyres 328

U

Unlocking
from the inside 171
from the outside 170

Unlocking with the key blade 168

V

Vanity mirror 147
lighting 95

Ventilation 123

Vibration damper 311

Volvo ID 21

Volvo Sensus 76

W

Warning lamp
Adaptive Cruise Control 197
collision warning system 225
stability and traction control system 183

Warning lamps
Airbags – SRS 69
alternator not charging 69
Fault in brake system 69
Low oil pressure 69
Parking brake applied 69
seatbelt reminder 31, 69
Warning 69

Warning sound
collision warning system 225

Warning symbols 63, 65, 69

Warning triangle 333

Washer fluid 379

Washer nozzles, heated 98

Washers
washer fluid, filling 379
windscreen 98

Water and dirt-repellent coating 403

Water-repellent surface, cleaning 403

Waxing 403

Weights
kerb weight 414

Wheel bolts 328
lockable 328

Wheel change 329

Wheel rim, dimensions 326

Wheel rims
cleaning 402

Wheels
installation 332
removal 329
snow chains 328

Wheels and tyres
approved dimensions 432
tyre load index and speed rating 434

Whiplash injury, WHIPS 39

WHIPS
child seat/booster cushion 39
seating position 40
whiplash protection 39

Window
sun blind 100

Windows, rearview and door mirrors 403

Windscreen
heating 102, 130

Windscreen washing 98

Windscreen wiper 97
rain sensor 97

Winter driving 301

Winter tyres 328

Winter wheels 328

Wiper blades 378
changing 378
Cleaning 379
Service position 378

Wipers and washing 97

TP 22121 (English), AT 1646, MY17, Printed in Sweden, Göteborg 2016, Copyright © 2000-2016 Volvo Car Corporation